

B433/B513

OKI

User's Manual

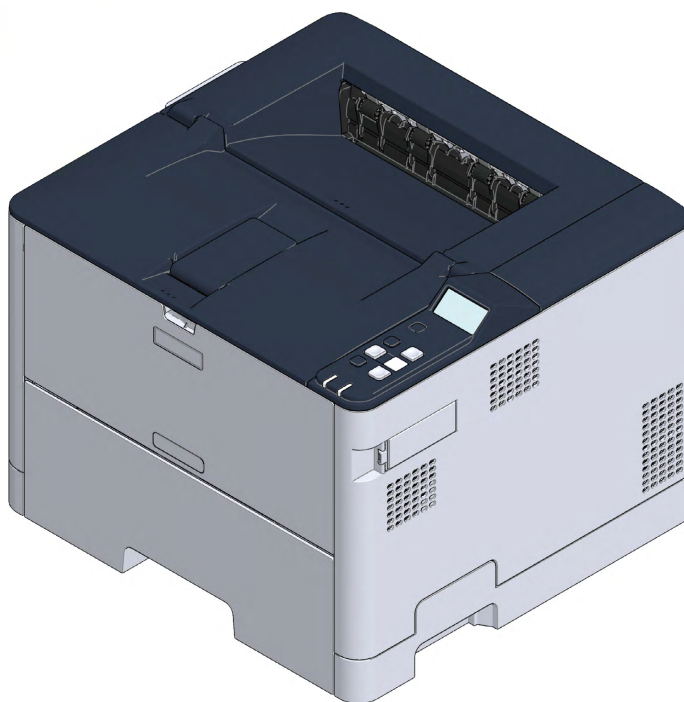


Table of Contents

1. Getting started	7		
Safety precautions.....	8		
General cautions	9		
Cautions	11		
External sensing function	11		
Preface	11		
Trademarks/Copyrights	12		
About this manual.....	14		
About the description.....	14		
Features of this machine	16		
2. Preparations and connecting this machine to your PC	17		
Installation	18		
Installation environment	18		
Installation space.....	19		
Unpacking	20		
Checking the accessories	22		
Installing optional accessories	23		
Installing the wireless LAN module.....	23		
Installing the expansion tray unit	25		
Installing the dedicated caster stand	27		
Initialization upon power-on	33		
About the power supply	33		
Connecting the power cord.....	34		
Initialization upon power-on of the machine	34		
Loading paper in the tray	35		
Connecting via a wired LAN.....	37		
1-1. Connecting the LAN cable.....	37		
1-2. Installing the extended wired LAN module (For wired LAN2).....	37		
2. Setting the IP address or the like.....	41		
3. Checking the connection from a PC	43		
Connection form via a wireless LAN	45		
Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure).....	46		
1. Enabling the wireless LAN function	46		
2. Enabling infrastructure.....	47		
3. Setting the IP address	48		
4. Connecting with the wireless access point	50		
4-1. Connecting by selecting a wireless LAN access point	50		
4-2. Connecting with WPS.....	52		
4-3. Manual setup and connection	53		
5. Choosing a valid default gateway.....	55		
6. Checking the connection from a PC	56		
Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct).....	58		
		1. Enabling the wireless LAN function	58
		2. Enabling Wi-Fi Direct.....	59
		3. Connecting with a device.....	60
		Connecting via USB	62
		Installing software on your PC	63
		For Windows	63
		For macOS	66
		Setting the printer driver	67
3. Basic operations	70		
Parts identification.....	71		
Front.....	71		
Inside the main unit	72		
Back	72		
Turning the power on/off	73		
Turning the power on.....	73		
Turning the power off.....	73		
Loading paper	74		
Procedure for loading paper	74		
Applicable paper.....	74		
Inapplicable paper	75		
Paper precautions by type.....	76		
Paper applicable to each tray	78		
Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B433).....	79		
Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B513) or Tray 2/3/4 (Optional).....	80		
Loading paper in the MP tray	82		
Setting paper information on the operator panel	84		
Storing paper	86		
Setting the output bin	87		
Output tray (Top cover)	87		
Rear output tray.....	88		
Checking the information of this machine	89		
Printing the menu map (configuration).....	89		
Confirming on the operator panel	90		
4. Changing settings from the operator panel	91		
Parts identification of the operator panel	92		
Inputting text.....	93		
Changing settings	94		
Adjusting the buzzer volume	96		
Setting the power save function	98		
Setting the time that elapses before entering the power save mode	98		
Setting the time that elapses before entering the sleep mode.....	99		
Turning off the power automatically (Auto Power Off)	100		

Setting the time that elapses before entering the Auto Power Off mode	101	Printing in the toner save mode	169
Setting actions of the power save mode	102	N-in-1 printing	170
Setting the Sleep After Printing mode	104	Refining your finishing	172
Menu items	105	Printing with the specified print resolution	172
Language Setup	105	Printing by correcting fine lines	173
Menus (Information)	105	Printing by specifying the font to use	174
Menus (Print Information)	107	Useful functions	176
Menus (User Setup)	107	Printing with multiple pages sorted into one complete set (Collate)	176
Menus (Admin Setup)	112	Printing from the last page of your document ..	177
Menus (AirPrint)	121	Printing by automatically selecting a tray for the specified paper	178
Menus (Print Statistics)	121	Switching tray automatically at running out of paper	179
Menus (Calibration)	122	Changing the default settings of the printer driver	181
Menus (User Account Info)	123	Printing with frequently used settings registered in the printer driver	181
Print	123	Printing data from a USB memory	183
Wireless Setting (Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting)	124	Printing data stored in this machine	183
Wireless Setting (Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting)	124	Printing PS errors	184
Boot Menu	126	Maximizing the printable area	185
5. Printing from a PC	127	Editing margins	185
Printing from a PC	128	Correcting the print position of the tray	186
For the Windows PCL printer driver	128	Printing with security enhanced	187
For the Windows PS printer driver	128	Printing with print data encrypted	187
For the macOS PCL printer driver	129	Updating the printer key for encrypting print jobs	189
For the macOS PS printer driver	129	Printing with print data encrypted and password set (Private Print)	190
Screens and functions of the printer driver ...	131	Canceling the printing	193
For the Windows PCL printer driver	131	6. Management of this machine	194
For the Windows PS printer driver	133	Administrator Password	195
For the macOS PCL printer driver	134	Checking the factory default admin password ..	195
For the macOS PS printer driver	138	Inputting the factory default admin password ..	195
How to open [Devices and Printers]	141	Changing the admin password	196
Printing on various types of paper	142	Changing settings of Admin Setup	199
Printing on envelopes	142	Managing the machine from the web page ...	200
Printing on labels	146	Opening the web page	200
Printing on long paper	149	Logging in as an administrator	201
Printing on irregular paper (Custom)	151	Changing the admin password (Web page)	201
Printing methods	156	Checking/Changing the state of this machine ..	202
Printing one sheet at a time manually	156	Saving configurations	203
Enlarging/Reducing to fit the specified paper size	157	Communication encryption (SSL/TLS)	203
Printing by enlargement/reduction	158	Disabling HTTP	205
Printing only the cover from another tray	159	Using IPP	206
Booklet printing	160	Communication encryption (IPSec)	207
Printing a poster by dividing a document	161	Using the access control function (IP filter) with the IP address	207
Printing with text watermarks (Watermarks)	162	Using the access control function with the MAC address	208
Printing overlaid text or logos (overlay printing) ..	162	Notifying errors via e-mail	209
Outputting to a file without printing on paper ...	164	Using SNMPv3	209
Printing frequently used documents without using a PC	165		
Printing an email attachment	167		
Printing in economy mode	168		
Printing on both sides of paper	168		

Using IEEE802.1X (Wired LAN).....	210	Starting the Configuration Tool.....	255
Setting IEEE802.1X (Wireless LAN).....	211	Checking the state of this machine.....	255
Connecting to a wireless LAN (WPA3-EAP)....	213	Displaying print completion on the PC.....	256
Setting the LDAP server.....	214	Registering forms (form overlay)	258
Setting e-mail receiving (Web page)	215	Checking free space of memory/hard disk	259
Setting the Power Save Time (Web page)	215	Registering the user name and password	259
Setting the sleep time (Web page)	215	Deleting this machine	261
Setting "Auto Power Off" (Web page).....	216	Name and function of each screen	262
Setting actions of the power save mode (Web page)	216	Icon description	263
Copying the setup information of this machine to other devices	216	OKI LPR utility	264
Printing PDF/JPEG files (Direct Print)	217	Starting the OKI LPR utility	264
Setting a link to the support page	218	Registering this machine with the OKI LPR utility	264
Setting items of the web page	219	Checking the state of the registered machine .	265
User restriction (Access control)	226	Transferring print data to the registered device	265
1. Registering a role	226	Printing the same document from multiple registered devices	266
2. Registering a user	227	Opening the web page of a registered device .	266
3. Registering a group	228	Automatically following the IP address of the registered device	266
4. Setting the authentication server	229	Setting the port number of the web page for the registered device	267
5. Enabling access control.....	230	Sending files to this machine registered with the OKI LPR utility	267
Using the machine.....	232	Deleting unnecessary print data	267
Printing from a PC	232	Uninstalling OKI LPR utility.....	267
Initializing the settings	235	Print Job Accounting Client.....	268
Initializing network settings.....	235	For Windows	268
Initializing the flash memory	235	For macOS	269
Initializing settings of this machine	236	Network Status Monitor.....	271
Moving/Transporting this machine	237	Starting the Network Status Monitor	271
Moving this machine.....	237	Checking the state of this machine.....	271
Transporting this machine	237	Displaying print completion on the PC.....	272
Disposal.....	241	Printer Supply Manager	273
7. Useful software.....	242	Installing	273
Software list.....	243	Registering the printer	273
Windows software	243	Setting the notified party for notifications about consumables/maintenance parts.....	274
macOS software	244	Setting the notified party for notifications about consumables/maintenance parts (E-mail Address)	274
Applications for mobile devices	244	Periodical notification of the usage status of consumables/maintenance parts.....	275
Installing software.....	245	Notification based on the usage status of consumables/maintenance parts.....	275
For Windows	245	8. Printing from a mobile device	277
For macOS	246	Printing with Mobile Print.....	278
For mobile devices	246	Printing by connecting to an access point	278
Monitoring Tool (Windows)	247	Printing with the NFC function	278
Registering the printer	247	Troubleshooting for Mobile Print.....	279
Updating the printer software	248	Printing with AirPrint.....	281
Updating the printer's firmware.....	249	1. Setting AirPrint	281
Changing settings of Monitoring Tool	250	2. Registering this machine on Mac	282
Deleting the printer	251	3. Printing with AirPrint	282
Troubleshooting (Monitoring Tool).....	252		
PS Gamma Adjuster.....	253		
Registering a gamma curve name.....	253		
Printing with registered halftone	254		
Configuration Tool.....	255		
Registering this machine	255		

Troubleshooting for AirPrint.....	283	10. Troubleshooting	348
Printing with Mopria Print Service	285	When an error message appears on the display	349
1. Setting Mopria Print Service	285	Error message list	350
2. Registering this machine with a Windows ...	286	When a paper jam occurs	359
3. Printing with Mopria Print Service.....	286	For the error code 372.....	359
Troubleshooting for Mopria Print Service	287	For the error code 380.....	365
Printing with IPP Everywhere.....	288	For the error code 381 or 382.....	368
1. Setting IPP Everywhere.....	288	For the error code 389.....	373
2. Registering this machine with Chromebook	288	For the error code 390.....	373
3. Printing with IPP Everywhere	289	For the error code 391.....	374
Troubleshooting for IPP Everywhere.....	289	For the error code 392, 393 or 394.....	378
Printing with Print Plugin	291	For the error code 632, 633 or 634.....	380
Printing by connecting to an access point	291	For the error code 638.....	381
Troubleshooting for Print Plugin	292	For the error code 639.....	384
9. Maintenance.....	294	Trouble with printing.....	389
Precautions for replacing consumables and		I cannot print.....	389
maintenance parts.....	295	Troubleshooting for Wired LAN connection	390
Service life and replacement cycle of		Troubleshooting for wireless LAN connection .	391
consumables	296	Troubleshooting for USB connection	395
Toner cartridge	296	Troubleshooting for printing results.....	396
Image drum	296	List of troubles with printing results.....	396
Replacing toner cartridges	298	White streaks appear in the vertical direction ..	398
Replacing the image drum	300	Printing is faint in the vertical direction	398
Replacing the image drum and the toner		Printing is light	399
cartridge	305	White dots or lines appear.....	399
Service life and replacement cycle of		Condensation occurs on printed paper.....	400
maintenance parts.....	310	Streaks appear in the vertical direction.....	400
Maintenance kit	310	Dots and horizontal streaks appear in the paper	
Paper feed roller	311	feeding direction periodically	400
Replacing the maintenance kit	312	White area is lightly stained	401
Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 1)	319	Edges of text are blurred	401
Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 2/3/4		When envelopes or coated paper is printed, the	
(Optional))	324	whole area is thinly stained	402
Replacing the paper feed roller (MP Tray)....	329	Toner comes off when rubbed	402
Cleaning the main unit and the parts	333	Specks appear on glossy paper	402
Cleaning the LED head	333	Point stains appear.....	403
Cleaning the surface of the main unit	334	Stains are printed	403
Cleaning the paper feed roller (Tray 1/2/3/4)...	334	The entire paper is printed in black	403
Cleaning the paper feed roller (MP tray).....	336	Nothing is printed	404
Cleaning the light-shielding film.....	338	White streaks occur	404
Cleaning the resist roller.....	341	The peripheral area is dirty.....	404
Updating software	344	An afterimage printed on the front edge of the	
For Windows	344	paper is printed.....	405
For macOS	344	The density differs at two ends of the paper....	405
Deleting software.....	345	Software troubleshooting	406
Uninstalling the Windows printer driver	345	Troubleshooting for this machine and paper	407
Uninstalling the macOS printer driver	345	Troubleshooting for the machine	407
Firmware update	347	Troubleshooting for the paper	410
For Windows	347	When a power failure occurs	413
For macOS	347	11. Taking security measures.....	414
		Preventing disclosure of documents	415

Private Print.....	415
Print Data Encryption	415
Encrypting Network Communications.....	415
Preventing unauthorized network access	416
IP Filtering Setup	416
MAC Filtering Setup	416
IPSec Setup	416
TLS Setup	416
IEEE802.1X Settings	416
Access Log.....	416
Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine	417
Password Policy	417
Account Lockout.....	417
Admin password	418
User Authentication/Access Control	418
Initializing the settings	418
Erase Privacy Data.....	418
MIB Get Control.....	418
Security-related menu settings	418
Handling of Personal Information	421
Appendix.....	423
Specifications	424
Regulatory wireless LAN statements.....	429
Dimensions.....	431
Contact us	433
Menu tree	434

1

Getting started

Safety precautions.....	8
General cautions	9
Cautions	11
Trademarks/Copyrights.....	12
About this manual.....	14
Features of this machine	16

Safety precautions

Read this manual for your safety before using the product.

 WARNING	Mishandling due to ignoring this indication may cause major injuries or even death.
 CAUTION	Mishandling due to ignoring this indication may cause personal injury.

General cautions

 WARNING	
	Do not touch the safety switch inside this machine. High voltage may occur and electric shock may be caused. In addition, gears can rotate, which may result in personal injury.
	Do not use any inflammable spray near the machine. A fire may be caused since there is an area heating up within the machine.
	Disconnect the power plug from the power outlet and contact your dealer if the cover becomes abnormally hot, emits smoke, gives off an odor, or makes an abnormal noise. Otherwise, a fire may be caused.
	Disconnect the power plug from the power outlet and contact your dealer if water or other liquid gets into the machine. Otherwise, a fire may be caused.
	If paper clips or any other foreign objects enter the inside of this machine, disconnect the power plug from the power outlet and contact the customer service center or your dealer. Otherwise, electric shock, fire or injury may be caused.
	Do not disassemble this machine or perform operations other than those specified in the user manual. Otherwise, electric shock, fire or injury may be caused.
	Disconnect the power plug from the power outlet and contact your dealer if the machine is dropped or the cover is damaged. Otherwise, electric shock, fire or injury may be caused.
	Periodically disconnect the power plug from the power outlet and clean the base of the prongs, and between the prongs. Leaving the power plug inside the power outlet for a long period of time may result in a fire due to a short circuit caused by the buildup of dust at the base of the prongs.
	Do not clean up spilled toner using an electric vacuum cleaner. Otherwise, a fire may be caused due to sparks from the electrical contacts. If toner is spilled on the floor, wipe the toner up carefully using a damp cloth to prevent toner scattering.
	Do not insert objects into the air vents. Otherwise, electric shock, fire or injury may be caused.
	Do not place any containers like cups containing water on the machine. Otherwise, electric shock or fire may be caused.
	Make sure that no urine from pets on top of this machine wet or enter this machine. Otherwise, electric shock or fire may be caused.
	Take care when touching the fuser unit. Otherwise, burns may be caused.
	Do not throw the image drum or toner cartridge into fire. Otherwise, burns may be caused due to a dust explosion.
	Do not connect the power cord, any other cables or earth wire except as instructed in the user manual. Otherwise, a fire may be caused.
	The performance cannot be assured if an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or inverter is used. Do not use an uninterruptible power supply or inverter. Otherwise, a fire may be caused.

 CAUTION	
	Keep away from the paper discharger when the machine is powered on or during printing. Otherwise, injury may be caused.
	Do not touch a broken display. Otherwise, injury may be caused. If any liquid (liquid crystal) leaking from the display gets into the eyes or mouth, wash it off promptly with a large quantity of water. Consult a physician as necessary.
	Do not disassemble or forcibly open the image drum or toner cartridge. Otherwise, toner may scatter, which may be inhaled by people or may stain clothes or hands.

NOTE!

This product is not intended for use in the immediate visual field on the display work place. To avoid disturbing reflections on the display work place, this product shall not be placed in the immediate field of vision.

Cautions

External sensing function

This product contains sensors that measure environment temperature and humidity.

Preface

• EMERGENCY FIRST AID

Take care with toner powder:



If swallowed, give small amounts of cold water and seek medical attention. DO NOT attempt to induce vomiting.

If inhaled, move the person to an open area for fresh air. Seek medical attention.

If it gets into the eyes, flush with large amounts of water for at least 15 minutes keeping eyelids open. Seek medical attention.

Spillages should be treated with cold water and soap to help reduce risk of staining skin or clothing.

• ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION



Trademarks/Copyrights

OKI is a registered trademark of Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered trademarks or trademarks owned by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

Microsoft, Microsoft Edge, Windows and Windows Server are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Apple, AirPrint, AirPrint logo, App Store, Bonjour, ColorSync, Mac, macOS, Safari and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other countries and regions.



iOS is OS name of Apple Inc. IOS is a registered trademark or trademark of Cisco in the United States and other countries and is used under license.



The Mopria™ wordmark and the Mopria™ Logo are registered and/or unregistered trademarks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.



IPP Everywhere™ and the IPP Everywhere logo are trademarks of The Printer Working Group.

Android, Chromebook, ChromeOS, Google Chrome and Google Play are trademarks of Google LLC.

Linux is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Adobe and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Alliance, WPA, WPA2, WPA3, Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi Protected Setup are registered trademarks or trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance in the United States and other countries.

Arm is registered trademark or trademark of Arm Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the US and/or other countries/regions.

Other product names and brand names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their proprietors.

	As an ENERGY STAR® Program Participant, the manufacturer has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency. The target country of the ENERGY STAR® program is Japan. It is not applicable to other countries.
	This product complies with the requirements of the Council Directives 2014/30/EU (EMC), 2014/35/EU (LVD), 2014/53/EU (RED), 2009/125/EC (ErP), 2011/65/EU (RoHS) and EU 2023/1542 (Batteries Regulation) as amended where applicable, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Electromagnetic Compatibility, Low Voltage, Radio Equipment, Energy related Products and Restriction on the use of certain Hazardous Substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The following cables were used to evaluate this product for EMC directive 2014/30/EU compliance, and configurations other than this may affect that compliance.

CABLE TYPE	LENGTH (METER)	CORE	SHIELD
Power	1.8	✗	✗
USB	5.0	✗	✓
LAN	10.0	✗	✗

The simplified EU declaration of conformity

Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd. hereby, declares that the radio equipment type "AW-CM382" complies with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.oki.com/eu/printing/support/declaration-of-conformity>

The summary of the statement of compliance

Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd. hereby states that this product complies with The Product Security and Telecommunications Infrastructure (Security Requirements for Relevant Connectable Products) Regulations 2023.

The full text of the statement of compliance is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.oki.com/uk/printing/support/declaration-of-conformity/index.html>

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL project. It is intended for use with the OpenSSL toolkit

(<http://www.openssl.org/>).

This product includes software created by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

About this manual

This section lists a variety of information about this machine. Please read through this manual before using the machine.

Manual structure

- User's Manual (PDF)...Available on our website. You can also download it to read.
- Online Manual...available on our website.

About this manual

- The reproduction of this manual, in whole or in part, without permission is strictly prohibited.
- The content of this manual may be changed without a prior notice in the future.
- Efforts have been exerted to make the content of this manual as complete as possible. However, should you notice any errors, omissions or other problems, contact the retail store where you made the purchase.
- Notwithstanding the foregoing, we shall not have any liability in regard to any operational effect related to the instructions contained in this manual.

Copyrights

All rights belong to Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd. This manual may not be reproduced, transcribed or translated without permission. Be sure to obtain the written approval from Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

© 2025 Oki Electric Industry Co., Ltd.

About the description

This section describes the marks, symbols, abbreviations and illustrations used in this manual.

This manual uses B433 as an example for illustration purposes unless otherwise specified.

This manual uses screens of the following operating systems unless otherwise specified.

- For Windows: Windows 11
- For macOS: macOS Sequoia 15

Sometimes, the model name is written as [OKI Printer].

Depending on the used OS, model and version, the description in this manual may differ.

About marks

This manual uses the following marks.

Mark	Meaning
	Indicates cautions and restrictions for the correct operation of this machine. Be sure to read them to avoid misoperation.
	Indicates useful tips and references on how to use this machine. We recommend you read them.
	Indicates reference items. Please read them to learn the detailed information.

About symbols

This section describes the symbols used in this manual and their meanings.

Symbol	Meaning
« »	Indicates buttons on the operator panel of this machine. Indicates keys on the PC keyboard.
[]	Indicates menu names, item names, options, etc. that appear on the display. Indicates menus, windows and dialog box names that appear on the PC screen. They can be clearly distinguished in the description and procedure illustration.
" "	Indicates messages and input texts that appear on the display. Indicates file names on the PC. Indicates item titles of link destinations.
-	Indicates the menu path of this machine or the PC.
	Indicates that paper shall be loaded in the paper tray in landscape orientation.
	Indicates that paper shall be loaded in the paper tray in portrait orientation.

Features of this machine

- **Easy maintenance with front access**

You can replace consumables and maintenance parts, and clear a paper jam from the front side. In addition, back access has been eliminated.

- **Immediate start of printing thanks to short warm-up time**

The warm-up time of this machine has been shortened in comparison with conventional models.

- **Massive printing possible with the extension tray**

Up to three extension trays can be installed.

- **An increased service life of the machine**

The service life of this machine has been extended in comparison with existing models.

- **Reduced installation space**

The top maintenance space is reduced.

- **Easy mobile printing and initialization with the NFC and app**

You can print and initialize this machine by using the specialized application from your NFC-compatible smartphone, tablet or other mobile devices.



- Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.

- **Web page**

You can manage this machine by accessing the web page of this machine from the web browser of your PC or mobile device like a smartphone or tablet.

 [Managing the machine from the web page](#)(P.200)



- For the difference between B433 and B513, please refer to "[Specifications](#)(P.424)".

2

Preparations and connecting this machine to your PC

Installation	18
Unpacking	20
Checking the accessories	22
Installing optional accessories	23
Initialization upon power-on	33
Loading paper in the tray	35
Connecting via a wired LAN	37
Connection form via a wireless LAN	45
Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure).....	46
Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct).....	58
Connecting via USB	62
Installing software on your PC	63

Installation

Installation environment

Install this machine in the following environment.

Ambient temperature: 10° C to 32° C

Ambient humidity: 20% to 80% RH (relative humidity)

Max. wet-bulb temperature: 25°C



- Make sure there is no condensation. Otherwise, malfunction may be caused.
- If the ambient relative humidity is 30% RH or less, use a humidifier or static prevention mat.
- The operating noise of this machine may be a concern depending on the installation environment. If the operating noise is a concern, it is recommended to install this machine in a remote location or in a separate room.
- Do not install this machine near combustion appliances that produce combustion emissions. Otherwise, the printing may be lighter.



WARNING

- Do not install it close to high-temperature locations or naked flames.
- Do not install it in locations where chemical reactions occur (e.g., laboratories).
- Do not install it close to combustible solutions such as alcohol and thinners.
- Do not install it within reach of little kids.
- Do not install it in an unstable location (e.g., unsteady tables and sloping locations).
- Do not install it in humid or dusty locations, or in locations exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not install it in environments with salt air, corrosive gas, NOx or SOx.
- Do not install it in locations subject to frequent vibration.
- Do not install it in locations where the air vents of this machine are blocked.



CAUTION

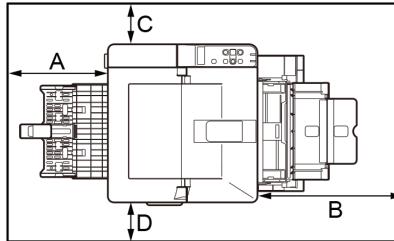
- Do not install directly on long-hair rugs or carpets.
- Do not install in locations with poor air circulation or ventilation like sealed rooms.
- Ensure adequate ventilation if using it continuously for long hours in a small room.
- Keep it away from strong magnetic fields and noise sources.
- Keep it away from monitors and TVs.
- To move the machine, stand in front of and behind the machine, hold the handle at the bottom of the machine, and carry it.

Installation space

Install this machine on a flat desk which is larger than its bottom.

Keep sufficient space around this machine as shown in the following figure.

- Plan view

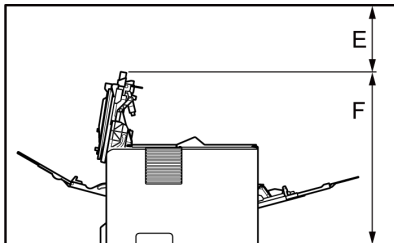


	B433	B513
A	When the rear output tray is not used: 10 cm When the rear output tray is used: 22 cm or above. Please keep it away from the wall so that it does not interfere with the alignment of the paper to be used.	
B	When the MP tray is not used: 25 cm When the MP tray is used: Check that there is enough space according to the size of paper to be used.	
C	10 cm	
D	10 cm	



- Depending on the installation environment, the temperature inside this machine may rise and the printing speed may slow down.

- Side view



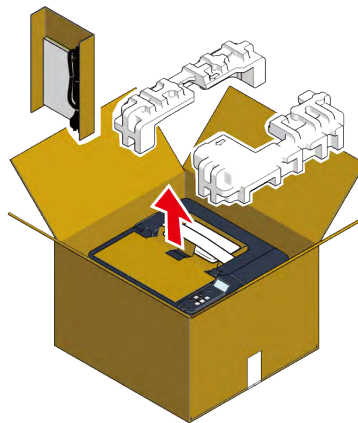
	B433	B513
E	10cm	10cm
F	43 cm	47 cm

Unpacking

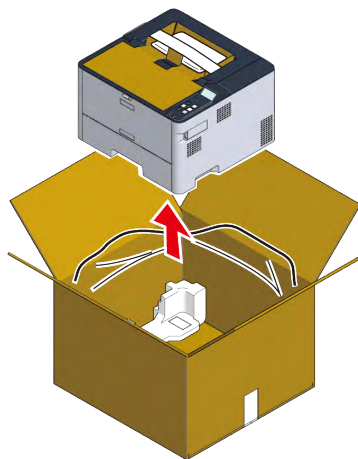


- Be sure to start with the consumables/maintenance parts that come with this machine. If you start with any other consumables/maintenance parts than the supplied ones, the service life will not be displayed correctly or you will not be able to use the supplied accessories later.
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (approx. 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- The packing case and cushioning materials are required to ship this machine. Keep them properly instead of discarding them.

- 1 Open the packing case, and take out the accessories and cushioning materials.

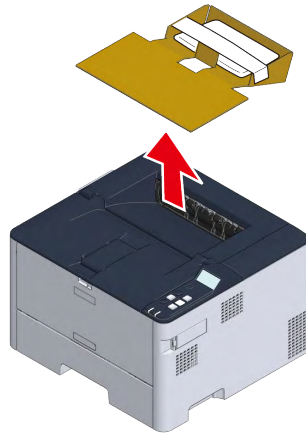


- 2 Take this machine from the plastic bag.



- 3 Lift the machine and place it in the installation location.

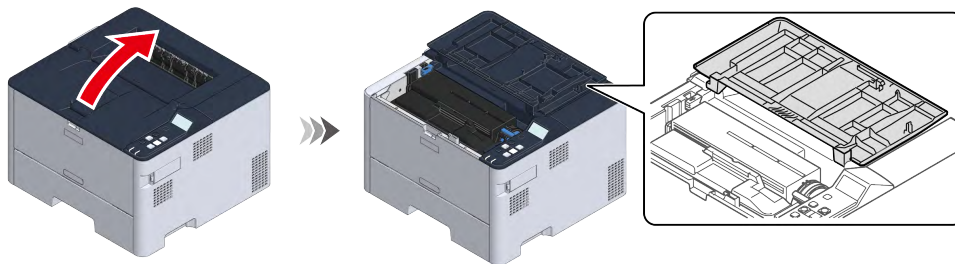
- 4 Remove the corrugated cardboard sheet on the top of this machine.



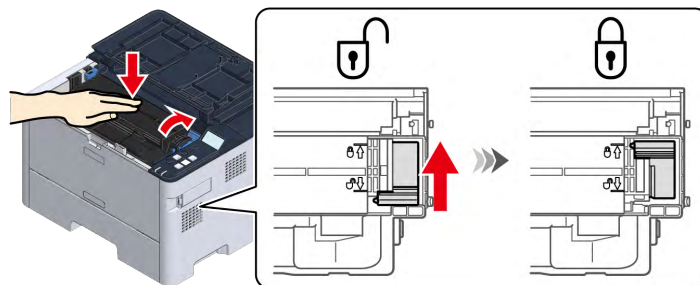
- 5 Open the top cover (front).



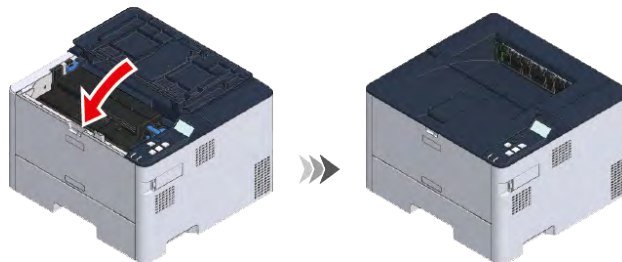
- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



- 6 Press the starter toner cartridge from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side in the direction of the lock mark until it stops.



- 7 Close the top cover (front).



- Refer to "[Installing optional accessories](#)(P.23)" if you want to use the optional expansion tray unit.

Checking the accessories

Check that you have all of the following.



- See "[Unpacking](#)(P.20)" for the unpacking method.



- Be sure to start with the consumables that come with this machine. If you start with any other consumables than the supplied ones, the service life will not be displayed correctly or you will not be able to use the supplied accessories later.

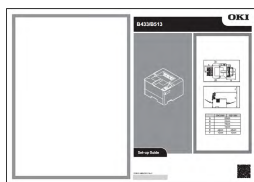
- Main unit
- Starter toner cartridge
- Image drum



- The starter toner cartridge is installed on the image drum. The image drum is attached to the main unit by default.
- Do not remove the starter toner cartridge from the image drum.
- The number of printable pages of the starter toner cartridge is approximately 2,000 (which is the reference value when the standard print data specified by ISO/IEC 19752 is printed on one side of A4 paper in our in-house test).



- Installation Guide



- DVD



- Power cord



- LAN cables and USB cable are not included. Please prepare them separately according to the connection environment.

 [Connecting via a wired LAN](#)(P.37)

 [Connecting via USB](#)(P.62)

Installing optional accessories

This section describes how to install optional accessories. If no option is installed, proceed to "[Initialization upon power-on\(P.33\)](#)".

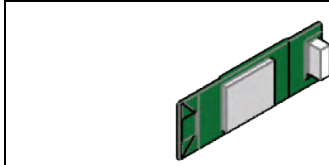
The following optional accessories are available.



- Be sure to turn off the power supply, disconnect the power cord and any other cables, and then install the optional accessories. If you install optional accessories while the power supply is on, the main unit and optional accessories may break down.

[Turning the power off\(P.73\)](#)

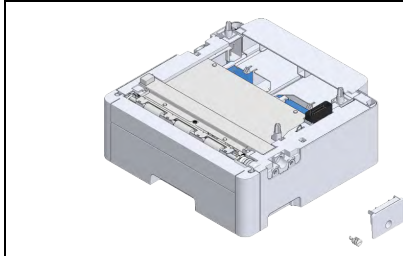
- Wireless LAN module



Install it when you want to connect this machine via a wireless LAN.

[Installing the wireless LAN module\(P.23\)](#)

- Expansion tray unit

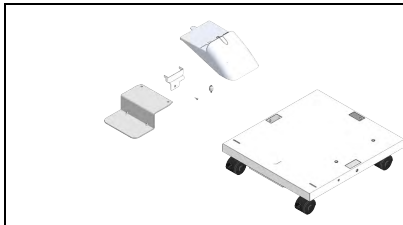


Install it if you want to increase the amount of paper that can be loaded in this machine.

You can load 580 sheets of paper (with a weight of 64 g/m²). Up to 3 levels can be expanded.

[Installing the expansion tray unit\(P.25\)](#)

- Dedicated caster stand



Install it to make this machine easier to move. After moving, fix it with a stopper.

[Installing the dedicated caster stand\(P.27\)](#)

- Extended wired LAN module (recommended)

For details, please visit our website.

For the mounting method, please refer to "[1-2. Installing the extended wired LAN module \(For wired LAN2\)\(P.37\)](#)".



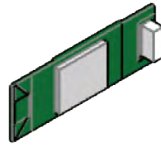
- After installing the expansion tray unit, install the software on your PC and set the optional accessories in the printer driver. Refer to "[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)".

Installing the wireless LAN module

Install it when you want to connect this machine via a wireless LAN. After installation, you need to follow the procedure to enable the Wireless LAN module on the operator panel.

This section describes the procedure for installing the wireless LAN module and enabling the wireless LAN module on the operator panel.

You can also use standard wired LAN and wireless LAN on different networks at the same time.



- 1 Press the power button to power off this machine, and then disconnect the power cord.



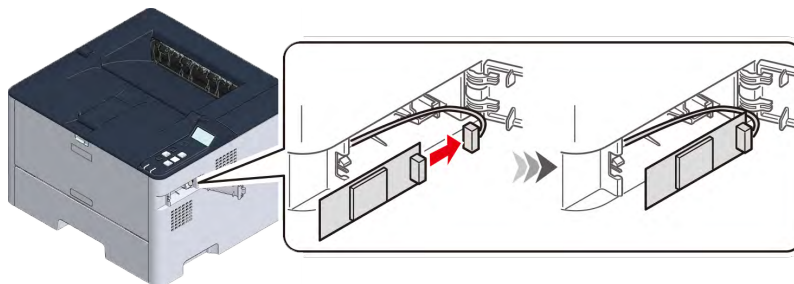
- If you install it with the power supply turned on, the main unit or the wireless LAN module may be damaged.

 [Turning the power off\(P.73\)](#)

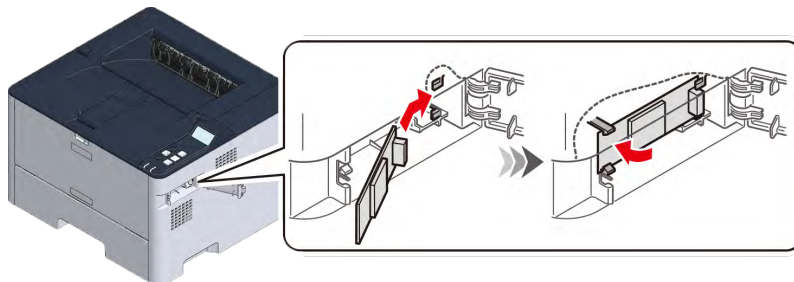
- 2 Open the wireless LAN module cover on the side of this machine.



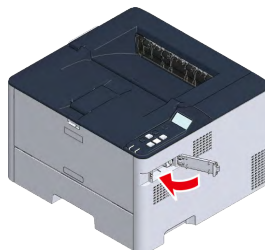
- 3 Pull out the connector and insert it into the wireless LAN module.



- 4 Insert the wireless LAN module along the guide with the label facing the outside, and push it toward the main unit to fix.



- 5 Close the wireless LAN module cover.



- 6 Plug the power cord to this machine.

 [Initialization upon power-on\(P.33\)](#)

Refer to the next section for the procedure for connecting via a wireless LAN.

- [Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)
- [Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)
- [Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)

Installing the expansion tray unit

 CAUTION	Injury may be caused.	
The machine may tip over. Be sure to attach the supplied connecting parts.		

Install the expansion tray unit if you want to increase the amount of paper that can be loaded. After installation, set the number of trays in the printer driver.

Up to 3 expansion tray units can be installed. Be sure to attach the supplied connecting parts.

To install 2 or more expansion trays, install the optional dedicated caster stand and set the anti-tip feet to avoid the risk of tipping.

To install this machine on a table, it is recommended to install one expansion tray.

- [Installing the dedicated caster stand\(P.27\)](#)

A flat-head screwdriver is required to install the expansion tray unit.



- The packing case and cushioning materials are required to ship the expansion tray unit. Keep them properly instead of discarding them.
- When an extension tray is used to print from, if the printing position shifts, the printing position is corrected for each extension tray. For details, see "[Correcting the print position of the tray\(P.186\)](#)".

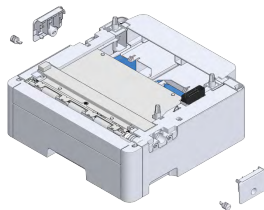
This section takes for an example the case where one expansion tray unit is installed in B433.

1 Check that you have all the parts of the expansion tray unit.

Expansion tray unit

Connecting parts (x2)

Screws (x2)



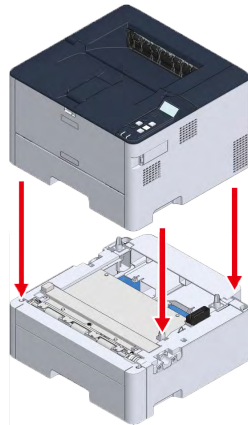
2 Press the power button to power off the main unit, and disconnect the power cord and any other cables.



- Be sure to turn off the power supply, disconnect the power cord and any other cables, and then install the expansion tray unit. If you install the expansion tray unit while the power supply is on, this machine and the expansion tray unit may break down.
- If you install it with any cable connected, you may get injured by getting your feet trapped by the cable.

3 Install the first expansion tray unit.

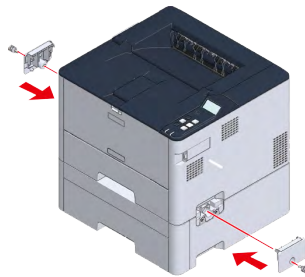
- 4 Align the right side and front of the main unit and the expansion tray unit, and gently stack them so that the holes on the bottom of the main unit and the protrusions of the expansion tray unit are aligned.



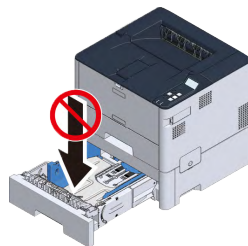
- 5 Use a flat-head screwdriver to connect the left and right sides of the main unit and the expansion tray unit with the supplied connecting parts.



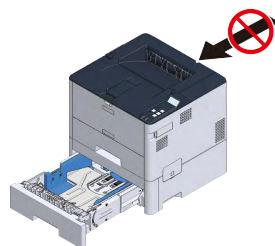
- At this time, do not push the main unit left, right, back or forth.



- When moving the machine or replacing consumables or maintenance parts, or loading paper in the tray, check the following points to prevent the printer from tipping over.
 - After stacking the expansion trays, do not push the main unit left, right, back or forth.
 - Do not press on the paper cassette from above when the paper cassette is pulled out.



- Do not press on the main unit from the back when the paper cassette is pulled out.



- 6 Plug the power cord or any removed cables back to the main unit.
[Initialization upon power-on\(P.33\)](#)
- 7 Press the power button to power on this machine.
- 8 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 9 Check that [Information] is selected, and press «OK».
- 10 Check that [Tray Count] is selected, and press «OK».
- 11 Check that the expansion tray unit you installed appears on the display.
- 12 After checking the display, press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.
- 13 After you have connected you PC and this machine and installed the software, set the expansion tray unit in the printer driver.
[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)

Installing the dedicated caster stand

 CAUTION	Injury may be caused.	
The machine may tip over. Be sure to attach the supplied connecting parts. To install two or more expansion trays, be sure to mount the anti-tip feet.		

It is a stand with casters for moving this machine.

It also comes with anti-tip feet to avoid the risk of tipping. It is recommended to use it when the expansion tray is installed.

A Phillips screwdriver and a flat-head screwdriver are required to install the caster stand.



- To install two or more expansion trays, be sure to install the dedicated caster stand, the anti-tip feet and the attached fixing parts to avoid the risk of tipping.
- The packing case and cushioning materials are required to ship the dedicated caster stand. Keep them properly instead of discarding them.

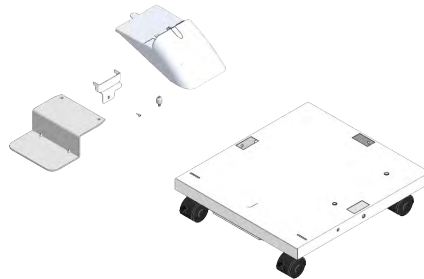
- 1 Press the power button to power off the main unit, and disconnect the power cord and any other cables.



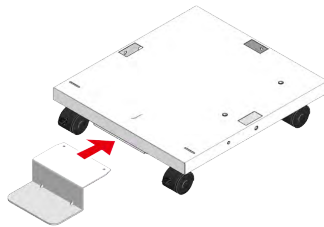
- If you install it with any cable connected, you may get injured by getting your feet trapped by the cable.

2 Check that you have all the parts of the dedicated caster stand.

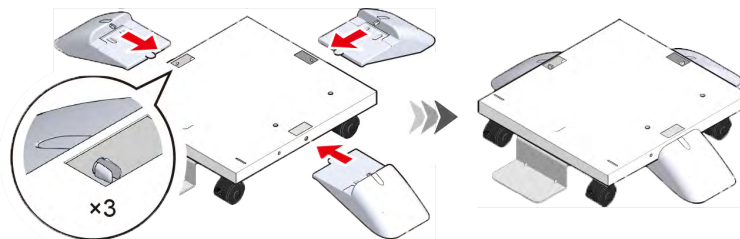
- (1) Main unit
- (2) Anti-tip foot a (x 1)
- (3) Anti-tip foot b (x 3)
- (4) Positioning pin (x 2)
- (5) Metal fixtures of the caster stand (x 2)
- (6) Screw (x 2)



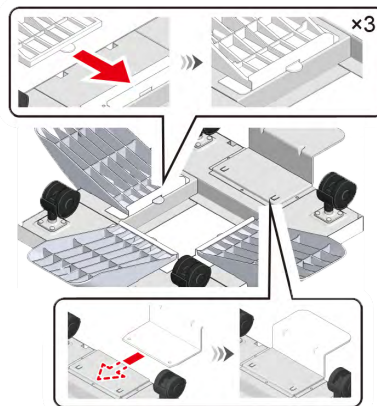
3 Mount the anti-tip foot a on the front of the dedicated caster stand.



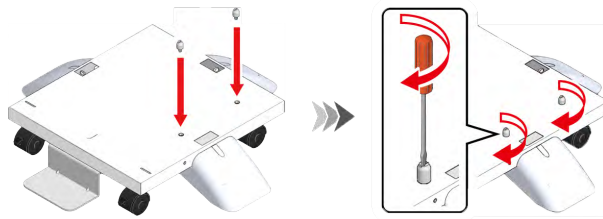
4 Mount the anti-tip foot b (x 3) to both sides and the back of the dedicated caster stand.



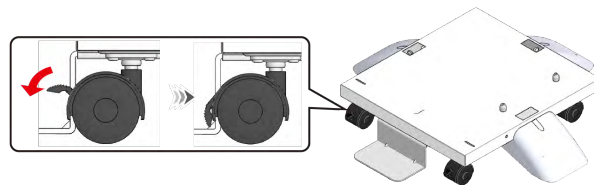
5 Check that the anti-tip foot a and the anti-tip foot b (x 3) are inserted in place by turning the dedicated caster stand upside down.



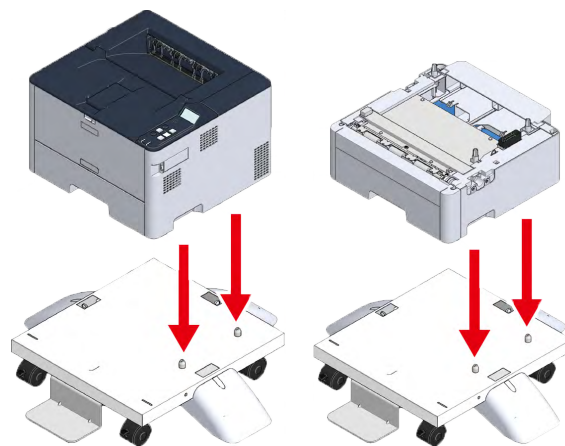
- 6** Turn the dedicated caster stand back and mount the positioning pin (x 2). Rotate to fix the positioning pin (x 2) with a flat-head screwdriver.



- 7** Lock the caster (x 2) to prevent the dedicated caster from moving during the installation of the main unit and the expansion tray.

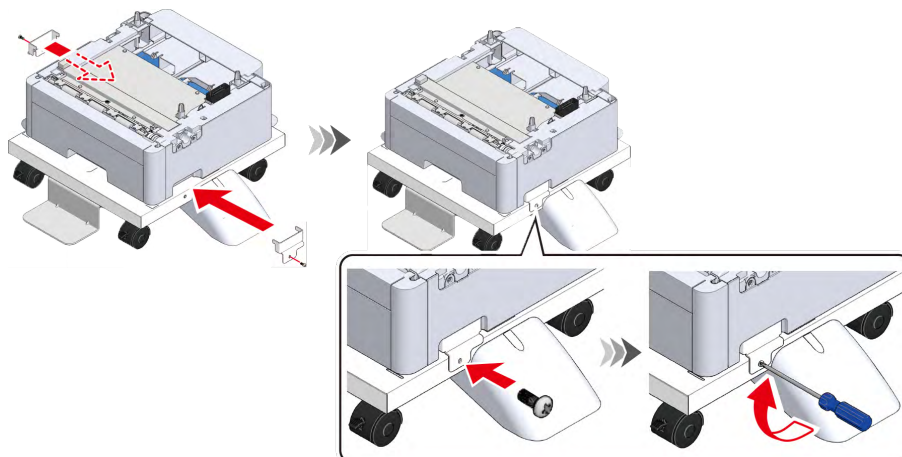


- 8** Align the front of the main unit or expansion tray with the long holes at both ends of the front side of the dedicated caster stand, and gently stack them so that the positioning pins of the dedicated caster stand fit into the holes on the bottom.

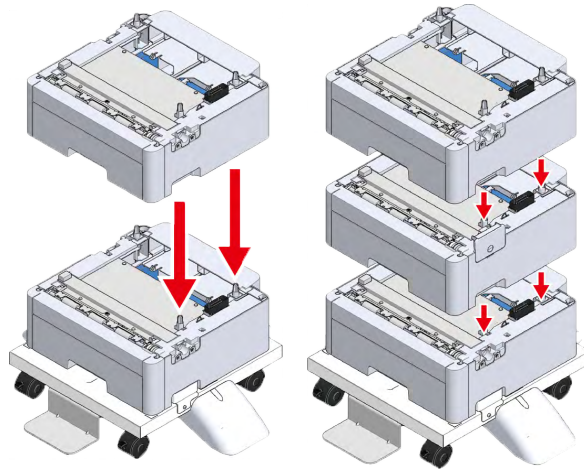


- 9** Fix the main unit or the expansion tray and the dedicated caster stand with the metal fixtures (x 2) and the screws (x 2) by using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

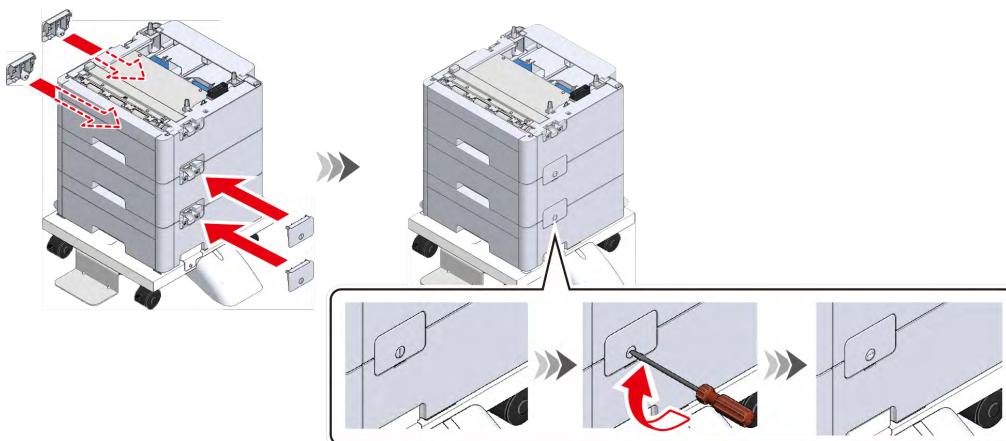
The figure shows an example of fixing the expansion tray and the dedicated caster stand.



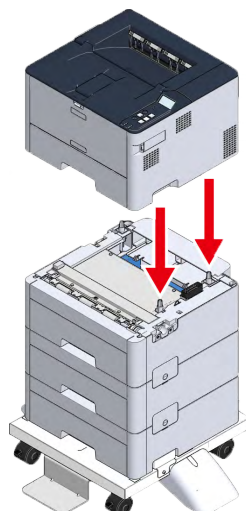
- 10** To add an expansion tray unit, align the right side and front of the expansion tray unit attached to the dedicated caster stand and the right side and front of the expansion tray unit to be installed, and gently stack them so that the holes on the bottom and the protrusions are aligned.



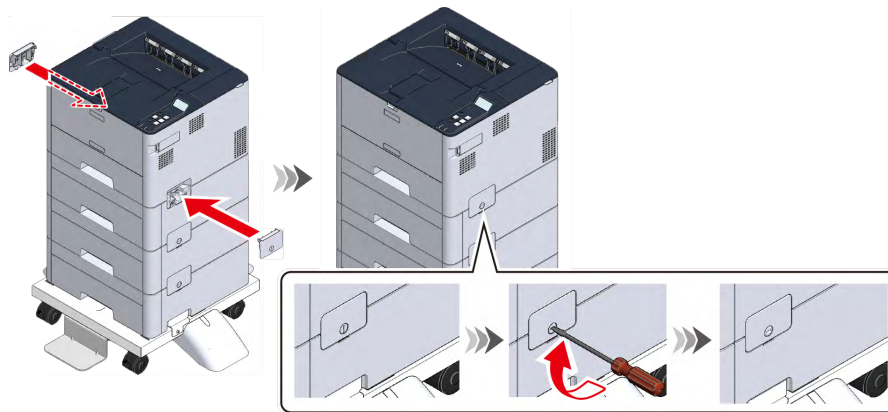
- 11** Use a flat-head screwdriver to connect the left and right sides of the stacked expansion tray units with the supplied connecting parts.



- 12** To add an expansion tray unit, align the right side and front of the main unit and the expansion tray unit, and gently stack them so that the holes on the bottom of the main unit and the protrusions of the expansion tray unit are aligned.



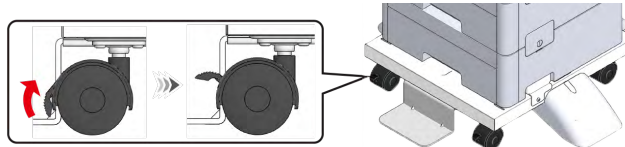
- 13** When an expansion tray is installed, fix the main unit and the expansion tray on both sides with the connecting parts supplied with the expansion tray by using a flat-head screwdriver.



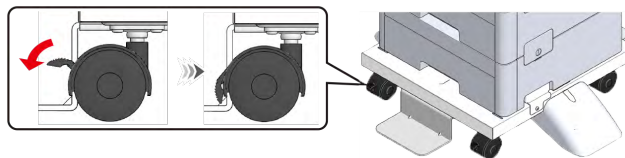
- 14** Before moving this machine, unlock the casters (x 2).



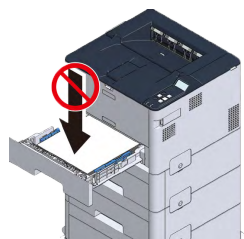
- Press the casters while moving this machine. If you press the main unit, it may fall over.



- 15** After moving the machine to the destination location, lock the casters (x 2) to avoid accidental movement.



- When moving the machine or replacing consumables or maintenance parts, or loading paper in the tray, check the following points to prevent the printer from tipping over.
 - Press the casters while moving this machine. If you press the main unit, it may fall over.
 - Do not press on the cassette from above when the cassette is pulled out.



- Do not press on this machine from the back with the cassette pulled out.



- 16** Plug the power cord or any removed cables back to this machine.
- 17** Press the power button to power on this machine.
- 18** If you have not installed an expansion tray unit, you are now done.
If an expansion tray unit is installed, press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 19** Check that [Information] is selected, and press «OK».
- 20** Check that [Tray Count] is selected, and press «OK».
- 21** Check that the expansion tray unit you installed appears on the display.
- 22** After checking the display, press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.
- 23** After you have connected you PC and this machine and installed the software, set the expansion tray unit in the printer driver.
 [Setting the printer driver](#)(P.67)

Initialization upon power-on

About the power supply

Voltage: 110 to 127V AC (Range: 99 to 140V AC) / 220 to 240V AC (Range: 198 to 264V AC)

Power frequency: 50/60 Hz

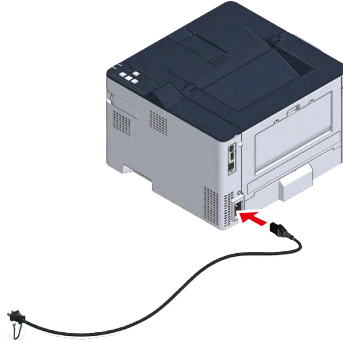


- If the power supply is unstable, use a voltage regulator.
- The maximum power consumption of this machine is 1,140W. Check that there is sufficient voltage capacity.
- The performance cannot be assured if an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) or inverter is used. Do not use an uninterruptible power supply or inverter.

 WARNING	Otherwise, a fire may be caused.	 
• Be sure to turn off the power supply before attaching or detaching the power cord or earth wire. • Be sure to connect the earth wire to the dedicated earth terminal. If you cannot get it grounded, contact the store where you purchased the product. • Never connect the earth wire to any water pipe, gas pipe, telephone line ground, lightning rod, etc. • Be sure to connect the earth wire before connecting the power cord to the power outlet. Also, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet before disconnecting the earth wire. • Be sure to hold the power plug when connecting or disconnecting the power cord. • Be sure to insert the power cord all the way into the power outlet. • Do not connect or disconnect the power cord with wet hands. • Do not lay the power cord in a place where it may be stepped on, and do not place anything on the power cord. • Do not bundle or bind the power cord in use. • Do not use a damaged power cord. • Avoid octopus wiring. • Do not connect this machine and any other electric appliances to the same power outlet. In particular, if this machine shares a same power outlet with an air conditioner, copier, shredder, etc., this machine may malfunction due to electrical noise. If this machine has to share a power outlet with other appliances, use a commercially available noise filter or noise cut transformer. • Use the power cord provided with this machine and plug it directly into the power outlet. Do not use a power cord for other products with this machine. • Do not use any extension cord with this machine. If it is unavoidable, use one with a rating of 15A or higher. • If an extension cord is used, this machine may not work properly due to AC voltage drop. • Do not turn off the power supply or unplug the power cord while printing. • Unplug the power cord if it will be leave unused for a long period of time due to holidays or traveling. • Do not use the power cord that comes with this machine for any other products.		

Connecting the power cord

- 1 Plug the power cord into the power connector of this machine.



- 2 Insert the power plug into the power outlet.

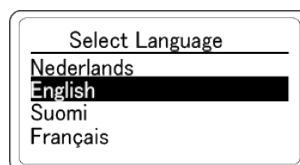
For details on how to turn the power on and off, refer to "[Turning the power on/off \(P.73\)](#)".

Initialization upon power-on of the machine

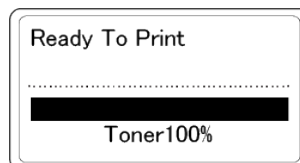
- 1 Press and hold the power button for approx. 1 second.



- 2 When the [Language Setup] screen appears on the display, press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select the language you want to set, and then press «OK».



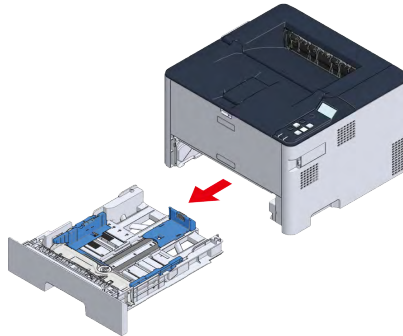
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions to set the time.
- 4 When the setting is complete, "Ready To Print" is displayed.



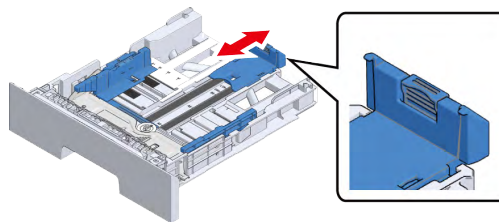
Loading paper in the tray

This section describes the procedure assuming that A4-sized plain paper is loaded in Tray 1 of B433 (i.e. the factory default state). To load paper of a different size or to load paper into B513, please refer to "[Loading paper\(P.74\)](#)".

- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



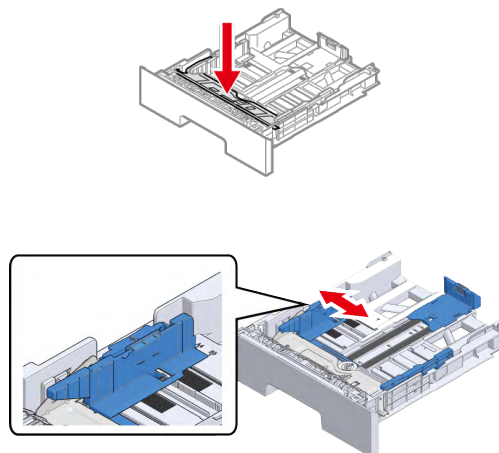
- 2 Hold the blue part of the paper stopper, and pull the paper stopper to the rear side of the paper cassette.



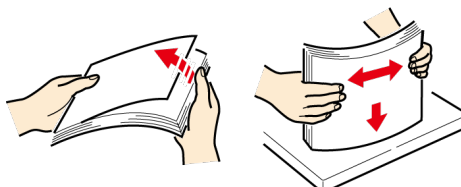
- 3 Hold the blue part of the paper guide, and slide the paper guide to fit the width of the A4 size.



- If the metal plate of the paper cassette is raised, press it down firmly until it clicks into place, and then insert it into the printer. If the metal plate is inserted into the main unit while it is raised, malfunction may be caused.



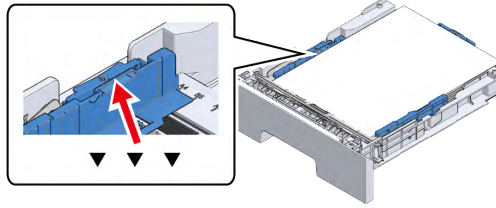
- 4 Shuffle the paper well. Align edges of the paper horizontally.



5 Load the paper with the printing side down, and press it down from top.



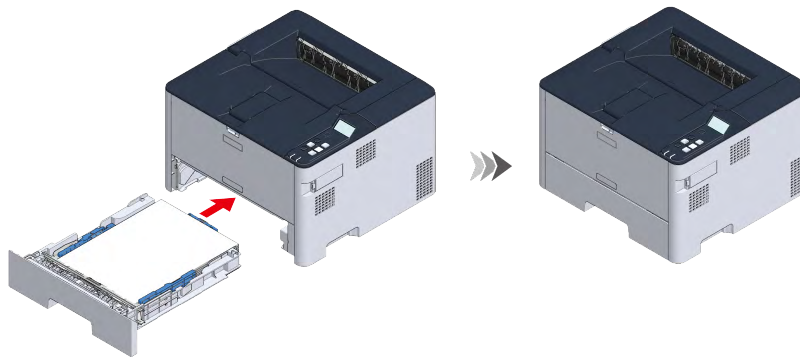
- Do not exceed the ▼ mark on the paper guide when loading paper.



6 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



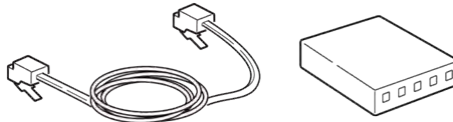
7 When the [Tray1 Config] screen is displayed, press «BACK».

Connecting via a wired LAN

You can print by connecting this machine to a PC with a LAN cable. Connect the LAN cable, and set the IP address or the like on the operator panel.

1-1. Connecting the LAN cable

- 1 Prepare a LAN cable (category 5e or better, twisted pair, straight) and a hub.

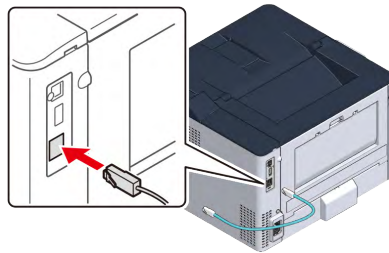


- 2 Press the power button to power off this machine.

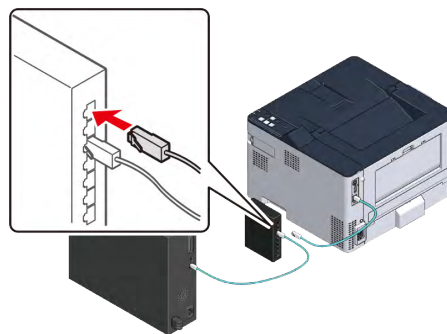


- If you are using the extended wired LAN module, please refer to "1-2. Installing the extended wired LAN module (For wired LAN2)(P.37)".

- 3 Plug one end of the LAN cable into the network interface connector (LAN1) of this machine.



- 4 Plug the other end of the LAN cable into the hub.



Next, set network information like the IP address on this machine.

 [2. Setting the IP address or the like\(P.41\)](#)

1-2. Installing the extended wired LAN module (For wired LAN2)



- Depending on the specific region, the extended wired LAN module may not be installed.

Install it if you want to connect this machine to two different networks with a wired LAN. After installation, you need to enable the wired LAN module on the operator panel.

This section describes the procedure for installing the extended wired LAN module and enabling the extended wired LAN module on the operator panel.



- It cannot be used together with the wireless LAN module at the same time.

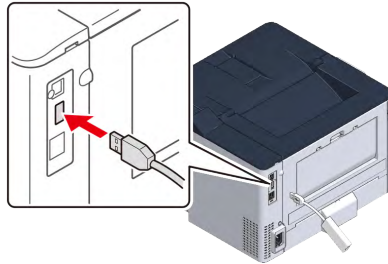
1 Press the power button to power off this machine, and then disconnect the power cord.



- If you install it with the power supply turned on, the main unit or extended wired LAN module may be damaged.

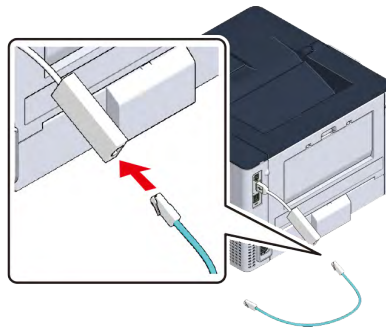
 [Turning the power off\(P.73\)](#)

2 Insert the extended wired LAN module into the USB host port.

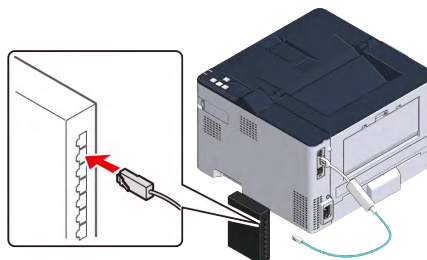


3 Attach the power cord to this machine and one end of the LAN cable to the extended wired LAN module.

 [Initialization upon power-on\(P.33\)](#)

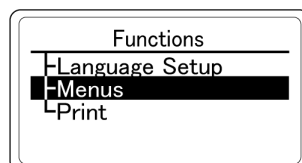


4 Plug the other end of the LAN cable into the hub.

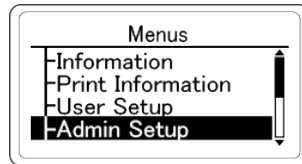


5 Press the power button to power on this machine.

6 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

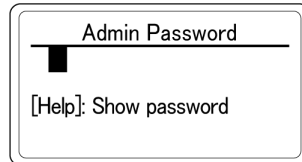


- 7 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

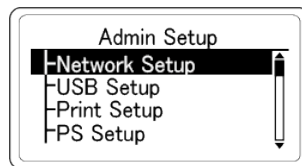


- 8 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

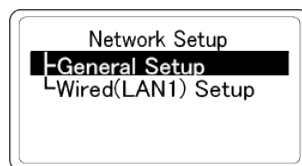
[Administrator Password](#)(P.195)



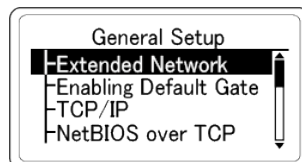
- 9 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



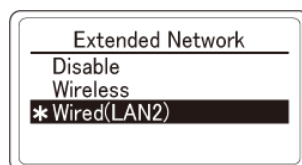
- 10 Check that [General Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



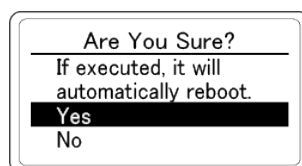
- 11 Check that [Extended Network] is selected, and press «OK».



- 12 Press ▼ to select [Wired(LAN2)], and press «OK».

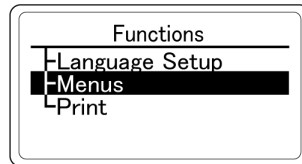


- 13 When [Are you sure?] is displayed, check that [Yes] is selected, and press «OK».

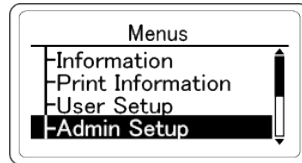


- 14 The machine will restart, so wait until the standby screen appears.

- 15** Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

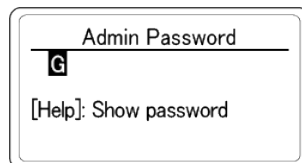


- 16** Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

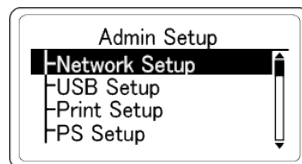


- 17** Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

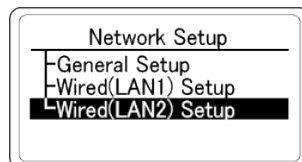
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



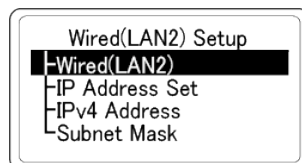
- 18** Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



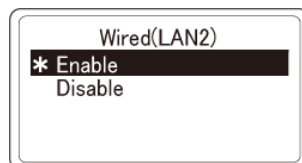
- 19** Press ▼ several times to select [Wired(LAN2) Setup], and press «OK».



- 20** Check that [Wired(LAN2)] is selected, and press «OK».



- 21** Check that [Enable] is selected, and press «OK».



Next, set network information like the IP address on this machine.

[2. Setting the IP address or the like\(P.41\)](#)

2. Setting the IP address or the like

Set values suitable for the current environment on the operator panel.

This section takes for example a connection to a standard wired LAN (LAN1).

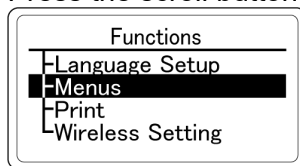
If you are using an extended wired LAN module, please read "Wired(LAN2) Setup" instead of "Wired(LAN1) Setup" and configure the settings.

The following case is taken for example here.

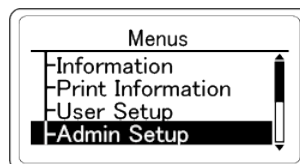
- IP address of this machine: 192.168.0.2
- Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
- Gateway address: 192.168.0.1

1 Press the power button to power on this machine.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

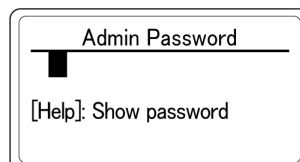


3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

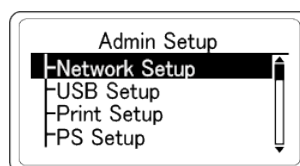


4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

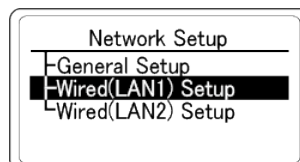
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



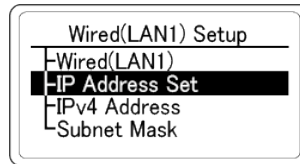
5 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



6 Press ▼ to select [Wired(LAN1) Setup], and press «OK».

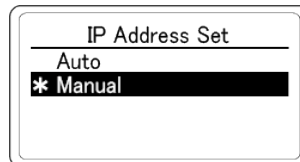


- 7** Press ▼ to select [IP Address Set], and press «OK».



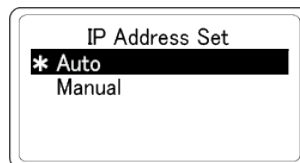
To set the IP address manually, press ▼ to select [Manual] and then press «OK», and check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected value.

Go to Step 8.

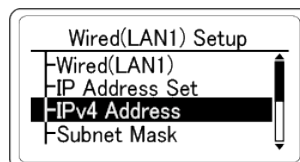


To obtain an IP address automatically, check that [Auto] is selected and [*] is displayed to the left of the selected value, and then press «BACK».

Go to Step 14.

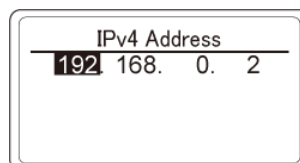


- 8** Press «BACK», then press ▼ to select [IPv4 Address] on the [Wired(LAN1) Setup] screen, and finally press «OK».

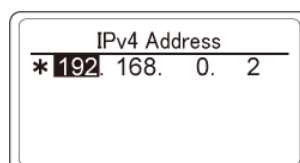


- 9** Since the first digit of the IP address is selected, press ▲ or ▼ to select the value to be set and then press «OK».

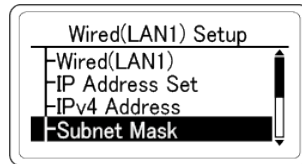
When the cursor moves to the next digit, follow the same procedure to set the value.



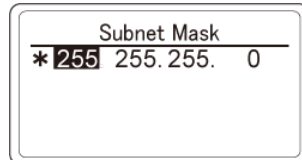
- 10** After all the values have been input, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



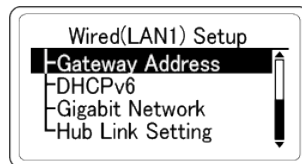
- 11** Press ▼ to select [Subnet Mask], and press «OK».



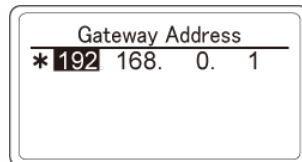
- 12** Set the subnet mask in the same way as the IP address. After all the digits have been set, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



- 13** Press ▼ to select [Gateway Address], and press «OK».



- 14** Set the gateway address in the same way as the IP address. After all the digits have been set, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



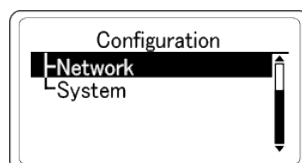
- 15** Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

3. Checking the connection from a PC

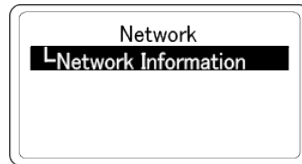
Check the IP address of this machine, and access it from a PC by using the web browser.

If you are using an extended wired LAN module, please read [Wired(LAN2) Setup] instead of [Wired(LAN1) Setup] and configure the settings.

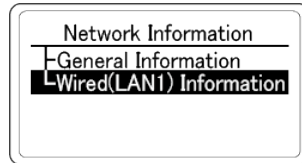
- 1** Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 2** Check that [Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».
- 3** Press ▼ several times to select [Network], and then press «OK».



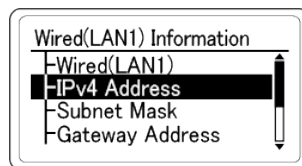
- 4 Check that [Network Information] is selected, and press «OK».



- 5 Press ▼ to select [Wired(LAN1) Information], and then press «OK».



- 6 Press ▼ to select [IPv4 Address], and then press «OK».



- 7 Take a note of the displayed IP address.

- 8 Start the web browser in your PC.

- 9 Input "https://(the IP address recorded in Step 7)", and press the «Enter» key.

Connection is successful when the web page of this machine is displayed.



- If the web page of this machine is not displayed, the network connection between the PC or other terminals and this machine has failed.
Check if [IP Address Set], [IPv4 Address], [Subnet Mask] and [Gateway Address] of this machine are set correctly.
- By default, when you are opening the machine's web page, use HTTPS instead of HTTP.
- By default, when you are opening the machine's web page, a warning that it may not be a legitimate server will be displayed in your web browser. Set up the certificate appropriately, or temporarily ignore the warning.
- If you cannot access the machine via HTTPS due to an expired certificate or a corrupted certificate, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel, access the web page via HTTP, and reset the HTTPS settings.
- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If the web browser you are using only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, use a web browser that supports TLS 1.2 or higher, or after understanding the security risks, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel and access the web page via HTTP.

Then, go to "[Installing software on your PC\(P.63\)](#)".

Connection form via a wireless LAN

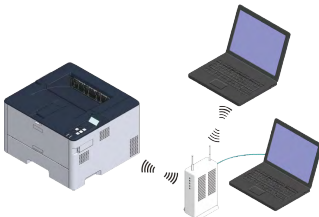
There are two types of connection forms between this machine and the PC via a wireless LAN. Select the connection form according to your environment, and prepare what is necessary as per the following table for the connection.



- Wireless LAN (Infrastructure) and wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) cannot be used simultaneously.
- Wired LAN1 and wireless LAN can be used at the same time. Please connect wired LAN1 and wireless LAN to different subnets since the communication may be unstable if they are connected to the same subnet.
- Wireless LAN and extended wired LAN cannot be used simultaneously.
- Do not place an electric appliance (especially microwave oven or digital cordless telephone) that emits weak electronic waves near this machine.
- Wireless LAN connection may be inferior in communication speed compared to wired LAN connection or USB connection depending on the environment. When printing large data such as photos, we recommend you to print via a wired LAN or USB connection.

If detailed settings such as security and server are required, set them from the web page of this machine.

 [Managing the machine from the web page\(P.200\)](#)

Form	Infrastructure	Wi-Fi Direct
Connection image		
Description	Connect this machine and the wireless terminal (PC, tablet, smartphone, etc.) via an access point.	Without an access point, connect it directly to the wireless terminal (e.g. a PC, tablet, smartphone, etc.).
Required preparations	• Check the following information and take a note. Wireless settings of the printer Auto/Manual setting of the IP address For manual setting: IPv4 Address Subnet Mask Gateway Address • Check that your wireless LAN access point supports the following environment. Standard: IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac (2.4 Ghz/5 GHz) Access mode: Infrastructure mode • Check that the wireless LAN access point supports WPS-PBC (push button) and WPS-PIN (PIN code). • If WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) is not supported, check the SSID and encryption key with the User's Manual enclosed with your wireless access point.	• Check that your wireless terminal supports the following environment. Standard: IEEE 802.11 b/g/n (2.4 Ghz) Security: WPA2-PSK (AES) • Wi-Fi Direct can only be used in the 2.4GHz band.
Connection method	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P.46)	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)



- SSID is also called the network name, ESSID or ESS-ID.
- Encryption key is also called the network key, security key, password, or pre-shared key (PSK).

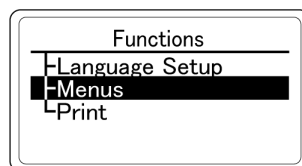
Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)



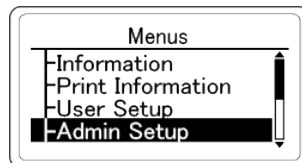
- Put this machine in an unobstructed view position near the wireless LAN access point. (The recommended distance is 30 m or less.)
- It may be difficult to connect if there is a metal, aluminum sash or reinforced concrete wall between this machine and the wireless LAN access point.
- 5GHz band (W52/53) is prohibited to use outdoors due to the Radio Law. Use it indoor only.

1. Enabling the wireless LAN function

- 1 Press the power button to power on this machine.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

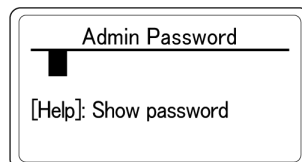


- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

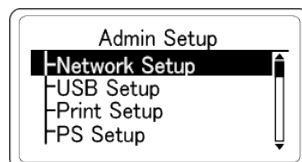


- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

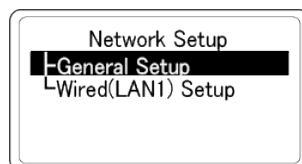
 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)



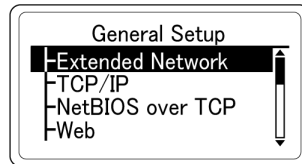
- 5 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



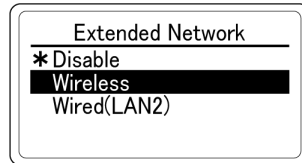
- 6 Check that [General Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



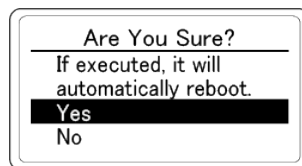
- 7 Check that [Extended Network] is selected, and press «OK».



- 8 Press ▼ to select [Wireless], and press «OK».



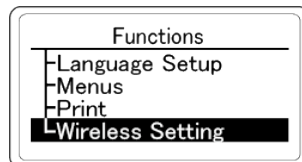
- 9 When [Are you sure?] is displayed, check that [Yes] is selected, and press «OK».



- 10 The machine will restart, so wait until the standby screen appears.
If [Not connected to wireless access point] is displayed, press «OK».
When [Set-up wireless?] is displayed, select [No], and then press «OK».

2. Enabling infrastructure

- 1 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».



- 2 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

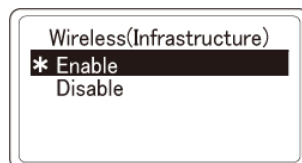
 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)

- 3 Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting], and press «OK».



- "Cannot be used simultaneously with Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

- 4 Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».



- After setting [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] to [Disable], if a screen appears to ask you to check whether or not to enable [Wireless(Infrastructure)], press «OK» to set [Wireless(Infrastructure)] to [Enable].

To set the IP address of this machine manually, go to "3. [Setting the IP address](#)(P.48)".

To obtain an IP address automatically, go to "4. [Connecting with the wireless access point](#)(P.50)".



- The factory default setting is [Auto].

3. Setting the IP address

If you want to set the machine's IP address to a fixed value, follow the procedure below.



- For [Auto], the machine's IP address may change dynamically.



- For [IPv4 Address], set a value which is not overlapped to any other networked machines.
- If you do not use the IPv6 address, set [DHCPv6] to [Disable].

The following case is taken for example here.

- IP address of this machine: 192.168.101.2
- Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
- Gateway address: 192.168.101.1

1 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

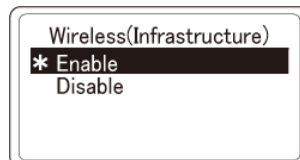
 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

3 Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting], and press «OK».

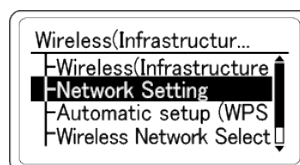


- "Cannot be used simultaneously with Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

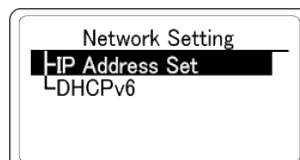
4 Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».



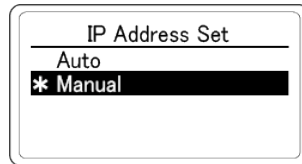
5 Press ▼ to select [Network Setting], and press «OK».



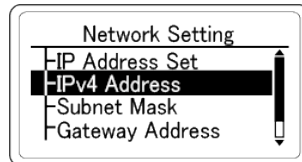
6 Check that [IP Address Set] is selected, and press «OK».



- 7 Press ▼ to select [Manual], and press «OK».

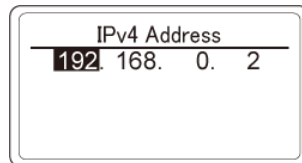


- 8 Press «BACK», then press ▼ to select [IPv4 Address] on the [Network Setting] screen, and finally press «OK».

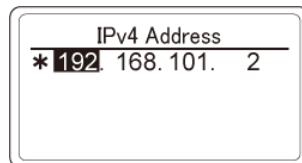


- 9 Since the first digit of the IP address is selected, press ▲ or ▼ to select the value to be set and then press «OK».

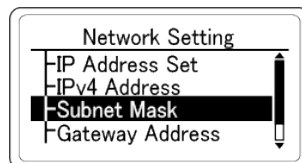
When the cursor moves to the next digit, follow the same procedure to set the value.



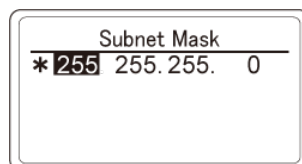
- 10 After all the values have been input, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



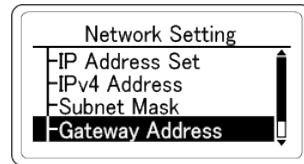
- 11 Press ▼ to select [Subnet Mask], and press «OK».



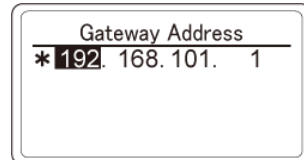
- 12 Set the subnet mask in the same way as the IP address. After all the digits have been set, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



- 13** Press ▼ to select [Gateway Address], and press «OK».



- 14** Set the gateway address in the same way as the IP address. After all the digits have been set, the cursor will return to the first digit. Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the set value, and then press «BACK».



- 15** Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

4. Connecting with the wireless access point

There are three ways as follows.

- [4-1. Connecting by selecting a wireless LAN access point\(P.50\)](#)
- [4-2. Connecting with WPS\(P.52\)](#)
- [4-3. Manual setup and connection\(P.53\)](#)



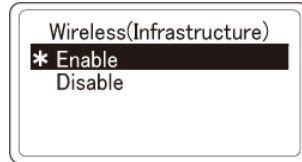
- To connect with wireless LAN by WPA/WPA2-EAP, refer to "[Setting IEEE802.1X \(Wireless LAN\)\(P.211\)](#)".

4-1. Connecting by selecting a wireless LAN access point

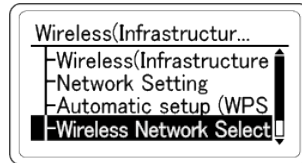
When the wireless LAN access point does not support WPS or when WPS connection does not function well, connect by specifying the wireless access point to be used from the list of wireless access points detected by this machine. In this case, it is required to input the SSID and encryption key.

- 1** Check and take a note of the SSID and encryption key on the side of the wireless LAN access point or in the User's Manual enclosed with the access point.
 - ⚠
 - WPA-EAP, WPA2-EAP and WPA3-EAP cannot be set from the operator panel. Set them from the web page of this machine.
 - 🔗 [Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)
- 2** Check that the wireless LAN access point is activated and operating properly.
- 3** Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».
- 4** Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».
 - 🔗 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)
- 5** Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting], and press «OK».
 - 📄
 - "Cannot be used simultaneously with Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

- 6 Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».

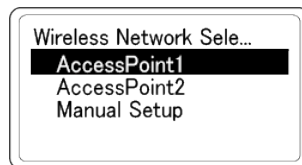


- 7 Press ▼ several times to select [Wireless Network Selection], and then press «OK».



This machine starts searching for wireless LAN access points.

- 8 A list of SSIDs of available wireless LAN access points is displayed. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the SSID of the wireless LAN access point recorded in Step 1, and press «OK».



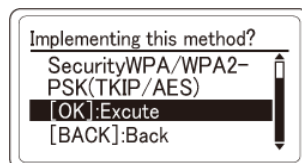
If no wireless LAN access point is found, only [Manual Setup] is displayed. In that case, make settings by following "4-3. Manual setup and connection(P.53)".

- 9 When the encryption key entry screen suitable for the encryption method of the selected wireless LAN access point is displayed, input the encryption key recorded in Step 1, and press «OK».



- The encryption key varies with the wireless LAN access point and security method.
 - If "WPA Pre-shared key" is displayed
 - Encryption method: WPA/WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE or WPA3-SAE
 - Encryption key: Input the WPA Pre-shared key.
 - If "WEP Key" is displayed
 - Encryption method: WEP
 - Encryption key: Input the WEP key.
 - In other cases
 - Encryption method: Disable (Invalid)
 - No need to enter the encryption key.

- 10 "Implementing this method?" is displayed, and the SSID and the security of the access point selected in Step 8 from the confirmation screen are displayed. If the SSID is the same as the one recorded in Step 1, press «OK».



- 11 When a screen appears indicating that the connection was successful, the connection to the wireless LAN access point is completed.

12 Go to "6. Checking the connection from a PC(P.56)".

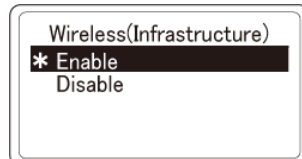
- When "Not connected to wireless access point" is displayed, repeat the procedure from Step 4, or try "4-3. Manual setup and connection(P.53)".

4-2. Connecting with WPS

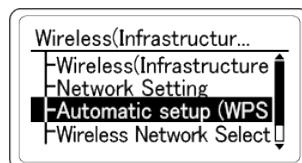
If the wireless LAN access point supports WPS, you can easily connect to the wireless LAN using the push button for easy setup (WPS button).

- Check the position of push button for easy setup (WPS button) and the time for which the button is pressed in the User's Manual enclosed with the wireless LAN access point.
- Check that the wireless LAN access point is activated and operating properly.
- Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».
- Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».
 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)
- Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting], and press «OK».

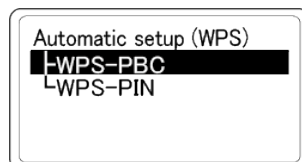
 - "Cannot be used simultaneously with Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.
- Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».



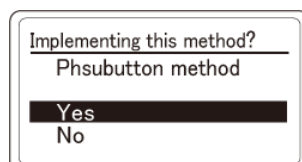
- Press ▼ several times to select [Automatic setup (WPS)], and then press «OK».



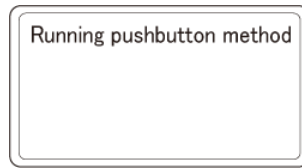
- Check that [WPS-PBC] is selected, and press «OK».



- When "Implementing this method? Pushbutton method" is displayed, check that [Yes] is selected, and press «OK».



"Running pushbutton method" is displayed, and this machine will start to search for a wireless LAN access point.



Press and hold the push button of wireless LAN access point for the period of time confirmed in Step 1 or for a few seconds.

10 When a screen appears indicating that the connection was successful, the connection to the wireless LAN access point is completed.

11 Go to "6. Checking the connection from a PC(P.56)".



- When "Not connected to wireless access point" or "Connection failed." is displayed, repeat the procedure from Step 1, or try "4-3. Manual setup and connection(P.53)".

4-3. Manual setup and connection

Set the wireless LAN access point information (SSID, encryption method, encrypted key) manually, and connect to the wireless LAN.

1 Check and take a note of the SSID, encryption method and encryption key in the User's Manual enclosed with the wireless LAN access point.



- WPA-EAP and WPA2-EAP cannot be set from the operator panel. Set them from the web page of this machine.

 [Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)



- SSID is also called the network name, ESSID or ESS-ID.
- Encryption key is also called the network key, security key, password, or pre-shared key (PSK).

2 Check that the wireless LAN access point is activated and operating properly.

3 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

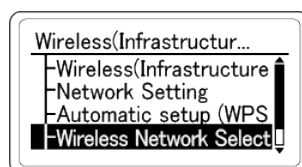
 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

5 Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting], and press «OK».



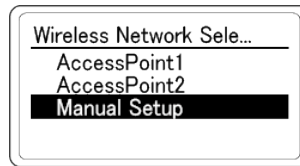
- "Cannot be used simultaneously with Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

6 Press ▼ several times to select [Wireless Network Selection], and then press «OK».

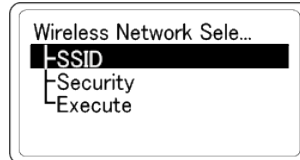


Start searching for wireless LAN access points. Please wait.

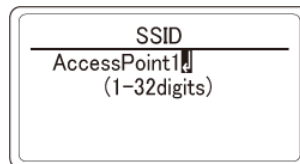
- 7** A list of SSIDs of available wireless LAN access points is displayed. Press ▼ several times to select [Manual Setup] at the end of the list, and then press «OK».



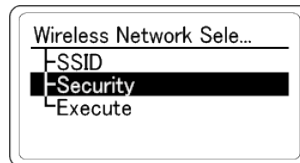
- 8** Check that [SSID] is selected, and press «OK».



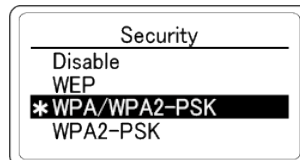
- 9** Input the SSID recorded in Step 1, and press «OK».



- 10** Press ▼ to select [Security], and then press «OK».



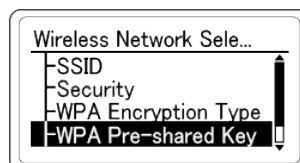
- 11** Select the encryption method recorded in Step 1, and press «OK».



- 12** Press ▼ to select [WPA Pre-shared Key], and press «OK».



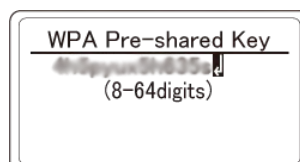
- If [WEP] is selected in [Security], the item name is displayed as [WEP key].



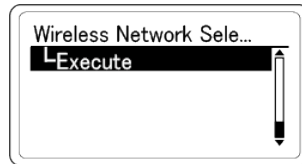
- 13** Input the encryption key recorded in Step 1, and press «OK».



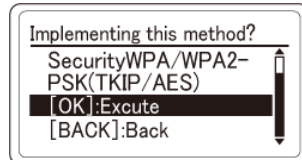
- The encryption key varies with the wireless LAN access point and security method.



- 14 Press ▼ to select [Execute], and then press «OK».



- 15 "Implementing this method?" is displayed, and the SSID input in Step 9 and the encryption method selected in Step 11 are displayed as security on the confirmation screen. If the SSID is the same as the one recorded in Step 1, press «OK».



- 16 When a screen appears indicating that the connection was successful, the connection to the wireless LAN access point is completed.

- 17 Go to "6. Checking the connection from a PC(P.56)".



- When "Not connected to wireless access point" is displayed, repeat the procedure from Step 4.
- If you cannot connect, refer to "[Troubleshooting for wireless LAN connection](#)(P.391)".
- For segment-based communication with a wireless LAN (infrastructure), refer to "[5. Choosing a valid default gateway](#)(P.55)".

5. Choosing a valid default gateway

By default, [Enabling Default Gateway] is set to [Wired(LAN1)]. This machine can use a wired LAN and wireless LAN at the same time, but only either of them can be used to connect a terminal outside the segment (a different subnet).

When a wireless LAN (infrastructure) is used to communicate across segments, follow the following procedure to change into [Wireless(Infrastructure)].

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

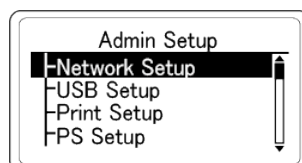
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

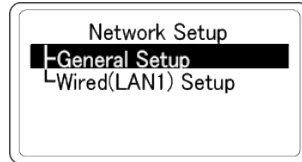
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

[Administrator Password](#)(P.195)

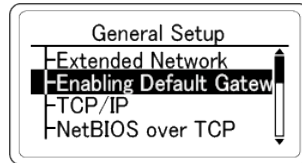
- 5 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



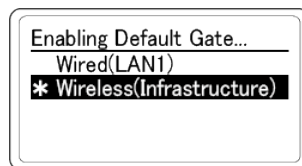
- 6 Check that [General Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



- 7 Press ▼ to select [Enabling Default Gateway], and then press «OK».



- 8 Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure)], and then press «OK».

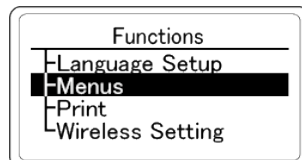


- 9 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

6. Checking the connection from a PC

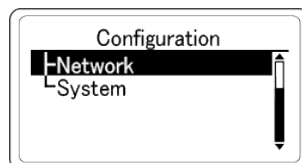
Check the IP address of the device, and access it from a PC by using the web browser.

- 1 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

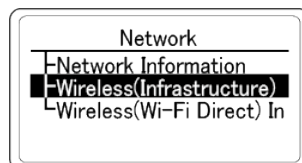


- 2 Check that [Information] is selected, and press «OK».

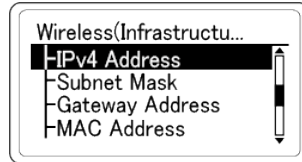
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Network], and then press «OK».



- 4 Press ▼ to select [Wireless(Infrastructure) Information], and then press «OK».



- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [IPv4 Address] and then press «OK».

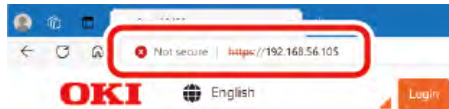


- 6 Take a note of the displayed IP address.

- 7 Start the web browser in your PC.

- 8 Input "https://(the IP address recorded in Step 6)", and press the «Enter» key.

Connection is successful when the web page of this machine is displayed.



- By default, when you are opening the machine's web page, use HTTPS instead of HTTP.
- By default, when you are opening the machine's web page, a warning that it may not be a legitimate server will be displayed in your web browser. Set up the certificate appropriately, or temporarily ignore the warning.
- If you cannot access the machine via HTTPS due to an expired certificate or a corrupted certificate, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel, access the web page via HTTP, and reset the HTTPS settings.
- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If the web browser you are using only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, use a web browser that supports TLS 1.2 or higher, or after understanding the security risks, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel and access the web page via HTTP.

Then, go to "[Installing software on your PC\(P.63\)](#)".

When using a mobile device, go to "[Printing from a mobile device\(P.277\)](#)".

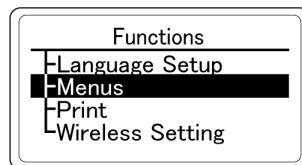
Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)



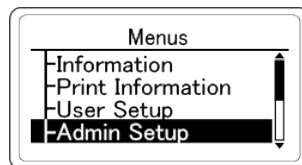
- It may be difficult to connect if there is a metal, aluminum sash or reinforced concrete wall between this machine and the wireless terminal.
- Up to 4 mobile devices can be connected simultaneously to this machine Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct). You cannot connect 5 or more mobile devices simultaneously.

1. Enabling the wireless LAN function

- 1 Press the power button to power on this machine.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

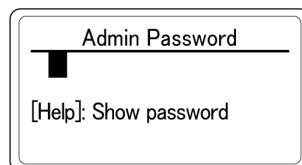


- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

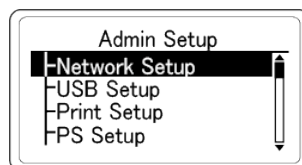


- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

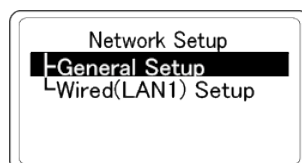
[Administrator Password](#)(P.195)



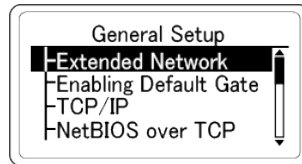
- 5 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



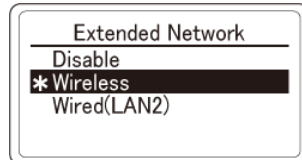
- 6 Check that [General Setup] is selected, and press «OK».



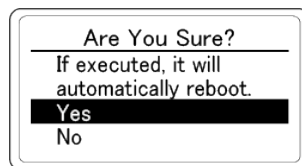
- 7 Check that [Extended Network] is selected, and press «OK».



- 8 Press ▼ to select [Wireless], and press «OK».



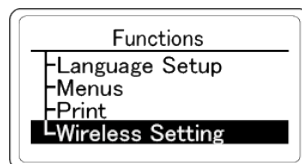
- 9 When [Are you sure?] is displayed, check that [Yes] is selected, and press «OK».



- 10 The machine will restart, so wait until the standby screen appears.

2. Enabling Wi-Fi Direct

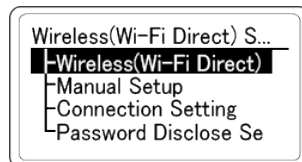
- 1 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».



- 2 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

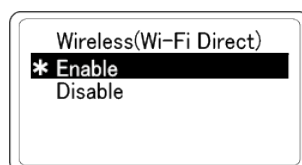
[Administrator Password](#)(P.195)

- 3 Check that [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] is selected, and press «OK».



- "Cannot be used simultaneously with wireless(infrastructure)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

- 4 Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».



- After setting [Wireless(Infrastructure)] to [Disable], if a screen appears to ask you to check whether or not to

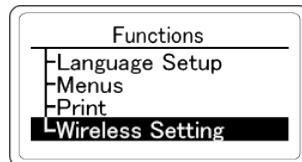
enable [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)], press «OK» to set [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] to [Enable].

- 5 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

3. Connecting with a device

Input the SSID and password of this machine in the wireless terminal to connect.

- 1 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».



- 2 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

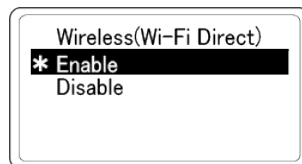
 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

- 3 Check that [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] is selected, and press «OK».

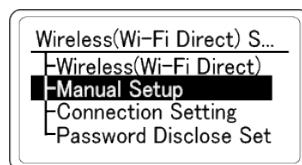


- "Cannot be used simultaneously with wireless(infrastructure)." will be displayed for about 5 seconds.

- 4 Press ▲ to select [Enable], and press «OK».



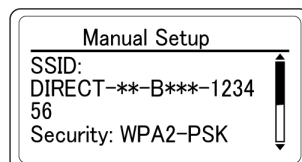
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Manual Setup], and then press «OK».



- 6 Check that [SSID], [Security] and [Password] of this machine are displayed.



- The screens shown here are examples, and they may differ from the actual display.



- 7 Input [SSID] and [Password] of this machine confirmed in Step 6 in the wireless terminal to connect.



- If the wireless terminal is set to obtain the IP address automatically, you can communicate by connecting to this machine via Wi-Fi Direct and allocating the IPv4 address automatically to the wireless terminal.
- The factory default IP address is [192.168.110.100].
- If you cannot connect, see "[Troubleshooting for wireless LAN connection\(P.391\)](#)".

Then, go to "[Installing software on your PC](#)(P.63)".

When using a mobile device, go to "[Printing from a mobile device](#)(P.277)".

Connecting via USB

You can print by connecting this machine to a PC with a USB cable.

1 Prepare a USB 2.0 cable.



- Not compatible with USB 3.0.
- The connector shape on the machine side is of type B.



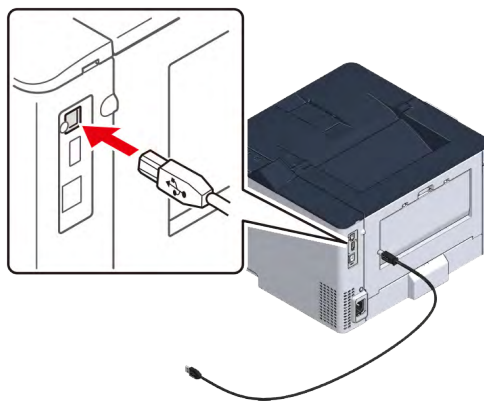
- To connect in the USB 2.0 hi-speed mode, use a USB cable compliant with USB 2.0 hi-speed specifications.

2 Press the power button to power off this machine.

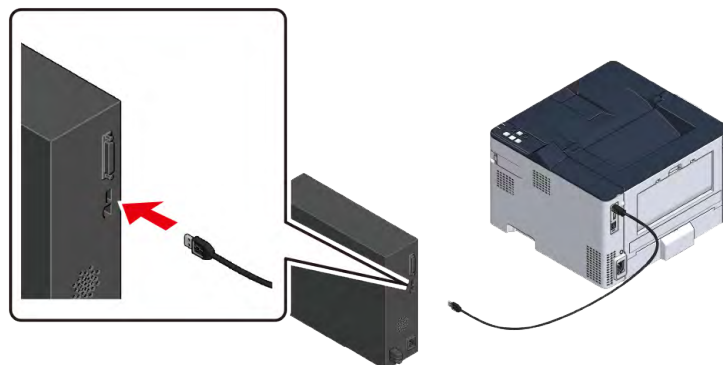
3 Plug one end of the USB cable into the USB interface connector of this machine.



- Do not insert the USB cable into the network interface connector. Otherwise, malfunction may be caused.



4 Plug the other end of the USB cable into the USB interface connector of the PC.



Then, go to "[Installing software on your PC\(P.63\)](#)".

Installing software on your PC

Printer drivers and related software can be downloaded from our website and then installed on your PC.

If your PC comes with a DVD drive, you can install the software from the included DVD.



- Software cannot be installed on an OS that is not listed in the operating environment.
- The screen display may differ from the description depending on the version of Windows or macOS and the specific printer driver.

Operating environment

- Windows 11
- Windows 10
- Windows Server 2025
- Windows Server 2022
- Windows Server 2019
- Windows Server 2016
- macOS 15 - 12



- For details about printing from ChromeOS, please visit our website.

Printer driver types

Both the PCL printer driver and PS printer driver are available.

For normal printing, please use the PCL printer driver. The PS printer driver is suitable for printing documents containing the ESP data or the PostScript font.

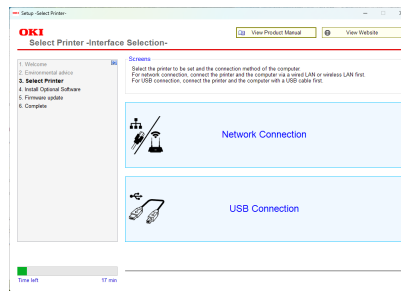
 [Screens and functions of the printer driver\(P.131\)](#)

For Windows

- 1 Check that this machine and the PC are connected, and that the power supply is on.
- 2 Download the "Software Package for Windows" from our website.
Or, prepare the included DVD.
- 3 Open the downloaded file.
Or, insert the included DVD into the PC, and click [Run Setup.exe] when the [DVD drive] screen is displayed.

 - If the [User Account Control] screen is displayed, click [Yes].
 - If the [DVD drive] screen is not displayed, open DVD from the Explorer.
- 4 Choose a language from the pull-down menu of language selection in the [Welcome] screen.
- 5 Read the software license agreement, and click [Accept].
- 6 Read the environmental advice, and click [Next].

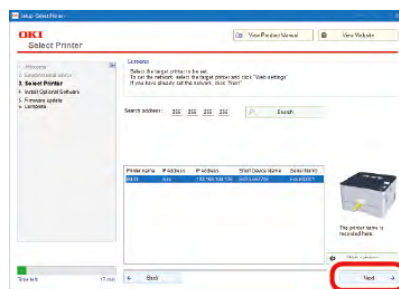
- 7 Click either [Network connection] or [USB connection] depending on the connection method between the PC and this machine.



- 8 Select the model name of this machine, and click [Next].



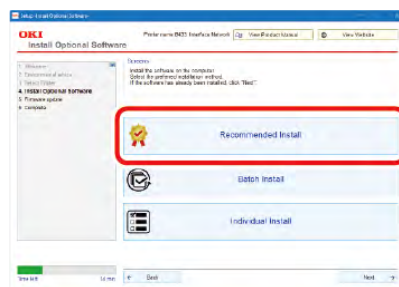
- If the printer is not displayed with a network connection, input the IP address assigned to the printer by selecting [Search Address], and click [Search].



- 9 Click [Recommended Install].



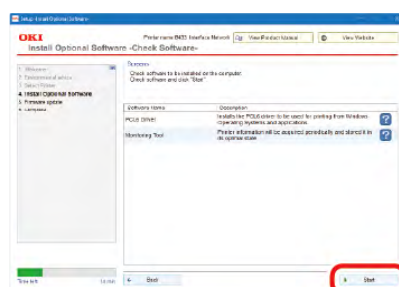
- The following software will be installed.
 - PCL6 printer driver
 - Monitoring Tool
- Other software is installed from either [Batch Install] or [Individual Install].



- 10 Click [Start].

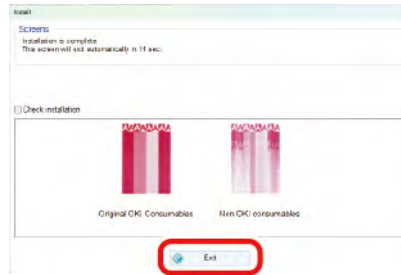


- If the [Specify Device Information] screen appears, check the settings and click [Execute].



- 11 Check that the software installation is complete.

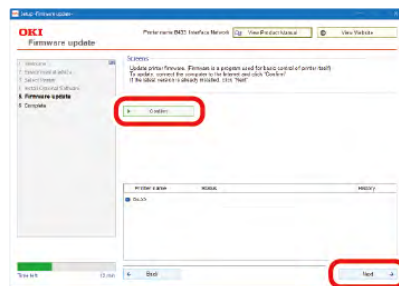
12 Click [Exit].



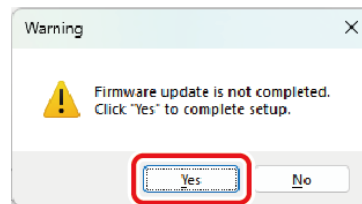
13 When the [Firmware update] screen is displayed, click [Next] if it is not necessary to update. Click [Confirm] if you do not know or an update is required.



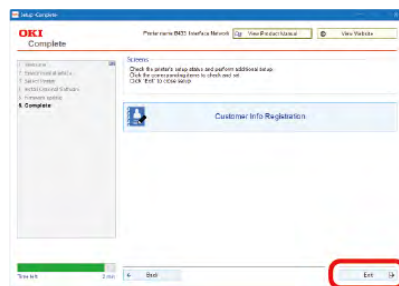
- You can update it later. For details, see the support page on our website.



14 If the [Warning] screen appears, click [OK].



15 Click [Exit].



Now installation is completed.

If you install options like the expansion tray unit, change the settings of printer driver.

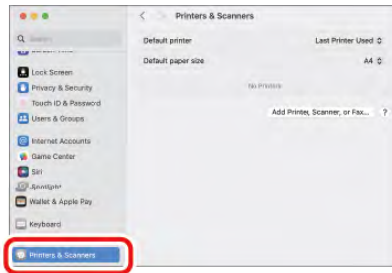
[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)

For macOS

This section takes for example the installation of macOS PCL printer driver.

To install the macOS PS printer driver, replace "PCL" with "PS".

- 1 Check that this machine and the PC are connected, and that the power supply is on.
- 2 Download the "Software Package for Mac" from our website.
Or, prepare the included DVD.
- 3 Open the downloaded file.
Or, insert the included DVD into your PC and copy the file to your desktop.
- 4 Double-click on the [OKI] icon on the desktop.
- 5 Double-click on [Drivers] - [PCL] - [Installer for macOS].
- 6 Finish the installation by following the on-screen instructions.
- 7 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 8 Click [Printers & Scanners].



- 9 Click [Add Printer, Scanner or Fax].



- If it is requested to input the administrator name and password, input them by following the on-screen instructions.

- 10 Click [Default].

- 11 Select this machine from the list. Select [Select Software...] from [Drivers], and then select [OKI *** PCL] (where *** is your model name) from the [Printer Software] list.

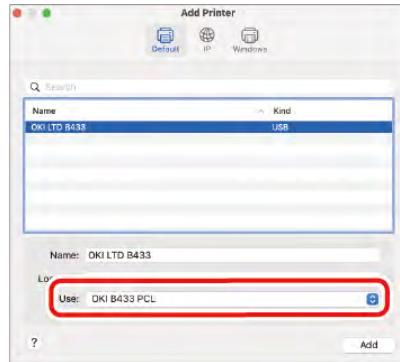


- If [OKI *** PCL] (where *** is your model name) is not listed in [Drivers], select [Select Software...] from [Drivers], and then select [OKI *** PCL] (where *** is your model name) from the [Printer Software] list.

Connection method	Listed name	Type
Network	OKI-*** (Last 6 digits of the MAC address) (where *** is your model name)	Bonjour
USB	OKI LTD *** (where *** is your model name)	USB



- The MAC address can be checked by pressing the scroll buttons on the operator panel to print the network information from [Print Information] - [Network].
- To change the name, input a new name to be used in [Name].



12 Click [Add].

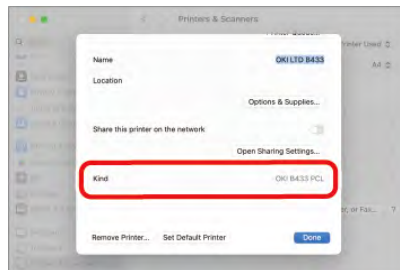


- If the option confirmation screen appears, click [OK].

13 Once the machine is added to the [Printers] list, select the machine to display the menu. Make sure that "OKI *** PCL" (where *** is your model name) is displayed in [Type].



- If "OKI *** PCL" (where *** is your model name) is not displayed in [Type], select this machine from [Printers] and then click [Delete Printers] to delete it. Then, repeat Steps 8 to 11.



14 Click [Open the Print Queue].



- When [Upgrade to recommended AirPrint...] is displayed, click [Don't Upgrade].

15 Select [Print Test Page] from the [Printers] menu.



Installation is completed when the test page is printed.

If you install options like the expansion tray unit, change the settings of printer driver.

[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)

Setting the printer driver

If an expansion tray unit has been installed, after installing the printer driver, change the settings of the printer driver by the following procedure.

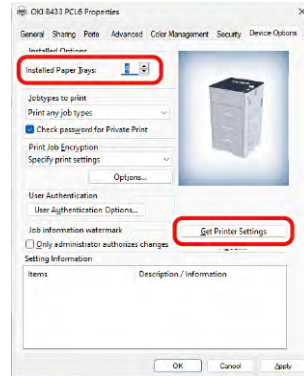
[Installing software on your PC\(P.63\)](#)



- To perform this procedure, you will have to login to the PC as a user with administrator privileges.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

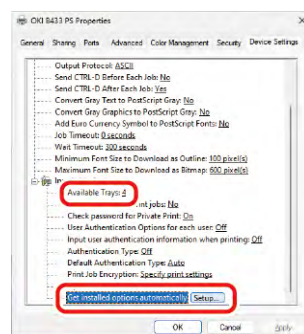
- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the [OKI *** PCL6] icon (where *** is your model name) and select [Printer Properties].
- 3 Select the [Device Options] tab.
- 4 Click [Get Printer Settings].



- 5 Click [OK].

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the [OKI *** PS] icon (where *** is your model name) and select [Printer Properties].
- 3 Select the [Device Settings] tab.
- 4 Select [Get installed options automatically] in [Installable Options], and click [Setup].



- 5 Click [OK].

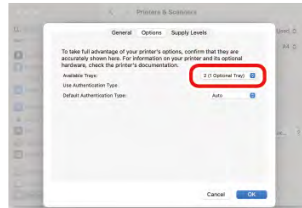
For the macOS PCL printer driver



- Depending on the timing when the printer is added, the information for the expansion tray unit may have been set.

- 1 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 2 Click [Printers & Scanners].

- 3 Select your model, and click [Options and Supplies].
- 4 Select the [Options] tab.
- 5 Select the total number of trays from [Available Trays], and click [OK].

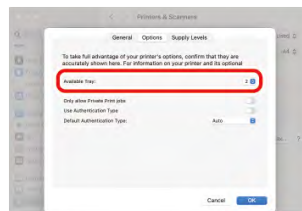


For the macOS PS printer driver



- Depending on the timing when the printer is added, the information for the expansion tray unit may have been set.

- 1 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 2 Click [Printers & Scanners].
- 3 Select your model, and click [Options and Supplies].
- 4 Select the [Options] tab.
- 5 Select the total number of trays from [Available Trays], and click [OK].



3

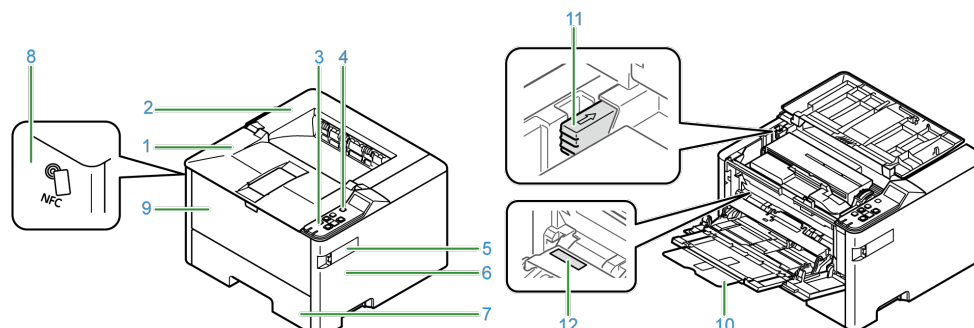
Basic operations

Parts identification	71
Turning the power on/off	73
Loading paper	74
Setting the output bin	87
Checking the information of this machine	89

Parts identification

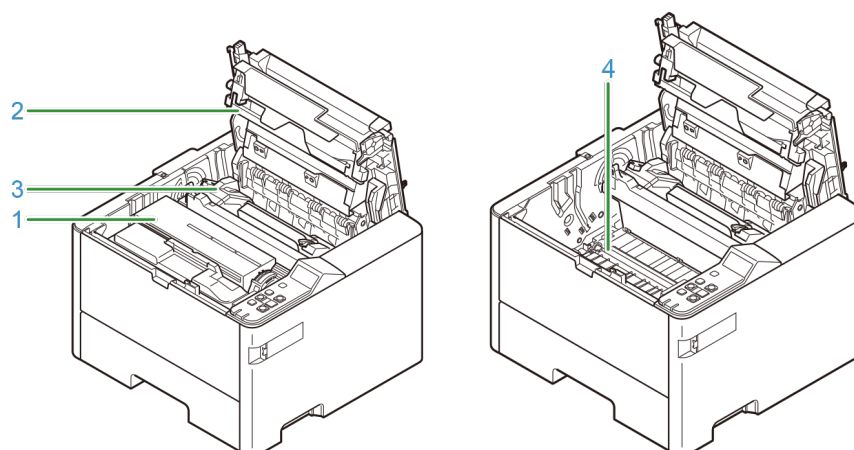
This section explains the name and functions of each part of the main unit.

Front



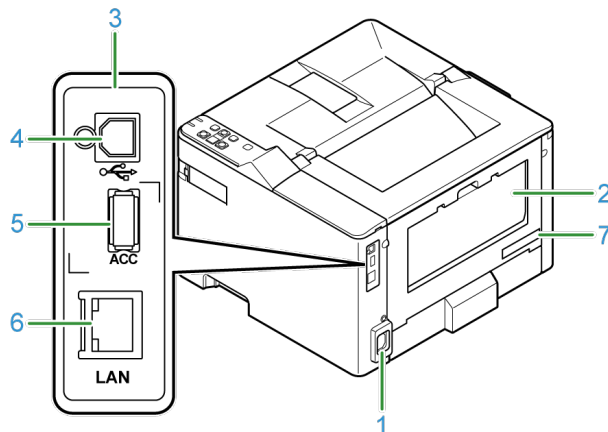
No.	Name	Function
1	Top cover (front) (Output tray)	Open it when replacing toner cartridges. Holds the paper ejected with the print side facing down.
2	Top cover (rear) (Output tray)	Open it when replacing the image drum or maintenance kit. Holds the paper ejected with the print side facing down.
3	Operator panel	This is the panel used to operate the main unit. It comes with a display, functional buttons, an ATTENTION lamp, etc. Parts identification of the operator panel(P.92)
4	Power button	Turns on and off the power of the main unit.
5	Wireless LAN module cover	A cover for the housing of the wireless LAN module.
6	Air vents	Allows air to enter and exit from the inside of the main unit. There are air vents also on the left side and the rear side of the machine. Be careful not to block the air vents.
7	Paper cassette of Tray 1	Holds the paper to print.
8	NFC mark  Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.	When using the NFC function, bring your mobile device close here. For details about the NFC function, refer to " Printing from a mobile device(P.277) ".
9	Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)	Holds paper of various sizes.
10	Paper supporter	Pull it out to load paper in the MP tray.
11	Top cover (rear) open button	Press it to open the top cover (rear).
12	Password label	Lists the factory default password.

Inside the main unit



No.	Name	Function
1	Toner cartridge, image drum	The toner cartridge contains toner (powder ink) for printing. The image drum is a unit to create an image on the paper by using toner, which comes with a toner cartridge. Both the toner cartridge and the image drum are consumables.
2	LED head	Writes an image onto the image drum using light.
3	Fuser unit	This unit fixes the toner to the paper.
4	Transfer roller	This unit transfers toner to the paper.

Back



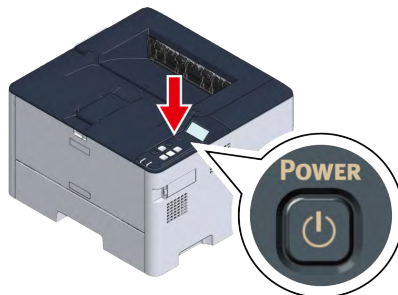
No.	Name	Function
1	Power connector	This is where the included power cord is plugged in.
2	Rear output tray	Holds the paper ejected with the print side facing up.
3	Interface unit	There is a connector to connect to a PC.
4	USB interface connector	This is where the USB cable is plugged in when the computer and the main unit is connected with a USB cable.
5	USB Host	This is where the USB memory or extended wired LAN module is inserted.
6	Network interface connector (LAN1)	This is where the LAN cable is plugged in when the computer and the main unit is connected via a network.
7	Serial number	The machine-specific number.

Turning the power on/off

For details about power cord connection, please refer to "[Initialization upon power-on\(P.33\)](#)".

Turning the power on

- 1 Press and hold the power button for approx. 1 second.

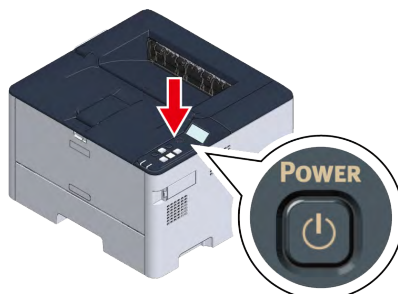


When this machine gets ready, "Ready To Print" will appear on the display.

When the power is turned on for the first time, the [Language Setup] screen appears on the display. Set the language by following the on-screen instructions.

Turning the power off

- 1 Press and hold the power button for approx. 1 second.



- 2 "Shutting down. Please wait. The power will turn off automatically" appears on the display.

- 3 Wait a moment until this machine is powered off automatically.



- Please wait. This may take about 5 minutes to turn off the power.
- Press and hold the power button for more than 5 seconds to turn off the power by force. Use it only if a problem has occurred. For troubles with this machine, please refer to "[Troubleshooting for the machine\(P.407\)](#)".
- If the power supply is stopped unexpectedly due to a power failure or forcibly turning the power off, the device configuration information stored in the machine may become corrupted.

Turn off the power by following the correct procedure, except in unavoidable circumstances.

Loading paper

Procedure for loading paper

1. Check the applicable paper.

[Applicable paper](#)(P.74)

[Inapplicable paper](#)(P.75)

2. Load the paper in the tray.

[Paper applicable to each tray](#)(P.78)

[Loading paper in Tray 1 \(for B433\)](#)(P.79)

[Loading paper in Tray 1 \(for B513\) or Tray 2/3/4 \(Optional\)](#)(P.80)

[Loading paper in the MP tray](#)(P.82)

3. Set the paper information (e.g. the paper size, media type, media weight) on the operator panel.

[Setting paper information on the operator panel](#)(P.84)

Applicable paper

In order to maintain high-quality printing, it is necessary to use paper that fulfills the quality, weight and surface finish conditions. Please use electrophotographic paper.

If you are printing on non-recommended paper, thoroughly test the print quality and paper traction beforehand and check that there are no problems before use.

In addition, to avoid injury by the edge of paper, wear gloves or the like.

For precautions for printing on various types of paper, please refer to "[Paper precautions by type](#)(P.76)".

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Other conditions
Plain paper	A4	For simplex printing: 60 - 256 g/m ² For duplex printing: 60 - 163 g/m ²	The paper of the following sizes are not applicable to duplex printing. - A5, A6, B6, B7, Statement, 8.5" SQ, 4" x 6", 5" x 7" - For custom sizes, paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm, or paper larger than 216 x 356 mm The custom-sized paper must meet the requirements for plain paper.
	A5		
	A6		
	B5		
	B6		
	B7		
	Letter		
	Legal 13		
	Legal 13.5		
	Legal 14		
	Executive		
	Statement		
	8.5" SQ		
	Folio		
	4" x 6"		
	5" x 7"		
	Custom Width: 86 - 216 mm Length: 127 - 1,321 mm		
	Long paper	128 g/m ²	
Envelope	Nagagata#3	Using paper with a weight of 85 g/m ²	Media made of craft paper, electrophotographic paper or dry PPC paper. Duplex printing is not available.
	Nagagata#4		
	Yougata#0		
	Yougata#4		
	C5		
	C6		

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Other conditions
	DL		
	COM-9		
	COM-10		
	Monarch		
Label	A4	Total weight: 0.1 - 0.2 mm	Labels for electrophotographic printers or dry PPCs where the surface paper, adhesive, and backing are not degraded by heat. Media with a structure that prevents the front paper from peeling off from the backing in the heat fixing process of the printer. Media with a structure that prevents the front paper from peeling off the backing when the paper is traveling. Media with a combined weight of 0.1 to 0.2 mm of front paper and backing. Media whose surface paper covers the entire backing sheet with no adhesive sticking out. Media with no breaks or creases. Duplex printing is not available.
	Letter		
Partially printed paper	Equivalent to plain paper	For simplex printing: 60 - 256 g/m² For duplex printing: 60 - 163 g/m²	Media whose ink used for partial printing is heat resistant and can withstand 230° C.
Colored paper	Equivalent to plain paper	For simplex printing: 60 - 256 g/m² For duplex printing: 60 - 163 g/m²	Media whose pigment or ink used to color the paper is heat resistant and can withstand 230° C. Media made of electrophotographic paper with the same features as plain paper.



- If the paper grain direction does not match the paper feeding direction, paper jams may occur.
- Printing from the MP tray may cause wrinkles. In this case, feed paper from the paper cassette.
- The paper wrapper shows the orientation of the surface. Load paper properly so that the surface is the printing surface.
- After unpacking, rewrap the remaining paper in the wrapping paper and reseal it, or place it in a plastic bag and close it tightly, and then store it in a low-humidity area.
- The paper is wrapped in moisture-proof paper to prevent moisture. Please use the paper as early as possible after opening its package.
- Wrap unused paper in the wrapping paper, and keep it away from moisture absorption as much as possible.
- If it is used beyond the normal room temperature (temperature: 17° C to 25° C; humidity: 40% to 60%), the printing quality may be degraded or problems may occur such as paper jams, wrinkles, curls, and warpage.
- Depending on the installation environment of the machine, printing on paper that contains moisture may cause white steam or water droplets to appear around the paper exit area of the machine. This is not abnormal because the heat generated when the toner is fixed to the paper evaporates the moisture contained in the paper.

Inapplicable paper

Do not use the following types of paper. Doing so may cause paper jams or malfunction.

- Paper with smooth surface, rough paper, and paper with different front and back roughness

- Paper that is too thin or too thick
- Paper with much paper dust
- Short grain paper (Do not use for vertical feeding.)
- Wet (damp) paper
- Paper with curl, curve or wave due to humidity
- Paper stuck by static electricity
- Paper and envelopes that have been textured, embossed or coated (coated paper, glossy paper)
- Paper specially processed with glue, chemicals, etc.
- Paper specially processed without heat resistance (230° C)
- Paper with holes, perforations, notches, holes for binder
- Paper that has irregularities, crushing, burrs, etc. on the paper cut surface
- Non-square shaped paper, or paper whose cutting angle is not right
- Paper or envelopes with wrinkles, warping, corner bending, waving, creases, tears, etc.
- Paper with staples, clips, ribbons, tapes, clasps, etc.
- Special paper such as carbon paper, non-carbon paper, thermal paper, and pressure-sensitive paper
- Thermal transfer printer paper, ink jet paper, wet PPC paper, copying paper, Japanese paper, etc.
- Envelopes stuck with stamps
- Envelopes that are too thick
- Envelope made of plastic
- Double envelopes with inner bags
- Envelopes with clasps, buttons or windows
- Envelopes stuck with double-sided tape or with adhesive on the flap
- Envelopes with water repellency

Paper precautions by type

Plain paper

- For thick paper, the toner may stick thinly to the whole paper or the printing may be light.

Partially printed paper

- When a printing frame is set, design it with careful considerations of the following variations in the printing position.
Output position accuracy: ± 2 mm; paper slant: ± 1 mm/100 mm (except for duplex printing); image expansion and contraction: ± 1 mm/100 mm (except for duplex printing, when the paper weight is 64 g/m²)
- This machine cannot print over a printed area.

Envelopes

- The paper may warp or wrinkle after printing.
- The toner may stick thinly to the whole paper or the printing may be light.
- The toner may be easily removed.
- The printing quality may decline in an area of about 5 mm around the sealing part (of different weights) of the envelope.
- The warps on an envelope may cause poor paper feeding. Use the envelope after correcting warps or bulges.

- If the glued part at the rear edge of the envelope is bent, it may cause poor paper feeding. Correct the bending before use.
- Duplex printing is not available.
- Always perform trial printing and check that there are no problems.

Labels

- The toner may stick thinly to the whole paper or the printing may be light.
- The toner may be easily removed.
- The warps on the front edge of a label may cause poor paper feeding. Use labels after correcting warps or bulges.
- Duplex printing is not available.
- Always perform trial printing and check that there are no problems.

Long paper

- For thick paper, the toner may stick thinly to the whole paper or the printing may be light.
- If the paper grain direction does not match the paper feeding direction, paper jams may occur.
- Do not use paper that has been printed once with a thermal transfer printer, inkjet printer, etc.
- The paper wrapper shows the orientation of the surface. Load paper properly so that the face side is the printing side.
- The paper is wrapped in moisture-proof paper to prevent moisture. Please use the paper as early as possible after opening its package.
- If the paper has a GSM weight other than 128 g/m², the print quality may deteriorate. Always perform trial printing and check that there are no problems.
- Be sure to set the paper size to a vertical length. The vertical length cannot be set to a value shorter than the horizontal length.
- Some applications may not be available.
- Even when using under the recommended conditions, the long paper with a length exceeding 356 mm may not be able to guarantee the print quality.

Irregular paper (Custom)

- Skewing, curling, warping, folded corners (the edge is folded) and paper jams caused by these factors may occur. Check the print result of the paper to be used in advance.
- Register the paper in portrait orientation and load it in portrait orientation in the tray.
- Some applications may not be available.
- The quality of printing on the paper with a length exceeding 356 mm will be not guaranteed.
- If the paper is too long and protrudes from the paper supporter of the MP tray, support the paper with your hand.
- For the paper size that can be fed from each tray and the paper size that can be printed on both sides, please refer to "[Applicable paper](#)(P.74)".
- If you cannot print correctly on a large-sized paper, it is suggested to set [Quality] to [Normal] in the PS printer driver.
- Always perform trial printing and check that there are no problems.

Recycled paper

- The toner may stick thinly to the whole paper or the printing may be light.

- Some recycled paper contains additives that may reduce the printing quality. Be sure to check that it is the recycled paper for the electrophotographic printer before using it.

Paper applicable to each tray

Tray 1 (for B433)

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Applicable number of sheets
Plain paper Partially printed paper Colored paper	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, Statement, 8.5" SQ, Folio, Custom (width: 100 - 216 mm; length: 148 - 356 mm)	60 - 256 g/m ²	280 sheets (with a paper weight of 64 g/m ²)  When the paper weight is 121 g/m² or above, keep the paper stack below half the height to the ▼ mark on the paper guide of the paper tray. For details, refer to Step 5 in "Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B433)" (P.79)".

Tray 1 (for B513)



- To print on A5-sized paper in landscape, use paper with a weight of 60-104 g/m².
In addition, to print, enable [Media Check] in the printer driver.
- To print on A5-sized paper with a weight of 105 g/m² or above, please load the paper in portrait.

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Applicable number of sheets
Plain paper Partially printed paper Colored paper	A4, A5, B5, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, 8.5" SQ, Folio, Custom (width: 148 - 216 mm; length: 210 - 356 mm)	60 - 256 g/m ²	580 sheets (with a paper weight of 64 g/m ²)

Tray 2/3/4 (Optional)

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Applicable number of sheets
Plain paper Partially printed paper Colored paper	A4, A5, B5, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, 8.5" SQ, Folio, Custom (width: 148 - 216 mm; length: 210 - 356 mm)	60 - 256 g/m ²	580 sheets (with a paper weight of 64 g/m ²)

Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)

Media type	Paper size	Media weight	Applicable number of sheets
Plain paper Envelope Label Partially printed paper Colored paper	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, B7, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, Statement, 8.5" SQ, Folio, 4" x 6", 5" x 7", Nagagata#3, Nagagata#4, Yougata#0, Yougata#4, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL, Envelope COM-9, Envelope COM-10, Envelope Monarch, Custom (width: 86 - 216 mm; length: 127 - 1,321 mm)	60 - 163 g/m ²	110 sheets (with a paper weight of 64 g/m ²) 10 envelopes (with a weight of 85 g/m ²) 20 labels (with a weight of 130 g/m ²)

Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B433)

This section explains the procedure for loading paper of standard sizes.

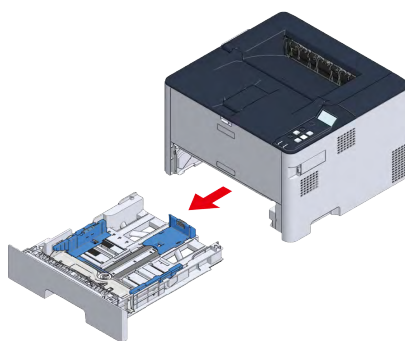
Here, the procedure of loading paper in Tray 1 of B433 is taken for example. If you are using B513 or if you want to load paper in the optional expansion tray (Tray 2/3/4), please refer to "[Loading paper in Tray 1 \(for B513\) or Tray 2/3/4 \(Optional\)](#)(P.80)".

For the paper that can be used, please refer to "[Applicable paper](#)(P.74)" and "[Paper applicable to each tray](#)(P.78)". To load paper of irregular sizes, please refer to "[Printing on irregular paper \(Custom\)](#)(P.151)".



- For Tray 1, A5-sized paper can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation.

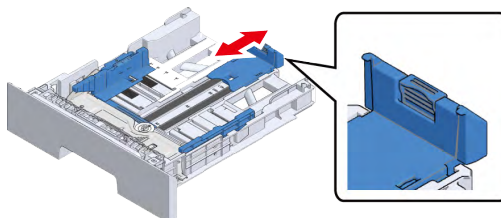
1 Pull out the lower paper cassette until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



2 Slide the blue part of the paper stopper to fit the length of the paper to be loaded. To load paper of A4, Legal (13 inches), Legal (13.5 inches) or Legal (14 inches), pull the paper stopper out to the rear side of the paper cassette.



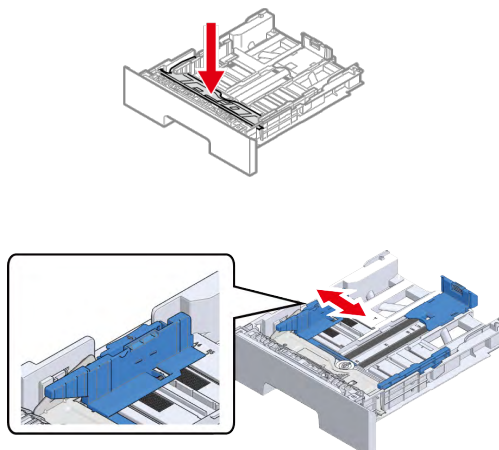
- Do not remove the cork from the metal plate.



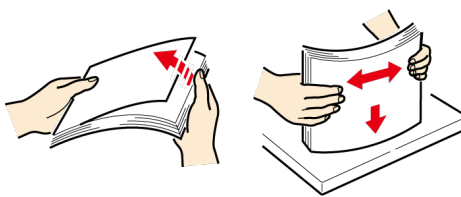
3 Slide the blue part of the paper guide to fit the width of the paper to be loaded.



- If the metal plate of the paper cassette is raised, press it down firmly until it clicks into place, and then insert it into the printer. If the metal plate is inserted into the main unit while it is raised, malfunction may be caused.



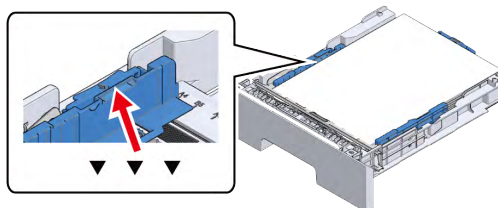
- 4 Shuffle the paper well. Align edges of the paper horizontally.



- 5 Load the paper with the printing side down, and press it down from top.



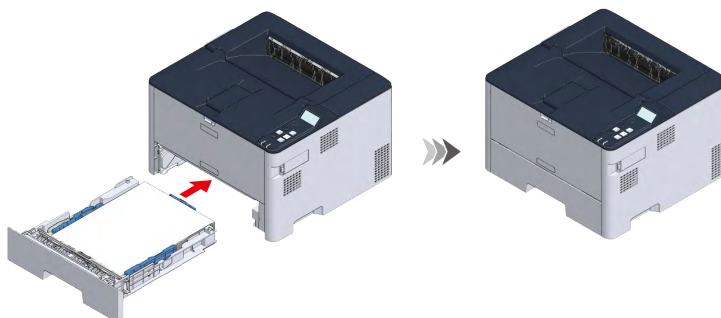
- Do not exceed the ▼ mark on the paper guide when loading paper.
- When the paper weight is 121 g/m² or above, keep the paper stack below half the height to the ▼ mark on the paper guide of the paper tray.



- 6 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



- 7 Proceed to "[Setting paper information on the operator panel](#)(P.84)".

Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B513) or Tray 2/3/4 (Optional)

This section explains the procedure for loading paper of standard sizes.

Here, the procedure of loading paper in Tray1 of B513 is taken for example. The same procedure applies to loading paper in the optional Tray 2/3/4.

For the procedure of loading paper in Tray 1 for B433, please refer to "[Loading paper in Tray 1 \(for B433\)](#)(P.79)".

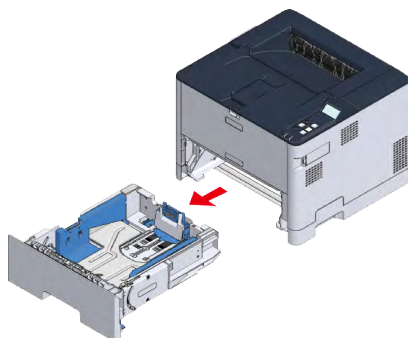
For the paper that can be used, please refer to "[Applicable paper](#)(P.74)" and "[Paper applicable to each tray](#)(P.78)".

To load paper of irregular sizes, please refer to "[Printing on irregular paper \(Custom\)](#)(P.151)".



- For Tray 1, A5-sized paper can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation.

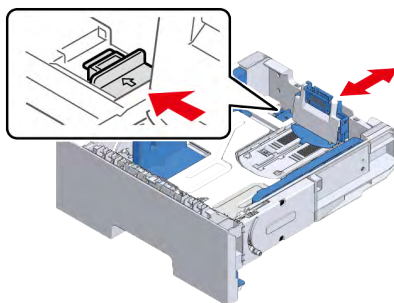
- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



- 2 Slide the blue part of the paper stopper to fit the length of the paper to be loaded. To load paper of A4, Legal (13 inches), Legal (13.5 inches) or Legal (14 inches), pull the rear side of the paper cassette backwards with the lock lever pulled outwards.



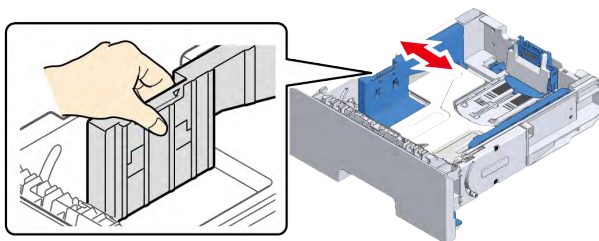
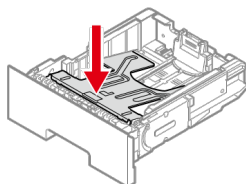
- Do not remove the cork from the metal plate.



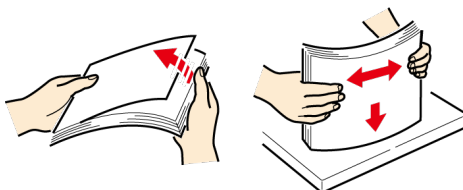
- 3 Slide the blue part of the paper guide to fit the width of the paper to be loaded.



- If the metal plate of the paper cassette is raised, press it down firmly until it clicks into place, and then insert it into the printer. If the metal plate is inserted into the main unit while it is raised, malfunction may be caused.



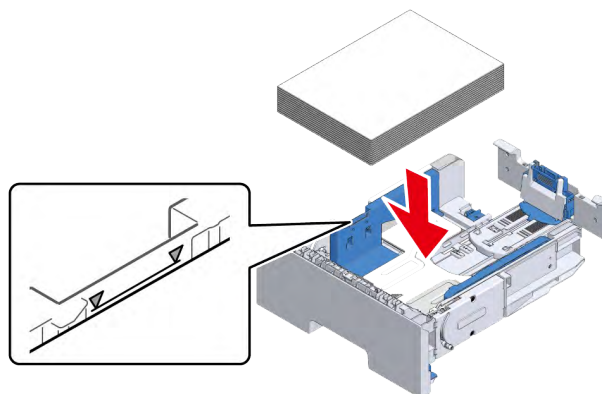
- 4 Shuffle the paper well. Align edges of the paper horizontally.



5 Load the paper with the printing side down, and press it down from top.



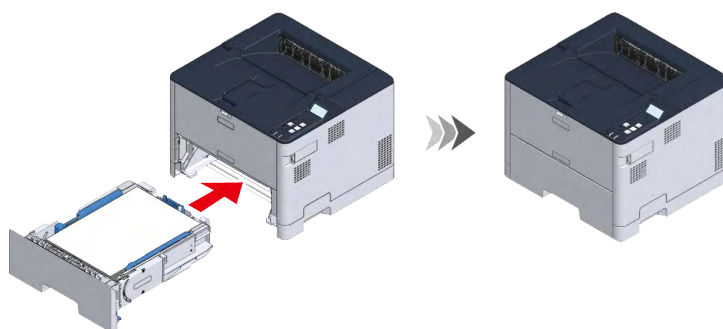
- Do not exceed the ▼ mark on the paper guide when loading paper.



6 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



7 Proceed to "[Setting paper information on the operator panel](#)(P.84)".

Loading paper in the MP tray

This section explains the procedure for loading paper of standard sizes.

For the paper that can be used, please refer to "[Applicable paper](#)(P.74)" and "[Paper applicable to each tray](#)(P.78)".

To load paper of irregular sizes, please refer to "[Printing on irregular paper \(Custom\)](#)(P.151)".

To load long paper, please refer to "[Printing on long paper](#)(P.149)".



- Do not load paper of different sizes, types or weights at the same time.
- To add paper, remove the existing paper in the MP tray, and then load it back together with the paper to be added.
- Do not insert anything other than print paper into the MP tray.
- Do not leave paper in the MP tray for an extended period of time. Dust and dirt will adhere to the paper, and the print quality will degrade.

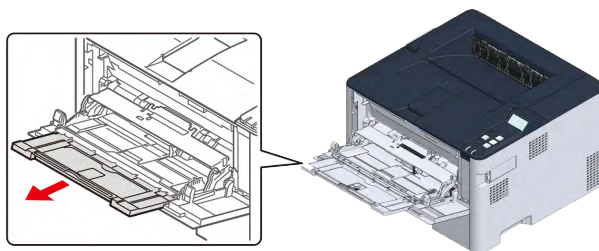


- The paper of A5, B6 and Statement can be loaded in either portrait or landscape orientation.

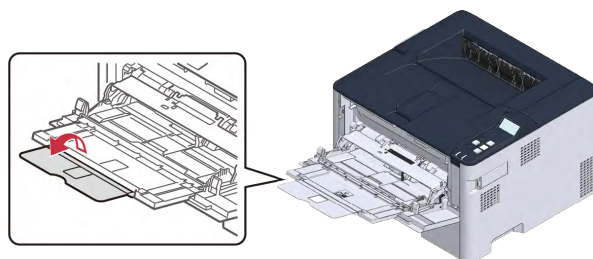
- 1 Place your finger in the front recess, and pull to open the MP tray towards you.



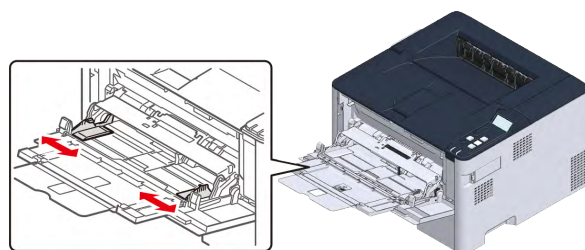
- 2 Hold the center of the paper supporter and pull it out towards you.



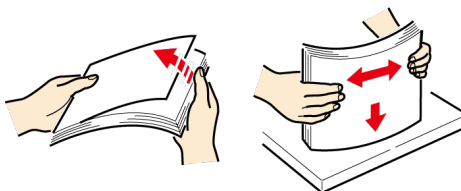
- 3 Open the auxiliary supporter.



- 4 Adjust the manual feeder guide to the width of the paper to be loaded.



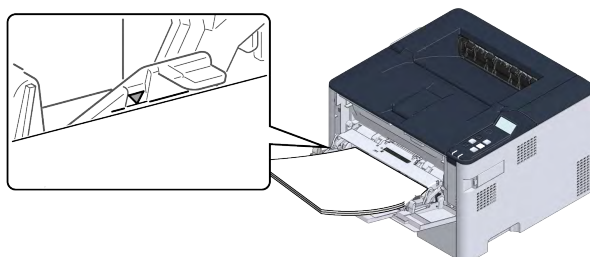
- 5 Shuffle the paper well. Align edges of the paper horizontally.



6 Load the paper with the print side facing up.



- Do not exceed the ▼ mark on the paper guide when loading paper.



7 If you always print on paper of the same size and type from the MP tray, go to "Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)" and set the information of the loaded paper on this machine.

Setting paper information on the operator panel

Set the size, type and weight of the paper loaded in each tray in order.

When envelopes are loaded, please refer to "Printing on envelopes(P.142)".

When labels are loaded, please refer to "Printing on labels(P.146)".

When irregular paper (including long paper) is loaded, please refer to "Printing on irregular paper (Custom)(P.151)" or "Printing on long paper(P.149)".



- When you pull out the paper cassette of Tray 1/2/3/4 or when you lower the paper placement cover of the multi-purpose tray (MP tray), select [No] if the setting change screen is displayed.

The table lists the factory default settings. The paper size setting may differ from region to region.

	Paper Size	Media Type	Media Weight
Tray 1/2/3/4	A4 or Letter	Plain paper	Medium
Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)	A4 or Letter	Plain paper	Medium



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

For Tray 1/2/3/4

- Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.
- Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Menus], and press «OK».
- Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».
- Select [Tray Configuration], and then press «OK».
- Select [Tray Setup] you want to set, and then press «OK».
- Select [Paper Size], and then press «OK».
- Select the size of paper to be loaded in the set paper tray, press «OK», and then press «BACK».
- Press ▼ to select [Media Type], and press «OK». Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of the paper to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».

- 9 Press ▼ to select [Media Weight], and then press «OK». Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of the paper to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».
- 10 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

For the MP tray

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».
- 4 Select [Tray Configuration], and then press «OK».
- 5 Select [MPTray Config], and then press «OK».
- 6 Select [Paper Size], and then press «OK».
- 7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the size of the paper to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».
- 8 Press ▼ to select [Media Type], and press «OK».
- 9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of the paper to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».
- 10 Press ▼ to select [Media Weight], and then press «OK».
- 11 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the type of the paper to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».
- 12 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

About values to be set

Refer to the following table for settings in the case of plain paper, partially printed paper and colored paper.

Values to be set on the operator panel	
Media Type	Media Weight
Plain paper	60 - 64 g/m ² paper: Light 65 - 74 g/m ² paper: Medium Light 75 - 87 g/m ² paper: Medium 88 - 104 g/m ² paper: Medium Heavy 105 - 120 g/m ² paper: Heavy 121 - 163 g/m ² paper: Ultra Heavy1 164 - 220 g/m ² paper: Ultra Heavy2 221 - 256 g/m ² paper: Ultra Heavy3

Storing paper

Please keep the paper under the following conditions to maintain the quality:

- A dark and flat place with low humidity
- Temperature: 20° C
- Humidity: 50% RH (relative humidity)

Do not store paper in any of the following places:

- Places exposed to direct sunlight
- Places with extreme rises and sudden fluctuations in temperature
- Places near copiers, air conditioners, heaters, ducts, etc.
- Near the inner wall affected by the outside air
- Uneven or curved surfaces
- Directly on the floor
- Places where static electricity is generated



- Do not unpack the paper until you use it.
- After unpacking, rewrap the remaining paper in the wrapping paper and reseal it, or place it in a plastic bag and close it tightly, and then store it in a low-humidity area.
- The paper is wrapped in moisture-proof paper to prevent moisture. Please use the paper as early as possible after opening its package.
- Do not leave the paper exposed to the air for a long period of time. Doing so may cause a printing failure.
- Depending on the paper in use, operating conditions and storage conditions, the print quality may deteriorate, or the paper may be curled or wrinkled.

Setting the output bin

This machine outputs paper to the output tray (Top cover) or rear output tray. The types of paper that can be output to each output bin are as follows.

Output bin	Types of paper to output	Number of sheets to output
Output tray (Top cover)	Plain paper, recycled paper, envelopes, Index Card, and long paper	150 (80 g/m ²)
Rear output tray	Plain paper, recycled paper, envelope, Index Card, labels, and long paper	100 (80 g/m ²) 10 (Paper longer than A4 size (297 mm)/Envelopes/Card Stocks)



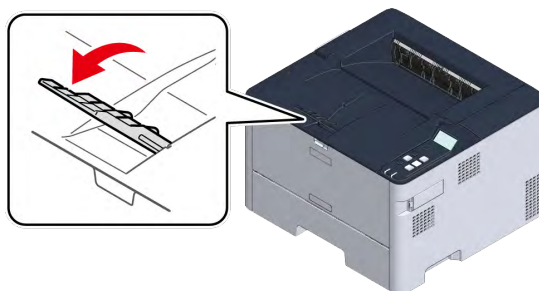
- Do not open or close the output tray during printing. Doing so may cause a paper jam.

Output tray (Top cover)

When printing has completed, the paper is output with the printing side down in the order in which they are printed.



When the printed paper does not stack well, lift the paper supporter.



Rear output tray

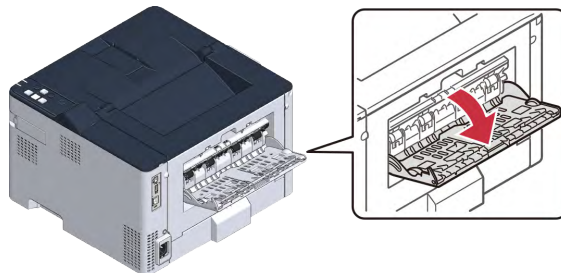
Use the rear output tray to print on envelopes, labels or custom-sized paper.

The paper is output with the print side facing up in the reverse order to which they are printed.

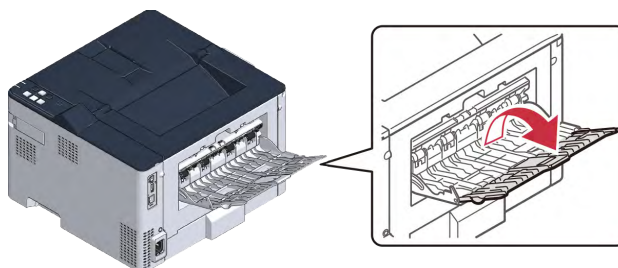


- Auto Duplex is not available when the rear output tray is used.

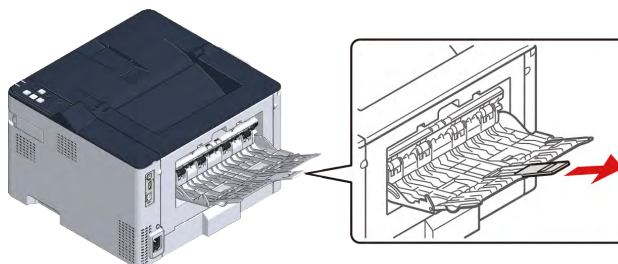
- 1 Open the output tray by putting your fingers in the recess on the back of this machine.



- 2 Open the paper supporter by holding both ends of the rear output tray.



- 3 Pull out the auxiliary supporter.



Checking the information of this machine

You can print out and check the information of this machine. You can also check the information from the operator panel.

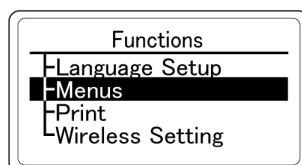
Printing the menu map (configuration)

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

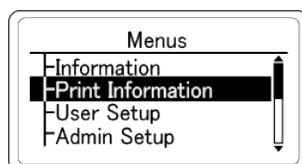


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

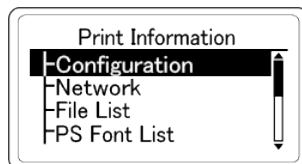
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



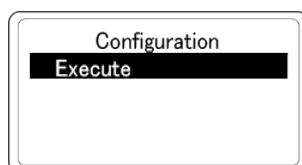
- 3 Press ▼ to select [Print Information], and then press «OK».



- 4 Check that [Configuration] is selected, and then press «OK».

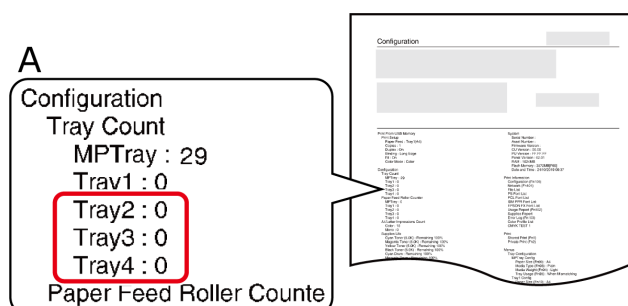


- 5 Check that [Configuration] is displayed and [Execute] is selected, and then press «OK».



- 6 The configurations are printed.

How to read the menu map



A	The optional expansion tray unit will be displayed if it has been installed.
---	--



- To print the printer information not listed in [Configuration], please refer to "[Menus \(Print Information\)](#)(P.107)".

Confirming on the operator panel

You can check the supplies status and counter information on the operator panel.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

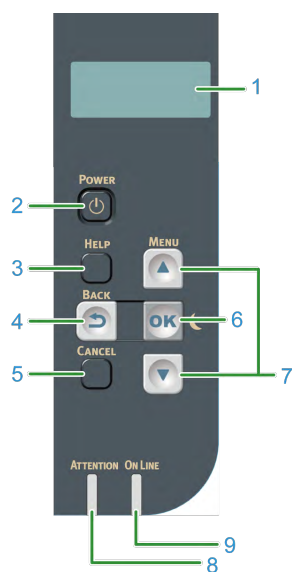
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 3 Check that [Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».
- 4 Select the item that you want to check, and press «OK».
- 5 Select the information that you want to check, and press «OK».
- 6 After checking the display, press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

4

Changing settings from the operator panel

Parts identification of the operator panel.....	92
Inputting text.....	93
Changing settings.....	94
Adjusting the buzzer volume	96
Setting the power save function	98
Menu items.....	105

Parts identification of the operator panel



No.	Name	Function
1	Display	Display the state of this machine and operation instructions. There are two types of standby screens: "Show Remaining Toner" and "Show Tray Information". The factory default setting is "Show Remaining Toner".
2	Power button	Turn the power on/off.
3	«HELP» button	Display the help screen. To close the screen, press the «HELP» button again, or press the «BACK» or «CANCEL» button.
4	«BACK» button	Go back to the previous screen.
5	«CANCEL» button	Cancel the current printing. Go back to the standby screen when the menu is displayed.
6	«OK» button	Confirm the highlighted item when a menu is selected. Cancel the sleep mode when the machine is in the sleep mode. Light on in green in the power save mode, and flashes in green in the sleep mode.
7	Scroll buttons ▲▼	Used to select a menu or scroll the screen display. It can be used to input numbers in the numerical input screen.
8	ATTENTION lamp	Indicate the state of this machine. Light off in the normal state. On: Indicate that a minor error has occurred. Flashing: Indicate that a major error has occurred.
9	ONLINE lamp	Light on in green when the machine is online, and lights off when the machine goes offline.

Inputting text

You can input alphabetic or numeric characters by using the scroll button ▲ or ▼ on the operator panel. If a same button is pressed in succession, the alphanumeric character will switch. To continue inputting with the same button, press «OK» after inputting each alphanumeric character.

The following characters can be input when the corresponding button is pressed.

For a menu where only digits can be input, it will not switch to alphabetic characters.

Scroll button	Display order
▲	The order of display is as follows: Lower-case letters → Symbols → Upper-case letters → Digits (in ascending order). The symbols are displayed in the following order: * @ . _ - (space) + ! " \$ % & ' () , / : ; < = > ? [¥] ^ # ` { } ~
▼	The order of display is reverse to that when ▲ is pressed.

Example

To input "abc",

Press ▲ «OK», ▲ ▲ «OK», and ▲ ▲ ▲ «OK».

The functions of the following button are described below.

«BACK»

Returns to the home screen when there is no determined character.

Erases the character being input when there are determined characters but the character being input is not determined.

Erases one of the determined characters when there are determined characters and no character is being input.

Changing settings

This section describes how to change menu settings from the operator panel.

There are several hierarchies before you can see the items to set. Select them from the highest hierarchy in order.

This example shows how to set [B5] as the paper size for Tray 1.

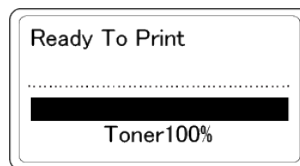


- See "[Menu items](#)(P.105)" for a list of menu items.

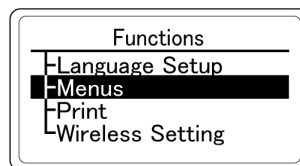
1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



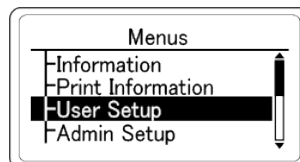
- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.



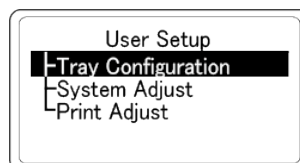
2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Menus], and press «OK». The display color of the selected item is highlighted.



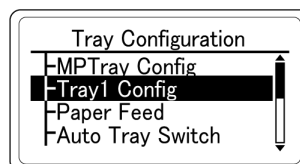
3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



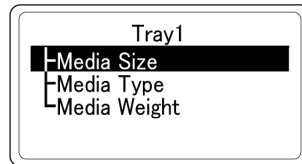
4 Since [Tray Configuration] is selected, press «OK».



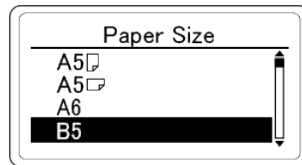
5 Press ▼ to select [Tray1 Config], and then press «OK».



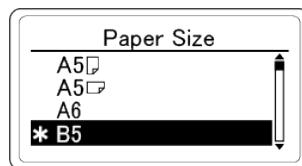
- 6 Since [Paper Size] is selected, press «OK».



- 7 Press ▼ several times to select [B5], and then press «OK».



- 8 Check that [*] is displayed to the left of [B5].



- 9 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Adjusting the buzzer volume

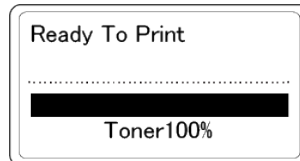
The buzzer volume is adjustable in three steps. The buzzer sounds in the following cases:

- When a paper jam or any other error occurs
- When the printing is completed
- When AirPrint, Mopria or IPP Everywhere is used to find a printer

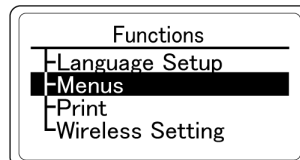
1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



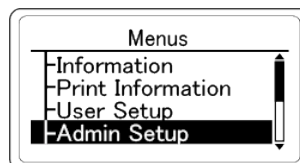
- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.



2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

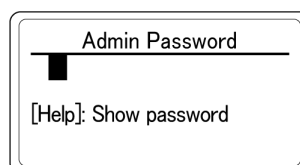


3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

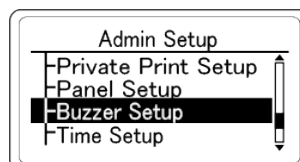


4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

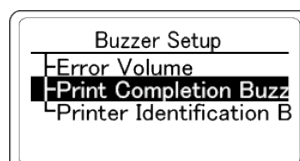
 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)



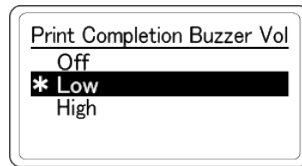
5 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select [Buzzer Setup], and then press «OK».



6 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select the item you want to change, and then press «OK».



- 7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the volume to be set, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 8 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Setting the power save function

Setting the time that elapses before entering the power save mode

This machine automatically enters the power save mode (an energy saving mode) if no operation is done for a certain period of time.

The following time options can be set. The factory default setting is 1 minute.

1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes



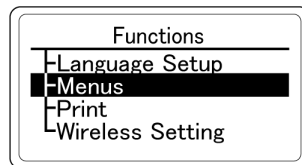
- This machine may not enter the power save mode after the set period of time since the fan is working until this machine has cooled down depending on the printing environment or the usage conditions.
- The service life of the fuser unit in the maintenance kit varies significantly with factors like the total power-on time. Setting a longer transition time to Power Save mode will increase the total power-on time, potentially requiring earlier fuser replacement.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

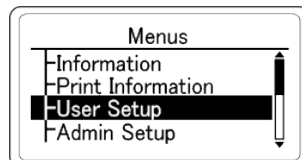


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

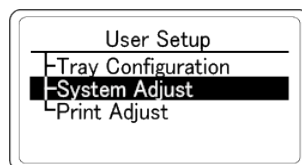
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



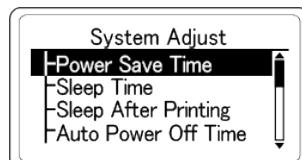
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



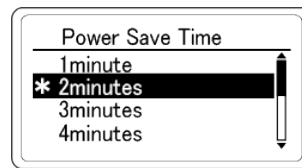
- 4 Press ▼ to select [System Adjust], and then press «OK».



- 5 Check that [Power Save Time] is selected, and then press «OK».



- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the time to be set, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 7 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Setting the time that elapses before entering the sleep mode

This machine automatically enters the sleep mode (a more energy saving mode) if no operation is done for a certain period of time in the power save mode.

The following time options can be set. The factory default setting is 1 minute.

1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes



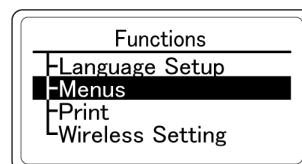
- When an error has occurred, this machine will not enter the sleep mode.
- This machine may not enter the sleep mode after the set period of time since the fan is working until this machine has cooled down depending on the printing environment or the usage conditions.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

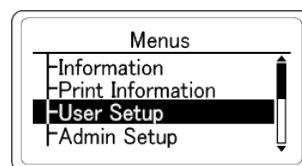


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

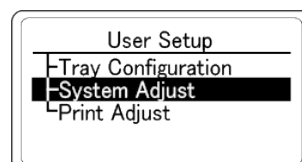
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



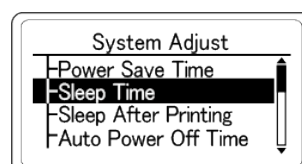
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



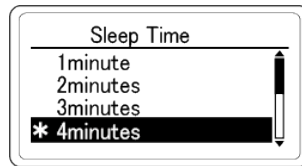
- 4 Press ▼ to select [System Adjust], and then press «OK».



- 5 Press ▼ to select [Sleep Time], and then press «OK».



- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the time to be set, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 7 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Turning off the power automatically (Auto Power Off)

This machine comes with a function (Auto Power Off) to turn off the power automatically if it has not been used for a certain period of time.

There are 3 types of settings for Auto Power Off, and the default factory setting is [Auto Config].

- [Auto Config]: The power is turned off automatically if the machine has not been used for a certain period of time, except in the following cases:
 - When the LAN cable is connected to the network interface connector
 - When the wireless LAN is enabled
- [Enable]: The power is automatically turned off if this machine has not been used for a certain period of time.
- [Disable]: Disables the Auto Power Off function. The power does not turn off automatically.



- Auto Power Off does not work in the following cases.
 - By default, Auto Power Off does not work with a network connection (wired/wireless).
 - When an error has occurred

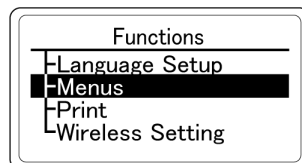
Follow the procedure below to change the Auto Power Off setting.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

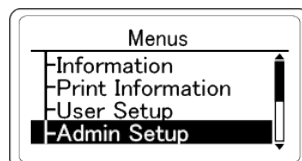


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

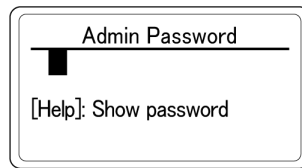


- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

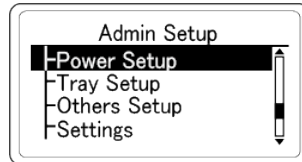


- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

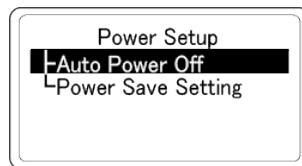
 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



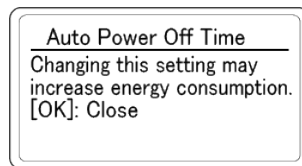
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Power Setup], and then press «OK».



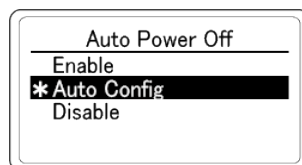
- 6 Press ▼ several times to select [Auto Power Off], and then press «OK».



- 7 When "Changing this setting may increase energy consumption." is displayed, press «OK».



- 8 Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Auto Config], [Enable] or [Disable], and press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 9 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Setting the time that elapses before entering the Auto Power Off mode

The following time options can be set. The factory default is 15 minutes or 4 hours depending on region.

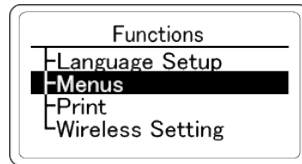
15 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 3 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, 12 hours, 18 hours, and 24 hours

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

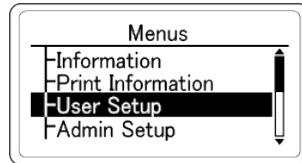


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

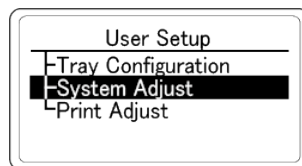
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



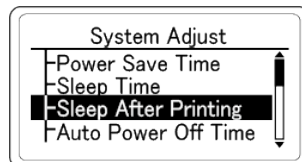
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



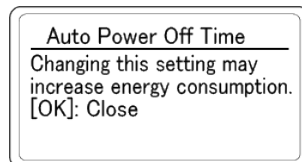
- 4 Press ▼ to select [System Adjust], and then press «OK».



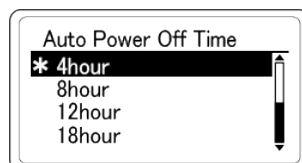
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Auto Power Off Time], and then press «OK».



- 6 When "Changing this setting may increase energy consumption." is displayed, press «OK».



- 7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the time to be set, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 8 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Setting actions of the power save mode

Set actions of the power save mode.

Mode1: Set it to the power save mode. The power consumption is lower than that in Mode 2.

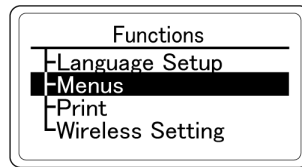
Mode2: Set it to the low temperature standby mode. The printing startup is faster than that in Mode 1.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

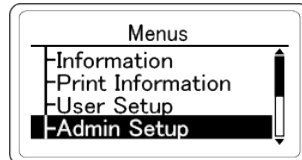


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

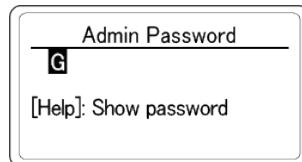


- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

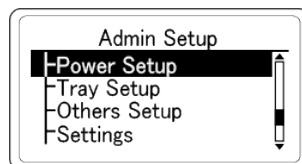


- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

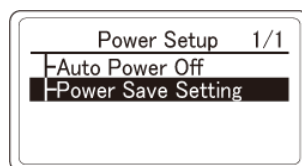
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



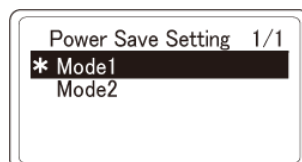
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Power Setup], and then press «OK».



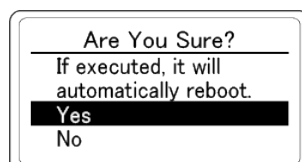
- 6 Press ▼ several times to select [Power Save Setting], and then press «OK».



- 7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the mode to be set, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 8 When [Are you sure?] is displayed, check that [Yes] is selected, and press «OK».



- 9 The machine will restart, so wait until the standby screen appears.

Setting the Sleep After Printing mode

You can set the machine to enter the sleep mode right after printing.

- [Enable]: The machine enters the sleep mode right after printing.
- [Disable]: The machine does not enter the sleep mode right after printing.



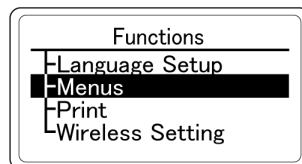
- This machine may not enter the sleep mode after the set period of time since the fan is working until this machine has cooled down depending on the printing environment or the usage conditions.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

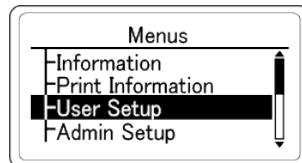


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

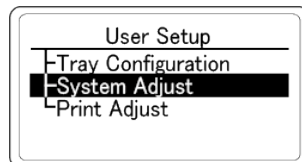
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



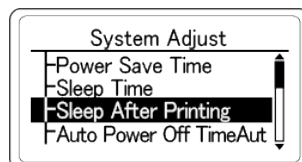
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



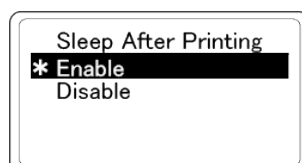
- 4 Press ▼ to select [System Adjust], and then press «OK».



- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Sleep After Printing], and then press «OK».



- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Enable] or [Disable], and press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 7 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Menu items

You can print to check the menu list.

 [Printing the menu map \(configuration\)\(P.89\)](#)

Language Setup

Item		Factory default setting	Description
Language Setup	Select Language	English	Select the language to be displayed on the display.

Menus (Information)

Item				Description
Tray Count		MPTray		Display the total print quantity for each tray.
		Tray1		Tray 2/3/4 is displayed when an optional expansion tray is mounted.
		Tray2		
		Tray3		
		Tray4		
Paper Feed Roller Counter		MPTray		Display the number of sheets fed from each tray.
		Tray1		After the paper feed roller is replaced, clear it from Admin Setup.
		Tray2		
		Tray3		Tray 2/3/4 is displayed when an optional expansion tray is mounted.
		Tray4		
A4/Letter Impressions Count				Display the number of print pages converted to A4/Letter paper.
Duplex Count				Display the number of sheets printed on both sides.
Supplies Life		Toner (n.nK)		Display the remaining toner amount (%). (n.nK) indicates the capacity of the toner cartridge installed in this machine.
		Drum		Display the remaining service life (%) of the image drum.
		Fuser		Display the remaining service life (%) of the fuser unit.
Network	Network Information	General Information	Extended Network	Display the enabled extended network other than the standard wired LAN1.
			Enabling Default Gateway	Display the enabled default gateway.
			Printer Name	Display the printer name.
			Short Printer Name	Display the short printer name.
			NIC Program Version	Display the network firmware version.
			Web Remote Version	Display the web page version.
		Wired(LAN1) Information	Wired(LAN1)	Display the state (enabled/disabled) of the standard wired LAN1.
			IPv4 Address	Display the IP address.
			Subnet Mask	Display the subnet mask.
			Gateway Address	Display the gateway address when [Enabling Default Gateway] is set to [Wired(LAN1)].

Item				Description
			MAC Address	Display the MAC address.
			IPv6 Address (Local)	Display the IPv6 address (local).
			IPv6 Address (Stateless)	Display the IPv6 address (stateless).
			IPv6 Address (Stateful)	Display the IPv6 address (stateful).
		Wired(LAN2) Information * It is displayed when the extended wired LAN module is installed. LAN2 does not support some specifications.	Wired(LAN2)	Display the state (enabled/disabled) of the extended wired LAN2.
			IPv4 Address	Display the IP address.
			Subnet Mask	Display the subnet mask.
			Gateway Address	Display the gateway address when [Enabling Default Gateway] is set to [Wired(LAN2)].
			MAC Address	Display the MAC address.
			IPv6 Address (Local)	Display the IPv6 address (local).
			IPv6 Address (Stateless)	Display the IPv6 address (stateless).
			IPv6 Address (Stateful)	Display the IPv6 address (stateful).
	Wireless(Infrastructure) Information * It is displayed when the optional wireless LAN module is installed.		Firmware Version	Display the wireless network firmware version.
			Wireless(Infrastructure)	Display the state (enabled/disabled) of the wireless network (infrastructure).
			SSID	Display the SSID of the connected wireless network access point.
			Security	Display the security type of the wireless network connection.
			State	Display the connection state of the wireless network.
			Band	Display the frequency bands of the current wireless network.
			Channel	Display the channel number used by the wireless network.
			RSSI	Display the signal strength of the wireless network.
			IPv4 Address	Display the IP address of the wireless network I/F.
			Subnet Mask	Display the subnet mask.
			Gateway Address	Display the gateway address when [Enabling Default Gateway] is set to [Wireless(Infrastructure)].
			MAC Address	Display the MAC address of the wireless network.
			IPv6 Address (Local)	Display the IPv6 address (local).
			IPv6 Address (Stateless)	Display the IPv6 address (stateless).
			IPv6 Address (Stateful)	Display the IPv6 address (stateful).
	Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Information * It is displayed when the optional wireless LAN module is installed.		Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)	Display the state (enabled or disabled) of the wireless network (Wi-Fi Direct).
			Security	Display the security of Wi-Fi Direct.
			SSID	Display the SSID of this machine.

Item			Description
		Password	Display the password. Not displayed when [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] - [Password Disclose Setting] is set to [Don't disclose].
		Number of connected	Display the number of wireless terminals which are currently connected.
		IPv4 Address	Display the IP address.
System Information	Serial Number		Display the serial number of the printer.
	Asset Number		Display the asset number of the printer.
	Firmware Version		Display the version of firmware.
	CU Version		Display the firmware version of the Control Unit (CU).
	PU Version		Display the firmware version of the Print Unit (PU).
	Panel Version		Display the firmware version of the operator panel.
	RAM		Display the total capacity of all RAMs installed in this machine.
	Flash Memory		Display the total capacity of all flash memories installed in this machine.
	Date and Time		Display the current date and time.

Menus (Print Information)

Item	Description
Configuration	Print the configurations of the printer.
Network	Print the setup situation of the network.
File List	Print a list of files stored in the printer.
PS Font List	Print the PS font sample.
PCL Font List	Print the PCL font sample.
ESC/P Font List	Print the ESC/P font sample.
Usage Report	Print the collective usage report of the printer.
Supplies Report	Print the information like the remaining service life of consumables.
Error Log	Print the error log.

Menus (User Setup)

The asterisk (*) indicates that factory default settings may differ from region to region.

Item			Factory default setting	Description
Tray Configuration	MPTray Config	Paper Size	A4	Set the size of the paper you want to print on from the MP tray.
		X Dimension	210 mm	Set the paper width when you have selected a custom size for the paper that you want to print on from the MP tray.
		Y Dimension	297 mm	Set the paper length when you have selected a custom size for the paper that you want to print on from the MP tray.
		Media Type	Plain	Set the type of paper that you want to print on from the MP tray.

Item		Factory default setting	Description
		Media Weight	Medium or Medium Light *
		Tray Usage	When Mismatching
			Set the weight of the paper that you want to print on from the MP tray.
			Set how to use the MP tray. The available values are as follows. [Normal Tray]: Treat the MP tray as a normal tray like Tray 1 or Tray 2/3/4 (optional). [When Mismatching]: Print from the MP tray with the correct paper loaded when the paper loaded in the specified tray for printing is different from the paper size of the print data. [Do Not Use]: Ignore the MP tray in selecting or switching the tray automatically.
	Tray1 Config	Paper Size	A4
		X Dimension	210 mm
		Y Dimension	297 mm
		Media Type	Plain
		Media Weight	Medium
	Tray2 Config	Paper Size	A4
		X Dimension	210 mm
		Y Dimension	297 mm
		Media Type	Plain
		Media Weight	Medium
	Tray3 Config	Paper Size	A4
		X Dimension	210 mm
		Y Dimension	297 mm
		Media Type	Plain
		Media Weight	Medium

Item			Factory default setting	Description
	Tray4 Config	Paper Size	A4	Set the size of the paper you want to print on from Tray 4.
		X Dimension	210 mm	Set the paper width when you have selected a custom size for the paper that you want to print on from Tray 4.
		Y Dimension	297 mm	Set the paper length when you have selected a custom size for the paper that you want to print on from Tray 4.
		Media Type	Plain paper	Set the type of the paper you want to print on from Tray 4.
		Media Weight	Medium	Set the weight of the paper you want to print on from Tray 4.
	Paper Feed Tray		Tray1	Specify the paper tray. The settings of the printer driver take priority.
	Auto Tray Switch		On	Set whether or not to use the Auto Tray Switch function. The settings of the printer driver take priority.
	Tray Sequence		Down	Specify the tray sequence for Auto Tray Selection/Auto Tray Switch.
	Duplex Last Page		Skip Blank Page	Set whether or not to print the last 1-sided page when the duplex printing is done on odd-numbered pages.
System Adjust	Power Save Time		1 minute	Set the time that will elapse before the power save mode is entered. Value range: 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes
	Sleep Time		1 minute	Set the time that will elapse before the sleep mode is switched from the power save mode. Value range: 1 minute, 2 minutes, 3 minutes, 4 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes
	Sleep After Printing		Enable	Set the machine to enter the sleep mode immediately after printing. When it is set to [Enable], the machine enters the sleep mode as soon as possible after printing to save energy. Depending on the temperature and other conditions inside the machine, the machine may not switch over temporarily. [Enable]: The machine enters the sleep mode right after printing. [Disable]: The machine does not enter the sleep mode right after printing.
	Auto Power Off Time		15 minutes or 4 hours*	Set the time that will elapse before the power is turned off automatically after the standby mode is entered. Value range: 15 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 3 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, 12 hours, 18 hours, and 24 hours

Item				Factory default setting	Description
	Clearable Warning			OK button	Set the timing to clear the recoverable error display.
	Auto Continue			Off	Set whether or not to automatically restore this machine when a memory overflow or tray request occurs.
	Manual Timeout			60 seconds	Set the waiting time for loading the paper when you print with [Feed paper individually] checked in the printer driver. Value range: Off, 30 seconds, and 60 seconds
	Timeout Injob			40 seconds	Set the time from loss of the data receipt (canceled by PostScript) until force-printing. Value range: Off, 5 seconds, 10 seconds, 20 seconds, 30 seconds, 40 seconds, 50 seconds, 60 seconds, 90 seconds, 120 seconds, 150 seconds, 180 seconds, 210 seconds, 240 seconds, 270 seconds, and 300 seconds
	Timeout Local			0 seconds	Set the time to keep each port open after printing. (Except for network) It can be set from 0 seconds to 300 seconds in increments of 5 seconds.
	Timeout Network			90 seconds	Set the time to keep the network port open after printing. It can be set from 0 seconds to 300 seconds in increments of 5 seconds.
	Jam Recovery			On	Set whether to reprint pages not printed due to a paper jam after the paper jam is cleared. When [Off] is selected, the printing process including pages missed due to the paper jam will be canceled.
	Error Report			Off	Sets whether to print error reports when an internal error occurs.
	Hex Dump			Execute	Prints the data received from the PC in hexadecimal dump. To exit this mode, turn off the power.
Print Adjust	Print Position Adjust	MPTray	X Adjust	0.00 mm	Adjusts the printing position of each tray. Tray2/3/4 is displayed when the expansion tray is mounted. [X Adjust]: Adjust the position of a whole print image in the direction that is perpendicular to the direction paper runs, that is horizontally. Value range: ± 2.00 mm (in increments of 0.1mm) [Y Adjust]: Adjust the position of a whole print image in the direction paper runs, that is vertically. Value range: ± 2.00 mm (in increments of 0.1mm)
			Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
		Tray1	X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
		Tray2	X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	

Item				Factory default setting	Description
		Tray3	Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	[Duplex X Adjust]: At the time of back page printing of Duplex (when printing the print side of paper fed from the duplex unit), adjust the position of the whole print image in the direction that is perpendicular to the direction paper runs, that is horizontally. Value range: ± 2.00 mm (in increments of 0.1mm)
			X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
		Tray4	X Adjust	0.00 mm	[Duplex Y Adjust]: At the time of back page printing of Duplex (when printing the print side of paper fed from the duplex unit), adjust the position of a whole print image in the direction paper runs, that is vertically. Value range: ± 2.00 mm (in increments of 0.1mm)
			Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex X Adjust	0.00 mm	
			Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 mm	
		Transfer Setting		0	Fine-tune the printing in case of noticeable blurs etc. on the printing result. Decrease the value if scattered or snowy printing occurs in the high-density printing section. Increase the value if printing is faint. Adjustable within the range of ± 2 .
		SMR Setting		0	Correct printing variations due to differences in temperature and humidity environments, printing density/printing frequency. Change the value if there is burr in the image. Adjustable within the range of ± 3 .
		BG Setting		0	Correct printing variations due to differences in temperature and humidity environments, printing density/printing frequency. Change the value if the underlay is dark. Adjustable within the range of ± 3 .
		Color Density		0	Set the printing density. Darken the printing result by adjusting in + direction, or lighten the printing result by adjusting in - direction. Adjustable within the range of ± 3 .
		Drum Cleaning		Off	Set whether or not to empty the drum before printing when white streaks appear in the horizontal direction. When it is set to [On], the service life of the image drum will be shortened.
		High Humid Mode		Off	The paper may curl when the paper is ejected at a high humidity. Set this setting to [Mode1] or [Mode2] to reduce the curling effect. The printing time is longer than the case of [Off]. The service life of the image drum and fuser unit will be shortened.

Item		Factory default setting	Description
	Narrow Paper Speed	Mode1	Set the printing speed when narrow paper is used. [Mode1]: It is the recommend mode for massive printing on narrow paper (with a width of 200 mm or less). Switch the speed to a low speed when printing on narrow paper. [Mode2]: It is the recommend mode for printing on a small amount of narrow paper. Print on narrow paper without reducing the speed. When printing on a large amount of narrow paper, it is easier to begin the waiting time for fixing temperature adjustment.
	Quiet Mode	Off	When it is set to [On], the printing speed is reduced to reduce the noise of the machine.

Menus (Admin Setup)

The asterisk (*) indicates that factory default settings may differ from region to region.

Item			Factory default setting	Description
Enter Password			(Please refer to the password label attached on the inside of this machine.)	Input the password required to enter the Admin Setup menu.
Network Setup	General Setup	Extended Network	Disable	Set up the extended network. In addition to the standard wired LAN, set [Wireless] when using a wireless LAN, and set [Wired(LAN2)] when using the extended wired LAN module.
		Enabling Default Gateway	Wired (LAN1)	Specify the network connection method for segment-based communication.
		TCP/IP	Enable	Enable/Disable the wired LAN.
		NetBIOS over TCP	Enable	Enable/Disable the NetBIOS over TCP protocol.
		Web	Enable	Specify whether or not to enable the access from the web browser. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		HTTP	Enable	Specify whether or not to enable access via HTTP from a web browser. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].

Item		Factory default setting	Description
		HTTPS Redirection (Web)	Enable Specify whether or not to enable the HTTPS Redirection (Web) function. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		Telnet	Disable Specify whether or not to enable access using Telnet. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		FTP	Disable Specify whether or not to enable access via FTP. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		IPSec	Disable It is displayed only when IPSec is enabled. It can be changed to Disable only. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		SNMP	Enable Specify whether or not to enable access from SNMP. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		WSD Print	Enable Specify whether or not to enable WSD Print. It is displayed when the [TCP/IP] protocol is set to [Enable].
		Network Scale	Small Normally, leave it as [Small].
		Network Factory Defaults	Execute Restores the network menu to its factory default settings.
	Wired (LAN1) Settings	Wired (LAN1)	Enable Enable/Disable the wired LAN1.
		IP Address Set	Auto Set whether to obtain the IPv4 address automatically or input it manually.
		IPv4 Address	192.168.100.100 Input the IPv4 address manually. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
		Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 Input the subnet mask. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
		Gateway Address	0.0.0.0 Input the gateway address. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
		DHCPv6	Disable Set whether or not to obtain the IPv6 address automatically. Set it to [Disable] when you do not use the IPv6 address.
		Gigabit Network	Disable Enable/Disable connection via 1000Base-T. When it is set to [Disable], 1000base-T Full/Half duplex connection cannot be made.
		HUB Link Setting	Auto Set the connection method to the hub.
	Wired(LAN2) Settings	Wired(LAN2)	Enable Enable/Disable the extended wired LAN (LAN2). It cannot be used simultaneously with a wireless LAN.
		IP Address Set	Auto Set whether to obtain the IPv4 address automatically or input it manually.
		IPv4 Address	192,168,102,100 Input the IPv4 address manually. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].

Item			Factory default setting	Description
		Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	Input the subnet mask. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
		Gateway Address	0.0.0.0	Input the gateway address. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
		DHCPv6	Disable	Set whether or not to obtain the IPv6 address automatically.
		HUB Link Setting	Auto	Set the connection method to the hub.
USB Setup	USB		Enable	Enable/Disable the USB interface.
	Speed		480 Mbps	Set the maximum baud rate using a USB interface.
	Soft Reset		Disable	Enable/Disable the Soft Reset command.
	Serial Number		Enable	Enable/Disable the USB serial number. The USB serial number is used to identify the USB device connected to the PC.
	Offline Receive		Disable	When [Enable] is selected, data can be received even if the printer is offline.
	USB Memory Interface		Enable	Enable/Disable the USB memory interface. If the setting value is changed, the setting will be reflected after the machine is restarted.
	Connected Host		Normal	Set it to [Specific] in case of timeout when printing on this machine in sleep mode. Power consumption in sleep mode is higher than that in [Normal].
Print Setup	Personality		Auto	Select the operating language of the printer.
	Copies		1	Set the number of copies. The value set in the printer driver takes priority.
	Duplex		On	Set whether or not to implement duplex printing. The value set in the printer driver takes priority.
	Binding		Long Edge	Specify the binding method for duplex printing. The value set in the printer driver takes priority.
	Media Check		Enable	Set whether or not to check the mismatch between the paper size of the print data and that of the paper tray.
	A4/Letter Override		Yes	Set the functions of auto switching of the printing paper from A4 to Letter when A4 paper runs out and Letter paper is loaded, or from Letter to A4 when Letter paper runs out.
	Edge to Edge		Off	Specify it to expand the print margin. The value set in the printer driver takes priority.
	Resolution		600 dpi	Set the resolution. The value set in the printer driver takes priority.
	Toner Save		Off	Set the toner save level.
	Default Orientation		Portrait	Specify the print orientation. For PostScript, this setting is disabled.

Item		Factory default setting	Description
	Edit Size	Cassette Size	Set the size of the drawing area when the size is not specified by the paper size edit command from a PC.
	Width	210 mm	Set the default paper width for a custom paper size.
	Length	297 mm	Set the default paper length for a custom paper size.
PS Setup	L1 Tray	Type 1	Set the tray selection number of level 1 operator command of PostScript.
	Network Protocol	RAW	Specify the PS communication protocol for network connection.
	USB Protocol	RAW	Specify the PS communication protocol for USB connection.
	PDF Paper Size	Current Tray Size	Specify the paper size for direct printing of PDF files.
	PDF Scaling Size	99%	Set the reduction ratio when [Scaling Size] is selected in [Size in PDF file].
	PDF Print Mode	Quality priority	Set whether or not to prioritize print quality or print speed when a PDF file is printed.
PCL Setup	Font Source	Resident	Select the location of the font to be used.
	Font Number	I0	Select the number of the font to be used. Value range: I0 - I90 when [Resident] is set/C1 - C4 when [Resident2] is set
	Font Pitch	10.00 CPI	Set the PCL font width. Value range: 0.44 - 99.99 CPI (in increments of 0.01 CPI)
	Font Height	12.00 points	Set the PCL font height. Value range: 4.00 - 999.75 points (in increments of 0.25 point)
	Symbol Set	PC-8	Select the symbol set of PCL.
	A4 Print Width	78 columns	Set the number of columns until an auto carriage return on A4 paper.
	White Page Skip	Off	Select whether or not to print blank pages.
	CR Function	CR	Set the actions of this machine when receiving the CR code.
	LF Function	LF	Set the actions of this machine when receiving the LF code.
	Print Margin	Normal	Set the unprintable area of the paper.
	Pen Width Adjust	On	Set whether or not to emphasize fine lines and make them thicker.
	Tray ID#	MPTray	Set the value to specify the tray with the output specification command of PCL. Value range: 1 - 59
		Tray1	
		Tray2	
		Tray3	
		Tray4	
SIDM Setup	SIDM Manual ID#	2	Sets up Pn specified in MANUAL by MANUAL-1 ID No.FX/PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn).
	SIDM Manual2 ID#	3	Sets up Pn specified in MANUAL by MANUAL-2 ID No.FX/PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn).

Item		Factory default setting	Description
	SIDM MP Tray ID#	4	Sets up Pn specified TRAYO (MP Tray) by MP Tray ID No.FX/PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn).
	SIDM Tray 1 ID#	1	Sets up Pn specified TRAY 1 by Tray 1 ID No.FX/ PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn).
	SIDM Tray2 ID#	5	Sets up Pn specified TRAY 2 by Tray 2 ID No.FX/ PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn). * It is displayed when optional expansion trays are mounted.
	SIDM Tray 3 ID#	6	Sets up Pn specified TRAY 3 by Tray 3 ID No.FX/ PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn). * It is displayed when optional expansion trays are mounted.
	SIDM Tray 4 ID#	7	Sets up Pn specified TRAY 4 by Tray 4 ID No.FX/ PPR Emu in CSF control command (ESC EM Pn). * It is displayed when optional expansion trays are mounted.
IBM PPR Setup	Character Pitch	10 CPI	Specify character pitches in IBM PPR emulation.
	Font Condense	12 CPI to 20 CPI	Specify 12CPI pitches for Condense Mode.
	Character Set	SET-2	Specify a character set.
	Symbol Set	IBM-437	Specify a symbol set.
	Letter O Style	Disable	Specify the style that replaces 9BH with letter o and 9DH with a zero.
	Zero Character	Normal	Set the zero to be slashed or unslashed.
	Line Pitch	6 LPI	Specify the line spacing.
	White Page Skip	Off	Specify whether or not to print blank pages.
	CR Function	CR	Select a carriage return from [CR] or [CR+LF].
	LF Function	LF	Select a line feed from [LF] or [LF+CR].
	Line Length	80 columns	Specify the number of characters per line.
	Form Length	11.7 inches or 11 inches*	Specify the length of paper.
	TOF Position	0.0 inch	Specify the distance from the top edge of paper.
	Left Margin	0.0 inch	Specify the distance from the left edge of paper so that the print starting point shifts to the right horizontally.
	Fit to Letter	Disable or Enable*	Set the printing mode that can fit paper to the printable area equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines). Same: The height stays the same regardless of CPI. Diff: The height varies according to CPI.
	Text Height	Same	Set the height of a character. Same: The height stays the same regardless of CPI. Diff: The height varies according to CPI.
EPSON FX Setup	Character Pitch	10 CPI	Specify the character pitch.
	Character Set	SET-2	Specify a character set.
	Symbol Set	IBM-437	Specify a symbol set.

Item		Factory default setting	Description
	Letter O Style	Disable	Specify the style that replaces 9BH with letter o and 9DH with a zero.
	Zero Character	Normal	Set the zero to be slashed or unslashed.
	Line Pitch	6 LPI	Specify the line spacing.
	White Page Skip	OFF	Specify whether or not to print blank pages.
	CR Function	CR	Select a carriage return from [CR] or [CR+LF].
	Line Length	80 columns	Specify the number of characters per line.
	Form Length	11.7 inches or 11 inches*	Specify the length of paper.
	TOF Position	0.0 inch	Specify the distance from the top edge of paper.
	Left Margin	0.0 inch	Specify the distance from the left edge of paper so that the print starting point shifts to the right horizontally.
	Fit To Letter	Disable or Enable*	Set the printing mode that can fit paper to the printable area equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines).
	Text Height	Same	Set the height of a character. Same: The height stays the same regardless of CPI. Diff: The height varies according to CPI.
	LQ Mode	On	Specify the EPSON emulation.
Private Print Setup	Verify job option	Disable	Specify whether or not to verify the print data before printing. If enabled, the printer prints after verifying that the print data has not been changed. The integrity of print data is guaranteed, but the time to start printing will be longer.
	Erase job option	No overwrite	Set the method for erasing the print data. You can specify that the data cannot be restored by overwriting after it is erased. If you overwrite, it will take longer to erase. Value range: No overwrite/Zero out once
	Keep job for	2 hours	Set the retention period of the print data. After the print data is saved, if the print data is not printed after the set period, the print data is automatically deleted. Value range: 15 min, 30 min, 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 8 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 4 days, 5 days, 6 days, 7 days
	Job Limitation	Enable all print formats	Set whether or not to save restricted print data. When [Private Print only] is selected, any print data other than private print will not be accepted.
	Verify job password	Off	Select whether or not to verify the password of print data when access control is enabled.
	Job Auto Search	On	Select whether or not to perform print data search at the same time as unlocking the panel when access control is enabled.

	Item	Factory default setting	Description
Panel Setup	Near Life Status	Enable	Set whether or not to display a message when the image drum or fuser unit is approaching the end of service life.
	Near Life LED	Enable	Set whether or not to light the ATTENTION lamp when the image drum, fuser unit or toner cartridge is approaching the end of service life.
	Paper setup when paper exchange	On	Set whether or not to display a paper size confirmation message when the paper cassette is removed or when paper is loaded into the MP tray. This menu is displayed when [AirPrint] is set to [Disable] by disabling [Bonjour] or [IPP].
	Idle Display	Toner Gauge	Select the information to be displayed on the standby screen.
	Panel Contrast	0	Adjust the display contrast. Value range: -10 ~ +10
	Power Save LED Brightness	Bright	Set the brightness of the flashing Power Save LED when the machine is in the sleep mode.
Buzzer Setup	Error Volume	Off	Set the buzzer volume when an error occurs.
	Print Completion Buzzer Volume	Off	Set the buzzer volume when the printing has completed.
	Printer Identification Buzzer Volume	Low	Set the buzzer volume when you use AirPrint, Mopria, or IPP Everywhere to find the printer.
Time Setup	Date Format	dd/mm/yyyy or mm/dd/yyyy*	Set the date in the format of dd/mm/yyyy or mm/dd/yyyy.
	Time Zone	+0:00	Set the GMT time zone. Value range: -12:00 ~ +13:00 (in increments of 15 minutes)
	Daylight Saving	Off	Set the daylight saving (daylight saving time).
	Setting method	Manual Setup	Select how to set the time.
	SNTP Server (Primary)	(Blank)	Set the SNTP server used to set the current date and time. Up to 64 characters can be used. It is displayed when [Setting method] is set to [Auto Setup].
	SNTP Server (Secondary)	(Blank)	
	Time Setup	-	Change the date and time if necessary. It is displayed when [Setting method] is set to [Manual Setup].
Power Setup	Auto Power Off	Auto Config	Set the operation of Auto Power Off. [Auto Config]: Auto Power Off does not work for network connections (wired/wireless). [Enable]: Auto Power Off works regardless of the connection method. [Disable]: Auto Power Off does not work.

Item			Factory default setting	Description	
	Power Save Setting		Mode1	Set the switching menu between the power save mode and low temperature standby mode. [Mode1]: Set it to the power save mode. The power consumption in the power save mode is lower than that in Mode2. [Mode2]: Set it to the low temperature standby mode. The printing startup in the power save mode is faster than that in Mode 1.	
Tray Setup	Unit of Measurement		millimeter	Set the unit of your custom paper size (millimeter/inch).	
	Default Paper Size		A4	Set the default paper size of the custom paper size.	
Others Setup	Paper Feed Roller Counter Clear	MP Tray Clear		Execute	Clear the counter after the paper feed roller of the MP tray is replaced.
		Tray1 Clear		Execute	Clear the counter after the paper feed roller of Tray 1 is replaced.
		Tray2 Clear		Execute	Clear the counter after the paper feed roller of Tray 2 is replaced.
		Tray3 Clear		Execute	Clear the counter after the paper feed roller of Tray 3 is replaced.
		Tray4 Clear		Execute	Clear the counter after the paper feed roller of Tray 4 is replaced.
	Flash Memory Setup	Initialize		All	Initialize the specified partition of a flash memory. The partitions that can be specified are [PCL], [PS], [Common] and [All].
	Job Log Setup	Save Job Log		Disable	Set whether or not to save a log of print data.
		Clear Job Log		Execute	Clear the log of saved print data. It is displayed when [Save Job Log] is enabled.
	Access Log Setup			Enable or Disable*	Set whether or not to save an access log.
	Security Setup	Access Control		Disable	Set whether or not to enable access control.
		User Counter Report		Execute	Print a user counter report. It is displayed when access control is set to [Enable] and [Save Job Log] is set to [Enable].
		PJL Enhance Security		Mode1 or Off*	Set the behavior of the machine when it receives an unencrypted request that contains confidential data over the network. [Mode1] accepts and discards any unencrypted request that contains confidential data.
		Account Lockout	Lockout	Enable	Set whether or not to prohibit new authentication for a certain period of time when authentication with a password has failed consecutively.

Item				Factory default setting	Description
			Lockout Condition	5 times	Set the conditions for lockout. Value range: 1 - 10 times (in increments of 1 time) It is displayed when lockout is set to [Enable].
			Lockout Period	5 minutes	Set the period of time for lockout. Value range: 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes It is displayed when lockout is set to [Enable].
		Password Policy	Minimum Length	10 or 1*	Set the number of characters for the password.
			Use Uppercase	On or Off*	Set whether the password contains at least one upper-case letter.
			Use Lowercase	On or Off*	Set whether the password contains at least one lower-case letter.
			Use Symbol	Off	Set whether the password contains at least one symbol.
			Use digit	Off	Set whether the password contains at least one digit.
	Font Setup	Font Output Mode		JIS2004	Set the font output mode.
	Job Cancel Setup	Cancel Button Behavior		Short	Set the behavior when the «CANCEL» button is pressed. [Short]: A short press (for 2 seconds or less) cancels the printing. [Long]: A long press for 2 to 5 seconds cancels the printing. [Off]: Pressing the «CANCEL» button does not cancel the printing.
		Inquiry Display		On	Set whether or not to display a screen to confirm whether or not to cancel the printing.
		Focus Position		Yes	Set whether or not to select [Yes] or [No] as the default on the job cancel inquiry screen.
		Display Timeout		180	Set the waiting time in seconds before a button is pressed on the job cancel inquiry screen. When the waiting time has passed, the printing will be continued instead of being canceled. Value range: 60 - 300 (sec)
	Near Life Setup	Drum Near Life Timing		1000	Set whether or not to display the number of copies before the image drum is approaching the end of its service life. Value range: 500 - 5,000 (in increments of 500)
		Fuser Near Life Timing		1500	Set whether or not to display the number of copies before the fuser unit is approaching the end of its service life. Value range: 500 - 5,000 (in increments of 500)

Item		Factory default setting	Description
	Erase Privacy Data	Execute	Erase the following data set in this machine. • Admin password, values set in various menus • Various records • Access control registered to this machine, user information
	NFC Setup	Enable	Enable/Disable the NFC function.  • Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.
	LAN LED Setup	On	Set whether or not to light the LED of the standard LAN (LAN1) when the machine enters the sleep mode.
	Power Off/On Log Record	On	Set whether or not to record the power off/on log of the machine as an error log.
	Power Off/On Log Print	Off	Set whether or not to include the power off/on log of the machine when printing the error log.
Settings	Reset Settings	Execute	Reset the menu settings changed by the user to the factory default settings.
Change Password		-	Set a new admin password.
Print Information	Job Log	-	Print the history of print data. It is displayed when [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Job Log Setup] - [Save Job Log] is set to [Enable].

Menus (AirPrint)

Item	Factory default setting	Description
AirPrint	Enable	Enable AirPrint. If [AirPrint] is set to [Enable], [Bonjour] and [IPP] will also be set to [Enable].

Menus (Print Statistics)

The asterisk (*) indicates that factory default settings may differ from region to region.

Item	Factory default setting	Description
Enter Password	(Please refer to the password label attached on the inside of this machine.)	Input the password required to enter the Print Statistics menu.
Usage Report	Enable	Enable/Disable the usage report.

Item		Factory default setting	Description
Maintenance Counter		Disable	Set whether or not to add a Maintenance Report (non-resettable Counter and non-resettable Consumable Replacements) to [Usage Report]. [Disable]: Print the resettable Counter and resettable Consumable Replacements in [Usage Report]. [Enable]: In addition to the resettable Counter and resettable Consumable Replacements, the Maintenance Report (non-resettable Counter and non-resettable Consumable Replacements) is also printed together in [Usage Report]. It is displayed when [Print Statistics] - [Usage Report] is set to [Enable].
Reset Main Counter		Execute	Reset the main counter. It is displayed when [Print Statistics] - [Usage Report] is set to [Enable].
Reset Supplies Counter		Execute	Reset the replacement counter of consumables. The maintenance counter is not reset. It is displayed when [Print Statistics] - [Usage Report] is set to [Enable] and [Maintenance Counter] is set to [Enable].
Account Lockout	Lockout	Enable	Set whether or not to prohibit new authentication for a certain period of time when authentication with a password for Print Statistics has failed consecutively.
	Lockout Condition	5 times	Set the conditions for lockout. Value range: 1 - 10 times (in increments of 1 time) It is displayed when [Lockout] is set to [Enable].
	Lockout Period	5 minutes	Set the period for lockout. Value range: 1 minute, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes, and 60 minutes It is displayed when [Lockout] is set to [Enable].
Password Policy	Minimum Length	10 or 1*	Set the minimum length of the password.
	Use Uppercase	On or Off*	Set whether the password contains at least one upper-case letter.
	Use Lowercase	On or Off*	Set whether the password contains at least one lower-case letter.
	Use Symbol	Off	Set whether the password contains at least one symbol.
	Use digit	Off	Set whether the password contains at least one digit.
Change Password		-	Set a new password required to enter the Print Statistics menu. It is displayed when [Print Statistics] - [Usage Report] is set to [Enable].

Menus (Calibration)

Item	Factory default setting	Description
Fuser Temp Adjust	0	Adjust the fuser unit temperature.

Menus (User Account Info)

Item	Factory default setting	Description
Change Password	-	Input a new password. It is displayed when [Access Control] is set to [Enable] and you log in using local authentication.

Print

Item			Description
Print From USB Memory	Select Print File	Execute	Print the selected file.
	Print Setup	Paper Feed Tray	Set the tray to feed paper.
		Copies	Set the number of copies.
		Duplex	Set whether or not to print on both sides.
		Binding	Set the binding method for duplex printing. It is displayed when duplex printing is specified.
		Fit	Set whether or not to fit to the paper.
Shared Print		---Print All---	It is displayed when the shared print data is available. Print all the shared print data.
		---Delete All---	It is displayed when the shared print data is available. Delete all the shared print data.
		(View a list of target files.)	It is displayed when the shared print data is available. Print the selected file(s).
Private Print		Please select a User	Select a user. It is displayed when [Access Control] is set to [Disable].
		Enter Password	Input the password for the selected user.
		Search all the Private Jobs?	Select whether or not to search for private print data for all users or private print data of a certain individual (i.e. the logged-in user). It is displayed when [Access Control] is set to [Disable] and when "admin" is specified in [User Name]. Or, it is displayed when [Access Control] is set to [Enable] and when you log in as a user with the role of administrator.
		---Print All---	Print all the private print data. It is not displayed when you search for jobs for all users.
		---Delete All---	Delete all the private print data.
		(View a list of target files.)	When access control is set to [Disable]: When there is private print data, select the private print data and print it. When access control is set to [Enable]: When there is private print data created by the logged-in user, select the private print data and print it. Printing is not possible when you search for jobs for all users. Only deleting is possible.

Wireless Setting (Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting)

Item		Factory default setting	Description
Enter Password		(Please refer to the password label attached on the inside of this machine.)	Input the password required to enter the Admin Setup menu.
Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)		Disable	Enable/Disable the Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct). It cannot be enabled simultaneously with [Wireless(Infrastructure)].
Manual Setup			Display the SSID and password of this machine for manual setup.
Connection Setting	SSID	DIRECT-xx-Printer Name	Input a new one to change the SSID. The DIRECT-xx part cannot be changed. (Here, xx stands for 2 alphanumeric characters.)
	Password		Input a new one to change the password.
	IPv4 Address	192.168.110.100	Input the IPv4 address.
	Auto Approval Setting	Disable	Set whether or not to accept the Wi-Fi Direct connection request from a mobile device. If [Enable] is set, the connection request is accepted automatically. If [Disable] is set, a confirmation screen is displayed on the operator panel to ask whether or not to accept the connection.
	Execute		Execute connection setup.
Password Disclose Setting		Don't disclose	In the [Information] menu, set whether or not to display the password.

Wireless Setting (Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting)

Item		Factory default setting	Description
Enter Password		(Please refer to the password label attached on the inside of this machine.)	Input the password required to enter the Admin Setup menu.
Wireless(Infrastructure)		Disable	Enable/Disable the wireless LAN (infrastructure). It cannot be enabled simultaneously with [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)].
Network Setup	IP Address Set	Auto	Set whether to obtain the IPv4 address automatically or input it manually.
	IPv4 Address	192.168.101.100	Input the IPv4 address manually. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].

Item			Factory default setting	Description
	Subnet Mask		255.255.255.0	Input the subnet mask. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
	Gateway Address		0.0.0.0	Input the gateway address. It is displayed when [IP Address Set] is set to [Manual].
	DHCPv6		Disable	Set whether or not to obtain the IPv6 address automatically. Set it to Disable when you do not use the IPv6 address.
Automatic setup (WPS)	WPS-PBC			Execute it when setting is done by pressing the WPS button of the wireless LAN access point.
	WPS-PIN			Execute it when the PIN code displayed on this machine is registered with the wireless LAN access point.
Wireless Network Selection	xxxxxx ...			Display the list of wireless LAN access points detected by this machine.
	Manual Setup	SSID		Input the SSID.
		Security	Disable	Set the security of the wireless LAN function.
		WEP Key		Input the WEP key.
		WPA Encryption Type		Display the WPA-PSK encryption type. The setting is carried out automatically according to the security settings. (They cannot be switched in this menu.)
		WPA Pre-shared Key		Input the pre-shared key. It is displayed when [Security] is set to any other value than [Disable] or [WEP].
		Execute		Execute the changes to security settings.
Wireless reconnection				Reconnect to the wireless LAN (infrastructure).

Boot Menu

1. While holding «OK» on the operator panel, press the power button. When [Boot Menu] appears on the display, release your finger and press «OK» again.
2. Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and then press «OK».

 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



- This menu operation requires a restart.

Item	Factory default setting	Description
Enter Password	(Please refer to the password label attached on the inside of this machine.)	Input the admin password required to enter the Boot Menu.
Menu Lockout	Off	When [On] is set, the Admin Setup and user menu list are hidden and thus unavailable. However, only printing settings are displayed.
Panel Lockout	Off	Disable the buttons on the operator panel. [Mode1]: Enable «OK», «CANCEL», «HELP» and «BACK»; and disable ▲ and ▼. [Mode2]: Disable all the buttons except «OK», «HELP» and «BACK». [Off]: All the buttons can be used.
After AC power supply fails	Always Off	Set whether or not to restore the Ready-To-Print status automatically in case of a power failure. Depending on the action mode of the machine, if the power cord is unplugged or power supply is interrupted (e.g. due to a power failure), the machine may not start by force unless a specified period of time has elapsed before the power cord is reconnected. (5 minutes in Japan, 6 minutes in Taiwan, and 8 minutes in other countries or regions except Japan and Taiwan) [Always On]: This machine is started by force when the power failure is recovered without pressing the power button. This machine starts simply by connecting the power plug to the outlet. [Always Off]: This machine does not start when the power failure is recovered without pressing the power button. [Last State]: This machine remembers the state when the power supply is interrupted and restarts with that state after the power failure is recovered. This machine automatically restores the Ready-to-Print state when the power failure is recovered even if the power supply is interrupted due to a power failure while the machine is working. If a power failure occurs when the power is off, this machine does not start even after the power failure is recovered.

5

Printing from a PC

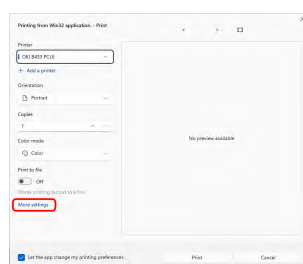
Printing from a PC	128
Screens and functions of the printer driver	131
Printing on various types of paper.....	142
Printing methods	156
Printing in economy mode.....	168
Refining your finishing.....	172
Useful functions.....	176
Printing with security enhanced	187
Canceling the printing	193

Printing from a PC

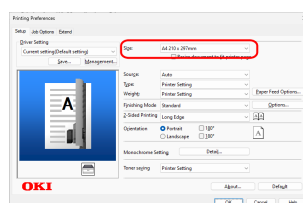
Both the PCL printer driver and PS printer driver are available.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [OKI *** PCL6] (where *** is your model name) from [Printer].
- 4 Click [More settings].



- 5 Select the size of the loaded paper from [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



- 6 Select the tray to be printed from [Source].



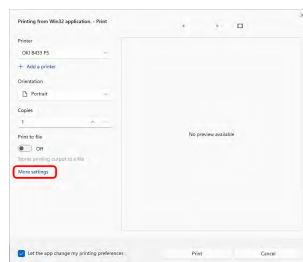
- If you cannot select Tray 2/3/4, please refer to "[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)".

- 7 Set [Type] and [Weight].
- 8 Set other necessary items.
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Printing starts.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [OKI *** PS] (where *** is your model name) from [Printer].

- 4 Click [More settings].



- 5 Select the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 6 Select the tray to be printed from [Paper Source].

 - If you cannot select Tray 2/3/4, please refer to "[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)".
- 7 Click [Advanced].
- 8 Click [Paper Size], and select the size of the loaded paper from the drop-down list.
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Set other necessary items.
- 11 Click [OK].
- 12 Printing starts.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

This sections takes for example printing with TextEdit.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Page Setup] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select your model from [Target Printers].
- 4 Select the size of the loaded paper from [Media Size], and click [OK].
- 5 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 6 Select [Setup] from [Printer Options].
- 7 Select the tray to be printed from in [Paper Source].

 - If you cannot select Tray 2/3/4, please refer to "[Setting the printer driver\(P.67\)](#)".
- 8 Set other necessary items.
- 9 Printing starts.

For the macOS PS printer driver

This sections takes for example printing with TextEdit.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Page Setup] from the [File] menu.

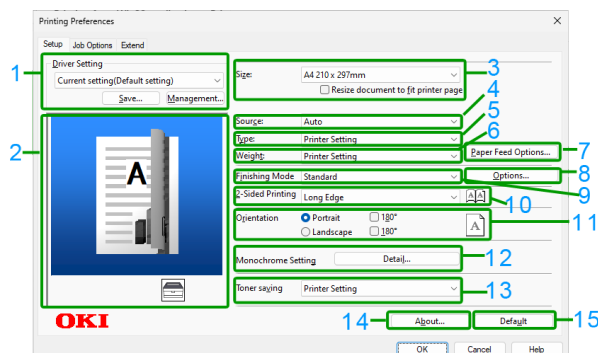
- 3 Select your model from [Target Printers].
- 4 Select the size of the loaded paper from [Media Size], and click [OK].
- 5 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 6 Select [Paper Feed] from [Printer Options].
- 7 Select [All Pages From], and select the tray to be printed from.

 - If you cannot select Tray 2/3/4, see "[Setting the printer driver](#)(P.67)".
- 8 Set other necessary items.
- 9 Printing starts.

Screens and functions of the printer driver

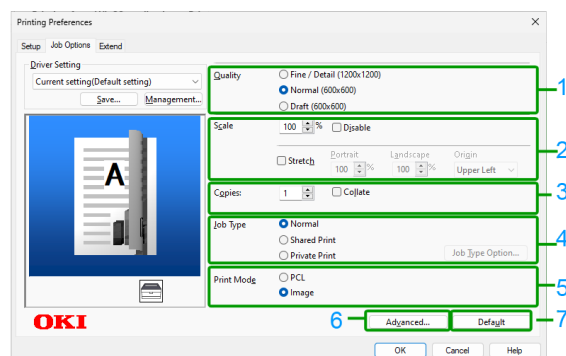
For the Windows PCL printer driver

[Setup] tab



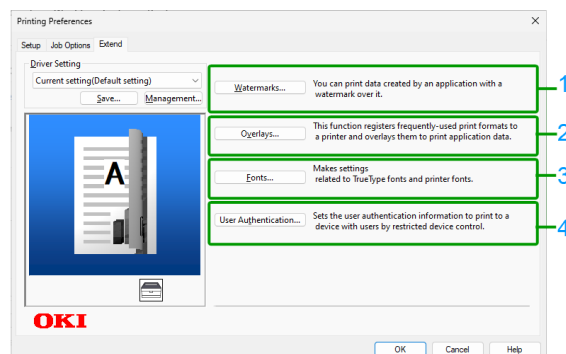
No.	Item	Description
1	Driver Setting	Save the settings.
2	Layout image	Display a sample image of the print layout.
3	Size	Set the paper size.
4	Source	Set the paper source.
5	Type	Set the media type.
6	Weight	Set the media weight.
7	Paper Feed Options	You can make detailed settings for paper feeding.
8	Options	You can make detailed settings for the layout.
9	Finishing Mode	Set multi-page printing, booklet printing, poster printing, etc.
10	2-Sided Printing	Set the duplex printing.
11	Orientation	Set the printing orientation.
12	Mono Settings	Adjust the brightness during mono printing.
13	Toner Saving	Decrease the print density to reduce the amount of toner to be used.
14	About	Display the version of the printer driver.
15	Default	Restore the settings of each item in the tab to the initial values.

[Job Options] tab



No.	Item	Description
1	Quality	Specify the print resolution.
2	Scale	Set the enlargement/reduction of printing.
3	Copies	Specify the number of copies.
4	Job Type	Set the type of printing.
5	Print Mode	Set whether the print data sent to the printer is in PCL format or as an image.
6	Advanced	Make other printing settings.
7	Default	Restore the settings of each item in the tab to the initial values.

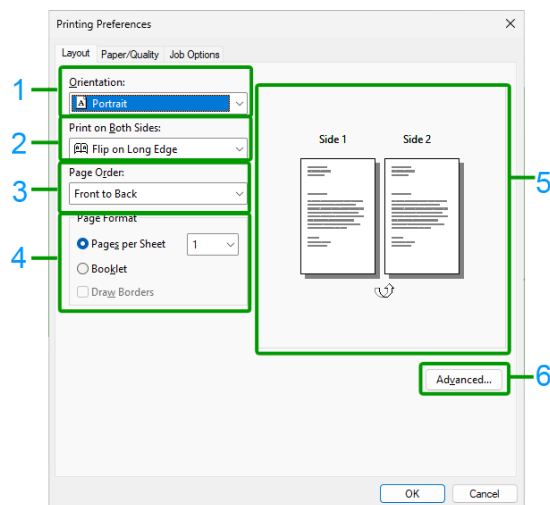
[Extend] tab



No.	Item	Description
1	Watermarks	Set it for printing with a text or stamp watermark.
2	Overlays	Set it for printing with an overlapping print format registered in the printer beforehand.
3	Fonts	Set the TrueType font and printer font.
4	User Authentication	Set the user authentication.

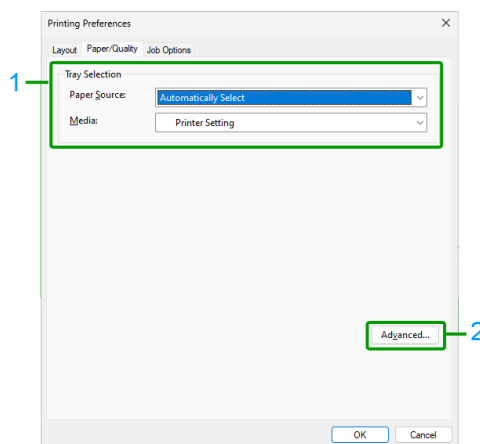
For the Windows PS printer driver

[Layout] tab



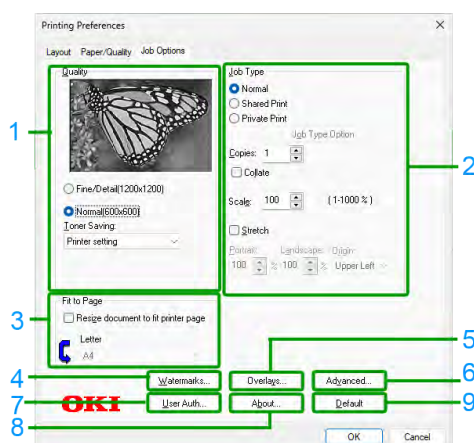
No.	Item	Description
1	Orientation	Set the printing orientation.
2	Print on Both Sides	Set it for duplex printing.
3	Page Order	Set the order of pages to be printed.
4	Page format	Specify the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper and booklet printing.
5	Layout image	Display a sample image of the print layout.
6	Advanced	You can make detail settings such as the print quality and paper size.

[Paper/Quality] tab



No.	Item	Description
1	Tray selection	Change the paper tray.
2	Advanced	You can make detail settings such as the print quality and paper size.

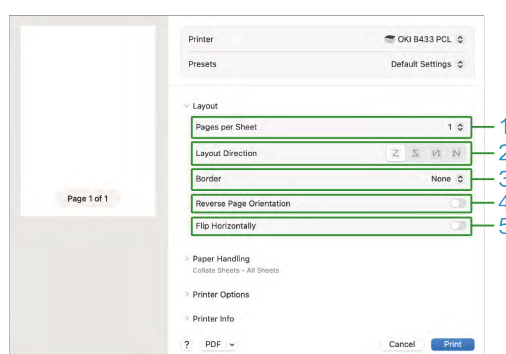
[Job Options] tab



No.	Item	Description
1	Quality	Specify the print resolution, etc.
2	Job Type	Set the type of print data, the number of copies, etc. When [Shared Print] or [Private Print] is set, [Job Type Option] is available. If [Collate] is checked, multiple documents will be printed as a batch.
3	Fit to page	Check [Resize document to fit printer page] to print on a different size of paper.
4	Watermarks	Set it for printing with a text or stamp watermark.
5	Overlays	Set it for printing with an overlapping format registered in the printer beforehand.
6	Advanced	Other settings can be made.
7	User Authentication	Set the user authentication.
8	About	Display the version of the printer driver.
9	Default	Restore the settings of each item in the tab to the initial values.

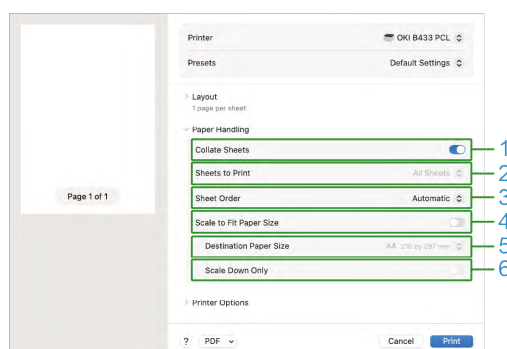
For the macOS PCL printer driver

[Layout]



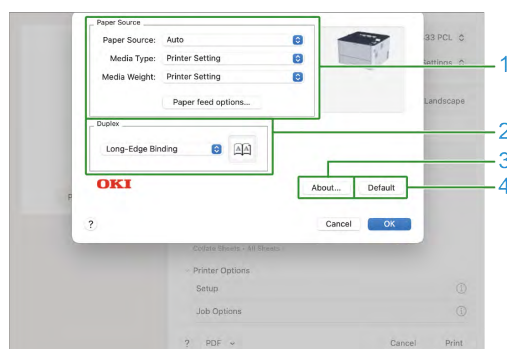
No.	Item	Description
1	Pages per Sheet	Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper.
2	Layout Direction	Specify the layout for printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper.
3	Border	Specify the type of borders.
4	Reverse page orientation	Check it to print by reversing the page direction.
5	Flip horizontally	Check it to print by reversing the data horizontally.

[Paper Handling]



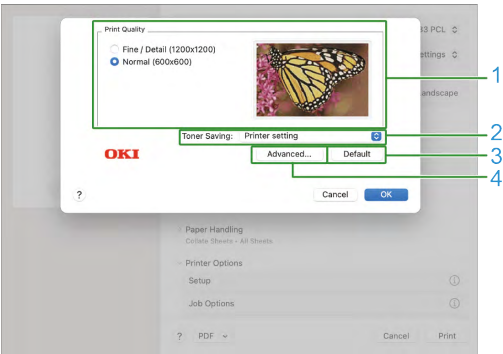
No.	Item	Description
1	Collate pages	Check it to print a multi-page document in collation.
2	Pages to Print	Specify the pages to be printed.
3	Page Order	Specify the order of pages to be printed.
4	Scale to fit paper size	Print it by fitting to the paper size. Depending on the settings, printing may not work correctly. Check it to print by zooming-in/-out the data according to the paper size.
5	Destination Paper Size	Specify the size of the paper to be printed when [Scale to fit paper size] is checked.
6	Scale down only	Specify settings for printing in reduction only to fit the size of the paper.

[Printer Options] - [Setup]



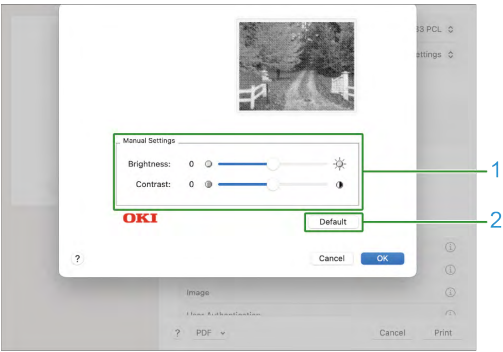
No.	Item	Description
1	Paper	Set the paper source, paper type, paper weight and so on.
2	Duplex	Specify settings for duplex printing.
3	About	Display the version of the printer driver.
4	Default	Restore the panel settings to the initial values.

[Printer Options] - [Job Options]



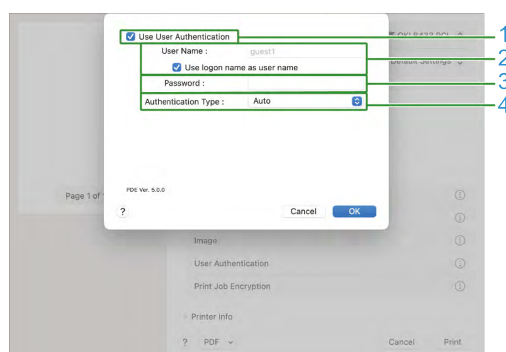
No.	Item	Description
1	Print Quality	Specify the printing resolution.
2	Toner Saving	Specify the print density in the toner saving mode.
3	Advanced	Set other printing options.
4	Default	Restore the panel settings to the initial values.

[Printer Options] - [Image]



No.	Item	Description
1	Manual Settings	Specify the brightness and contrast.
2	Default	Restore the panel settings to the initial values.

[Printer Options] - [User Authentication]

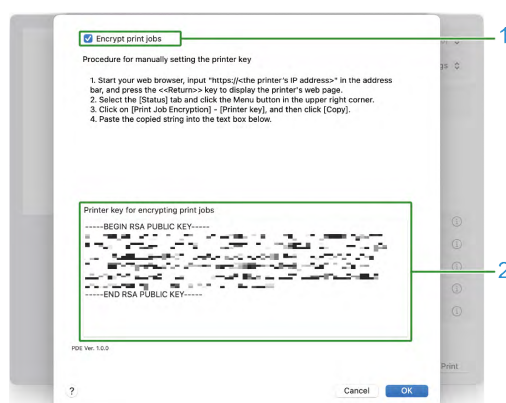


No.	Item	Description
1	Use User Authentication	Check it to set user authentication for printing.
2	User Name	The user name for user authentication.
3	Password	The password for user authentication.
4	Authentication type	Specify the authentication type to be used.



- [Authentication Type] can be enabled in the [Options] tab of [Options and Supplies] displayed by selecting [System Preferences] - [Printers & Scanners] from the Apple menu.

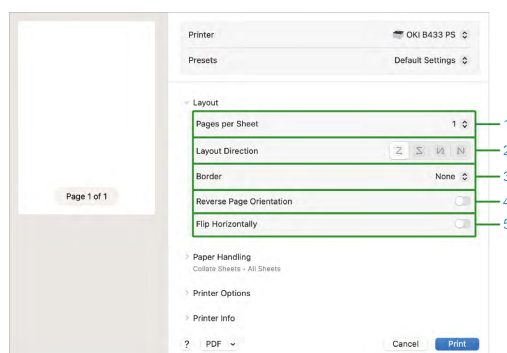
[Printer Options] - [Encrypt print jobs]



No.	Item	Description
1	Encrypt print jobs	Check it to encrypt print data before printing.
2	Printer key for encrypting print jobs	Input the printer key obtained from the web page of this machine.

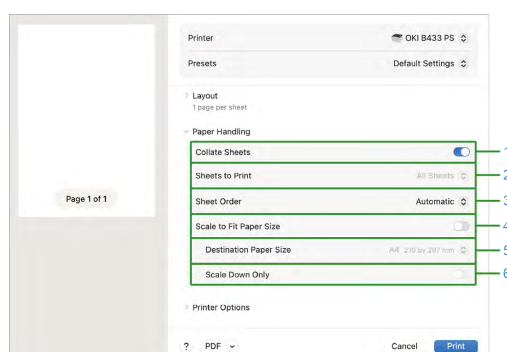
For the macOS PS printer driver

[Layout]



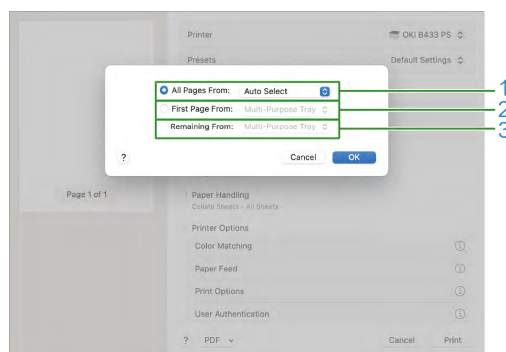
No.	Item	Description
1	Pages per Sheet	Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper.
2	Layout Direction	Specify the layout for printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper.
3	Border	Specify the type of borders.
4	Reverse page orientation	Check it to print by reversing the page direction.
5	Flip horizontally	Check it to print by reversing the data horizontally.

[Paper Handling]



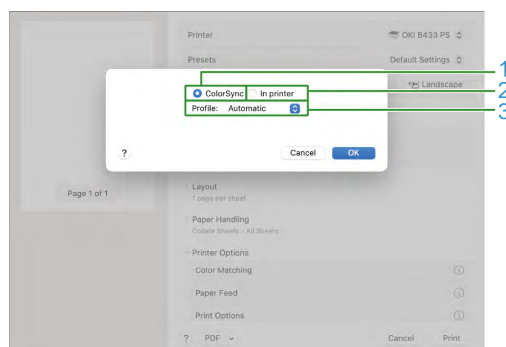
No.	Item	Description
1	Collate pages	Check it to print a multi-page document in collation.
2	Pages to Print	Specify the pages to be printed.
3	Page Order	Specify the order of pages to be printed.
4	Scale to fit paper size	Print it by fitting to the paper size. Depending on the settings, printing may not work correctly. Check it to print by zooming-in/-out the data according to the paper size.
5	Destination Paper Size	Specify the size of the paper to be printed when [Scale to fit paper size] is checked.
6	Scale down only	Specify settings for printing in reduction only to fit the size of the paper.

[Printer Options] - [Paper Feed]



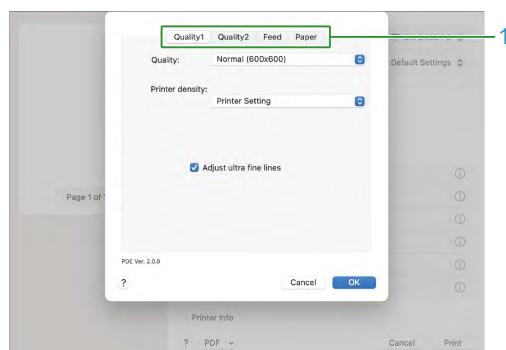
No.	Item	Description
1	All Pages From	Specify the tray to feed paper. When [Auto Select] is specified, a tray is selected automatically.
2	First Page From	Select it to print only the first page from the specified tray.
3	Remaining From	Select it to print the remaining pages from the specified tray.

[Printer Options] - [Color Matching]



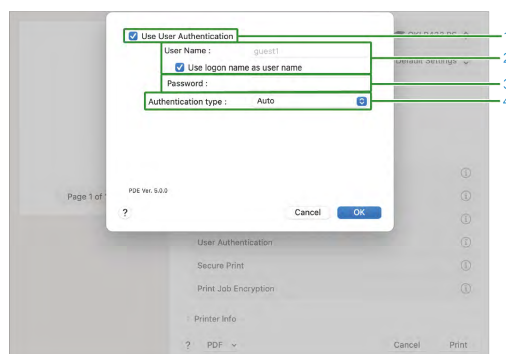
No.	Item	Description
1	ColorSync	Specify the ColorSync function.
2	In printer	Use color matching in this machine.
3	Profile	Specify a profile.

[Printer Options] - [Print Options]



No.	Item	Description
1	Quality1, Quality2, Feed, Paper	Specify the print quality, toner save, media type, etc.

[Printer Options] - [User Authentication]

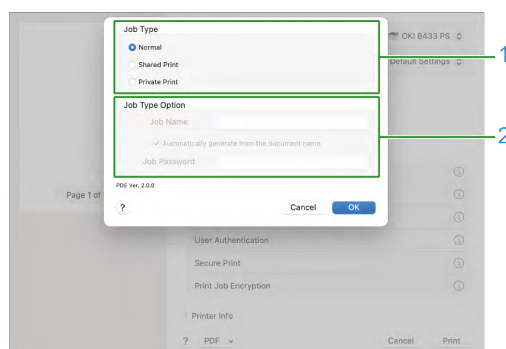


No.	Item	Description
1	Use User Authentication	Check it to set user authentication for printing.
2	User Name	The user name for user authentication.
3	Password	The password for user authentication.
4	Authentication type	Specify the authentication type to be used.



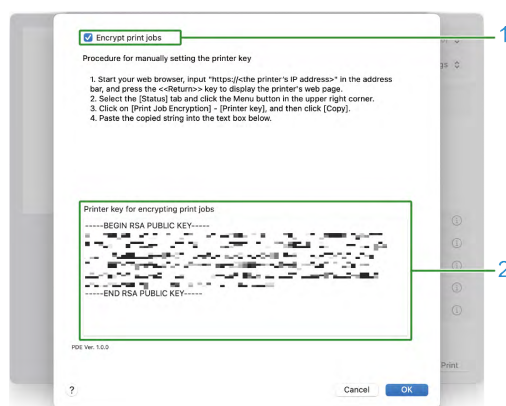
- [Authentication Type] can be enabled in the [Options] tab of [Options and Supplies] displayed by selecting [System Preferences] - [Printers & Scanners] from the Apple menu.

[Printer Options] - [Secure Print]



No.	Item	Description
1	Job Type	Specify the type of print data. When [Private Print] or [Shared Print] is set, [Job Type Option] is available.
2	Job Type Option	Specify the password for printing the job name displayed on the panel.

[Printer Options] - [Encrypt print jobs]



No.	Item	Description
1	Encrypt print jobs	Check it to encrypt print data before printing.
2	Printer key for encrypting print jobs	Input the printer key obtained from the web page of this machine.

How to open [Devices and Printers]

This section explains how to open the printer driver icon folder for each version of Windows.

For Windows 11/Windows Server 2025

- 1 Select [Start] - [Settings] - [Bluetooth & devices] - [Devices] - [More devices and printer settings].

For Windows 10 (Version 1703 or later)/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2019

- 1 Click [Start] to display the application list.
- 2 Select [Windows System Tool] - [Control Panel] - [Devices and Printers].

For Windows 10/Windows Server 2016

- 1 Open the control panel, and select [View devices and printers].

Printing on various types of paper

Printing on envelopes

You can print on long paper using the multi-purpose tray (MP tray).



- Tray 1/2/3/4 is not applicable.

Loading envelopes

- 1 Check the paper precautions.

- [Applicable paper\(P.74\)](#)
- [Inapplicable paper\(P.75\)](#)
- [Paper precautions by type\(P.76\)](#)

- 2 Load envelopes with the print side facing up by referring to the following instructions.

Load Nagagata envelopes (Naga#3, Naga#4, and Naga#40) with the flap (opening margin) open.

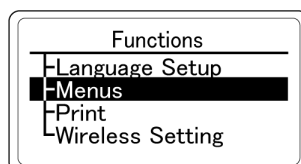
Load Yougata envelopes (You#0 and You#4) with the flap (opening margin) folded.

Load Yougata envelopes (You #0) with the flap (opening margin) open.

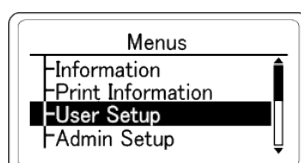
For the detailed procedure, please refer to "[Loading paper in the MP tray\(P.82\)](#)".

	Envelopes (Naga#3 and Naga#4) * Set the flap without breaking it.	Envelopes (You#0 and You#4)
When printing the address		
When printing the sender		

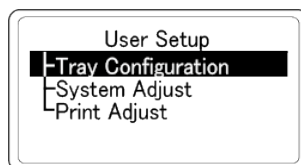
- 3 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.
- 4 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



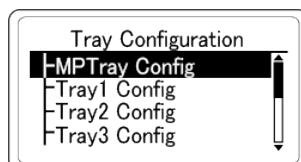
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



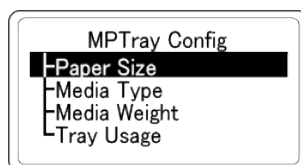
- 6 Check that [Tray Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».



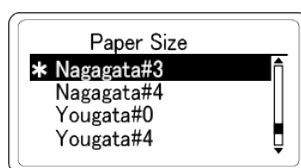
- 7 Check that [MPTray Config] is selected, and then press «OK».



- 8 Check that [Paper Size] is selected, and press «OK».



- 9 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select a value that matches the envelopes to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 10 Press «OK».
- 11 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select [Media Weight], and then press «OK».
- 12 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select the paper weight to match the GSM weight of the paper to be used for the loaded envelope, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- For envelopes made of paper with a GSM weight of 85 g/m², select [Medium].

[Setting paper information on the operator panel\(P.84\)](#)

- 13 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

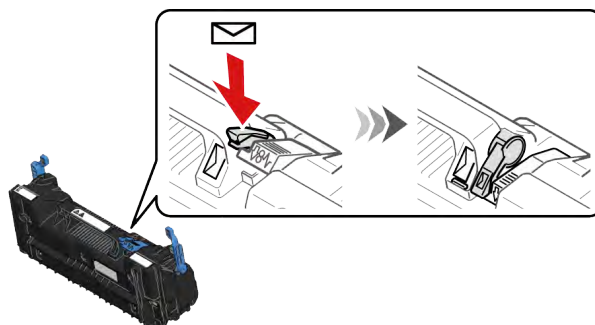
If you are concerned about wrinkles

After printing, if you are concerned about wrinkles on the envelope, follow the procedure below to change the position (blue, small) of the envelope lever on the fuser unit, set the paper weight to [Heavy], and print it again. If you are printing on any other paper than envelopes, press the jam release lever (blue, large) to return the envelope lever (blue, small) to its original position.

- 1 Take out the fuser unit by following Steps 2 - 5 of "Replacing the maintenance kit".

[Replacing the maintenance kit\(P.312\)](#)

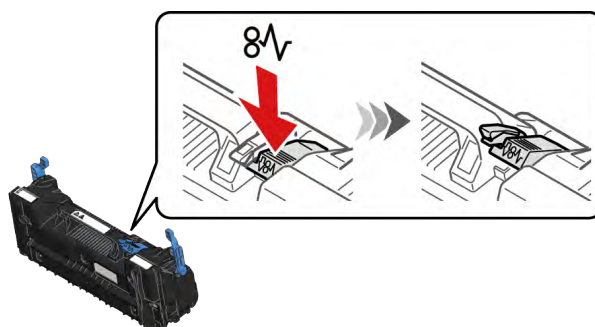
- 2 By holding the handle, press in the envelope lever (blue, small).



- 3 Install the removed fuser unit back into the machine by following Steps 6 - 7 of "Replacing the maintenance kit".

[Replacing the maintenance kit](#)(P.312)

- 4 By following the procedure in the next section, "Printing from a PC", set the paper weight to [Heavy], and start printing.
- 5 Once the envelope printing is complete, press the jam release lever (blue, large) next to the envelope lever (blue, small) of the fuser unit, and then return the paper envelope lever (blue, small) to its original position.



Printing from a PC

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Envelope*] from [Size] in the [Setup] tab.
* Select the type of the envelope loaded.
- 5 Select the tray where envelopes are loaded from [Source].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, click [Paper Feed Options] in [Setup] of the printer driver, and check [Feed paper individually] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feed paper individually] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".

- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab, and select [Envelope*] from [Paper Size].
* Select the type of the envelope loaded.
- 5 Click [OK].
- 6 Select the tray where envelopes are loaded from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] in [Advanced] on the [Layout] tab of the printer driver (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".

- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the envelope size from [Paper Size] and the orientation from [Orientation].
- 4 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Setup] - [Paper Source].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Paper Source] in the printer driver, and check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] of [Paper Feed Options] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".
- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the envelope size from [Paper Size] and the orientation from [Orientation].
- 4 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Paper Feed] -[All Pages From] in the printer driver, and check [Printer Options] - [Print Options] - [Paper input options] - [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".
- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing on labels

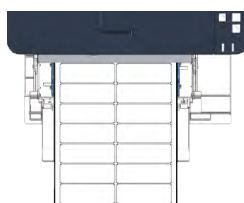
Labels are printed from the MP tray.

- 1 Check the paper precautions.

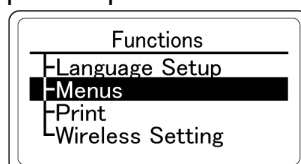
- [Applicable paper\(P.74\)](#)
- [Inapplicable paper\(P.75\)](#)
- [Paper precautions by type\(P.76\)](#)

- 2 Load labels with the print side facing up by referring to the following instructions.

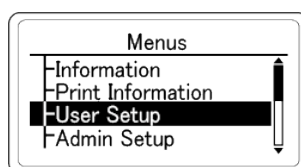
For the detailed procedure, please refer to "[Loading paper in the MP tray\(P.82\)](#)".



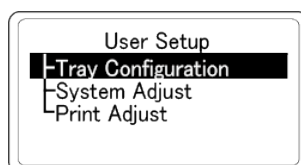
- 3 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.
- 4 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



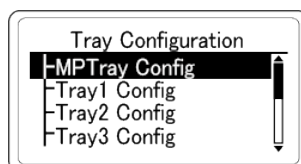
- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



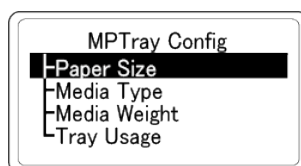
- 6 Check that [Tray Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».



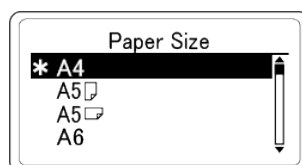
- 7 Check that [MPTray Config] is selected, and then press «OK».



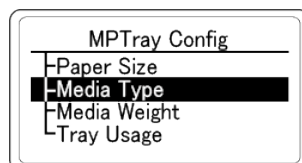
- 8 Check that [Paper Size] is selected, and press «OK».



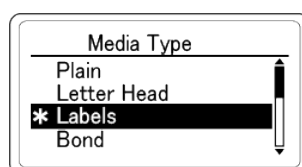
- 9 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select the size of the labels to be loaded, and then press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting, and then press «BACK».



- 10 Press ▼ to select [Media Type], and press «OK».



- 11 Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Labels], and press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.



- 12 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Printing from a PC

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [A4] or [Letter] from [Size] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Select the tray where labels are loaded from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.
- 6 Make settings as follows in [Type].
If you selected [Labels] on the operator panel when you loaded labels in the machine, select [Printer Setting] in [Type].
In other cases, select [Labels] in [Type].
- 7 If necessary, click [Paper Feed Options], uncheck [Long Edge Feed] for the tray to feed paper, and click [OK].

 - If you want to print while checking each sheet, click [Paper Feed Options] in [Setup] of the printer driver, and check [Feed paper individually] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feed paper individually] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab, and select [A4] or [Letter] from [Paper Size].
- 5 Click [OK].
- 6 Select the tray where labels are loaded from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 7 Make settings as follows in [Media].
If you selected [Labels] on the operator panel when you loaded labels in the machine, select [Printer Setting] in [Media].
In other cases, select [Labels] in [Media].
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] in [Advanced] on the [Layout] tab of the printer driver (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".

- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [A4] or [Letter] from [Paper Size].
- 4 Select [Printer Options] - [Setup].
- 5 Select the tray where labels are loaded from [Paper Source].
- 6 Make settings as follows in [Media Type].
If you selected [Labels] on the operator panel when you loaded labels in the machine, select [Printer Setting] in [Media Type].
In other cases, select [Labels] in [Media Type].
- 7 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Paper Source] in the printer driver, and check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] of [Paper Feed Options] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".
- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [A4] or [Letter] from [Paper Size].
- 4 Select the tray where labels are loaded from [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From].

5 Select the [Paper Feed] tab in [Printer Options] - [Print Options].

6 Make settings as follows in [Media Type].

If you selected [Labels] on the operator panel when you loaded labels in the machine, select [Printer Setting] in [Media Type].

In other cases, select [Labels] in [Media Type].

7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If you want to print while checking each sheet, select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From] in the printer driver, and check [Printer Options] - [Print Options] - [Paper input options] - [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [Yes]). To print continuously, uncheck [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] (or select [No]). For details, please refer to "[Printing one sheet at a time manually](#)(P.156)".
- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing on long paper

You can print on long paper using the multi-purpose tray (MP tray).

Set the size of the long paper to the custom size of the MP tray on the control panel, select a custom size (user-defined size) for the size of the long paper in the printer driver, and start printing.

The size of long paper ranges from 210 mm to 216 mm in width and from 356 mm to 1,321 mm in length.

Setting the paper size before loading paper

1 Set the X and Y dimensions, media type, and media weight of long paper to the custom size of the MP tray on the control panel.

Refer to "Setting the paper size before loading paper" of "[Printing on irregular paper \(Custom\)](#)(P.151)" for the detailed procedure.

Printing from a PC

For the Windows PCL printer driver

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [More settings].

4 Select [User Defined Size] from [Size] in the [Setup] tab, and click [OK].



- If the size of the loaded paper is 210.0 x 900.0 mm, 215.0 x 900.0 mm, or 215.0 x 1200.0 mm, you can select the paper size from [Banner *** x *** mm].

Please refer to "[Printing on irregular paper \(Custom\)](#)(P.151)" for how to set an irregular size.

5 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] in [Source].

6 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab, select [PostScript Custom Page Size] from [Paper Size], input values in [Width] and [Height], and click [OK].
To change the size, press [Edit Custom Page Size], input your desired values in [Width] and [Height], and click [OK].
- 5 Click [OK].
- 6 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 7 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Manage Custom Sizes] from [Paper Size].
- 4 Click [+] to add an item to the list of paper size.
- 5 Double-click on [Untitled], and input a name for the long paper size.
- 6 Select a printer from [Non-Printable Area].
- 7 Input values in [Width] and [Height].
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Select a registered paper size from [Paper Size].
- 10 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Setup] - [Paper Source].
- 11 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Manage Custom Sizes] from [Paper Size].
- 4 Click [+] to add an item to the list of paper size.
- 5 Double-click on [Untitled], and input a name for the long paper size.
- 6 Select a printer from [Non-Printable Area].
- 7 Input values in [Width] and [Height].
- 8 Click [OK].

- 9 Select a registered paper size from [Paper Size].
- 10 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From].
- 11 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



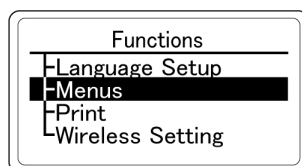
- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing on irregular paper (Custom)

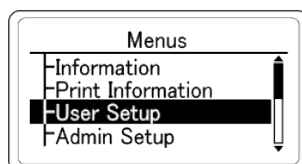
When printing on irregular paper (Custom), set the paper size, media type and media weight of the irregular size (Custom) on the operator panel. Before printing, register the paper size in the printer driver.

Setting the paper size before loading paper

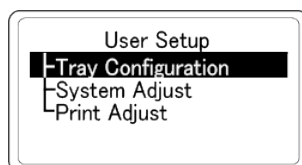
- 1 Check the paper precautions.
 - [Applicable paper](#)(P.74)
 - [Inapplicable paper](#)(P.75)
 - [Paper precautions by type](#)(P.76)
- 2 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.
 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 3 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



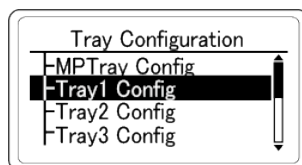
- 4 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».



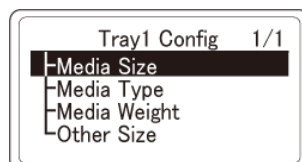
- 5 Check that [Tray Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».



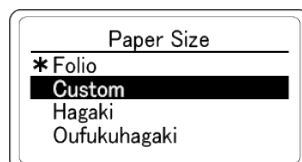
- 6 Press ▼ to select the setting of the tray where the paper is loaded, and then press «OK».



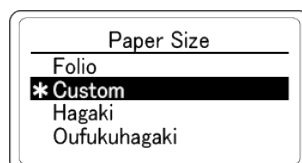
- 7 Check that [Paper Size] is selected, and press «OK».



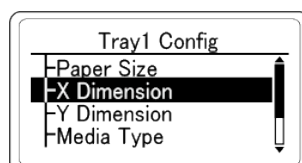
- 8 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select [Custom], and then press «OK».



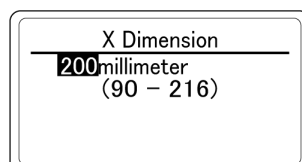
- 9 Check that [*] is displayed to the left of [Custom], and then press «BACK».



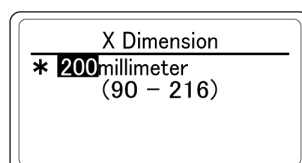
- 10 Press ▼ to select [X Dimension], and press «OK».



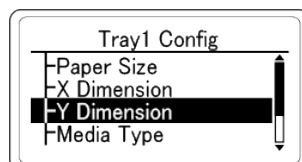
- 11 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the paper width, and then press «OK».



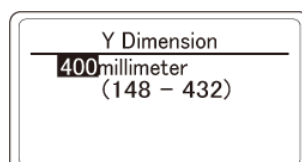
- 12 Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the value, and then press «BACK».



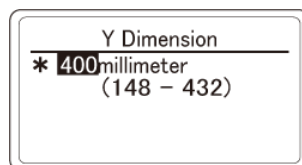
- 13 Press ▼ to select [Y Dimension], and press «OK».



- 14 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the paper length, and then press «OK».



- 15** Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the value, and then press «BACK».



- 16** Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.
- 17** Load paper in the tray to be used. When the setting change screen is displayed, press «BACK».
- [Loading paper in Tray 1 \(for B433\)\(P.79\)](#)
 - [Loading paper in the MP tray\(P.82\)](#)

Printing from a PC

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1** Open the file to be printed.
- 2** Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3** Click [More settings].
- 4** Click [Paper Feed Options] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5** Click [Custom Size].
- 6** Input a name for the new size in [Name].
- 7** Input values in [Width] and [Length].
- 8** Click [Add] to save any paper size in the list, and click [OK].
Up to 32 settings can be saved.
- 9** Click [OK] until the [Printing Preferences] screen is closed.
- 10** Open the file to be printed.
- 11** Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 12** Click [More settings].
- 13** Select the paper size registered in [Size] on the [Setup] tab.
- 14** Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 15** Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1** Open the file to be printed.
- 2** Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3** Click [More settings].
- 4** Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
- 5** Click [Paper Size], and select [PostScript Custom Page Size] from the pull-down menu.
- 6** Click [Edit Custom Page Size].

7 Input values in [Width] and [Height], and click [OK].



- [Offset Relative to Paper Feed Direction] cannot be set.

8 Click [OK].

9 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver



- When using macOS, you cannot print properly, although you can set the paper size beyond the usable range. Set the paper size within the range.
- macOS may regard the custom-sized paper which is close to a fixed size as the fixed-sized paper.

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Page Setup] from the [File] menu.

3 Select [Manage Custom Sizes] from [Paper Size].

4 Click [+] to add an item to the list of paper size.

5 Double-click on [Untitled], and input a name for the paper size.

6 Select a printer from [Non-Printable Area].

7 Input values in [Width] and [Height].

8 Click [OK] until [Page Setup] is closed.

9 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

10 Select a paper size registered in [Paper Size].

11 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver



- When using macOS, you cannot print properly, although you can set the paper size beyond the usable range. Set the paper size within the range.
- macOS may regard the custom-sized paper which is close to a fixed size as the fixed-sized paper.

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Page Setup] from the [File] menu.

3 Select [Manage Custom Sizes] from [Paper Size].

4 Click [+] to add an item to the list of paper size.

5 Double-click on [Untitled], and input a name for the paper size.

6 Select a printer from [Non-Printable Area].

7 Input values in [Width] and [Height].

8 Click [OK] until [Page Setup] is closed.

9 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

10 Select a paper size registered in [Paper Size].

11 Specify the media weight and other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing methods

This section describes various printing methods such as zooming-in/-out and booklet printing.

Printing one sheet at a time manually

You can print one sheet at a time by loading paper in the MP tray.

Each time you print each page, the display shows the message "Manual Printing. Set %MEDIA_SIZE% In MPTray. Press OK Button". To continue printing, press «OK».

To cancel the printing, press «CANCEL».

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [Paper Feed Options].
- 6 Check [Feed paper individually] in [Multi Purpose Tray Settings], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.
- 9 If a message appears on the display, load paper in the MP tray, and then press «OK».
If you are printing a multi-page document, the same message appears each time after one page is printed.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Yes] from [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray] in [Printer Features].
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.
- 10 If a message appears on the display, load paper in the MP tray, and then press «OK».
If you are printing a multi-page document, the same message appears each time after one page is printed.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.

- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Multi Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Setup] - [Paper Source].
- 4 Click [Paper Feed Options].
- 5 Check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray], and click [OK].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].
- 7 If a message appears on the display, load paper in the MP tray, and then press «OK».
If you are printing a multi-page document, the same message appears each time after one page is printed.



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From].
- 4 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options].
- 5 Select [Paper Feed].
- 6 Check [Feeds paper one by one from the MP tray].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].
- 8 If a message appears on the display, load paper in the MP tray, and then press «OK».
If you are printing a multi-page document, the same message appears each time after one page is printed.



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Enlarging/Reducing to fit the specified paper size

You can print on a different paper size without changing the print data.



- This function is not applicable to some applications.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the paper size of the print data in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Check [Resize document to fit printer page] in [Size].
- 6 Select the size of the paper to be printed on.
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Check [Resize document to fit printer page] in the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select the size of the paper to be printed on.
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Enable [Scale to fit paper size] in [Paper Handling].
- 4 Select the size of the paper to be printed on in [Destination Paper Size].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Enable [Scale to fit paper size] in [Paper Handling].
- 4 Select the size of the paper to be printed on in [Destination Paper Size].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing by enlargement/reduction

You can print at the magnification rate you want without changing the print data.



- This function is not available to macOS.
- This function is not applicable to some applications.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Input the scaling rate for [Scale] on the [Job Options] tab.



- When [Print Mode] is set to [PCL], if [Stretch] is checked, different scales can be specified for portrait and landscape.
- Since [Stretch] further enlarges/reduces the state specified in [Scale], [Finishing Mode] (N-UP, Booklet, Poster Print), [Offset] and [Margin Setup], the layout may be distorted. If you select [On] for [Keep page layout when resizing document] in [Advanced], the layout specified in [Finishing Mode] is maintained and the scale is changed.
- To adjust the enlargement/reduction of printing result in the paper feed direction with [Stretch], select [Auto] for [Origin].

5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [More settings].

4 Input the scaling rate for [Scale] of [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.



- If [Stretch] is checked, different rates can be specified for portrait and landscape.
- [Stretch] cannot be used simultaneously with the following settings:
 - [Layout] - [Pages per sheet] is set to 2 or above
 - [Layout] - [Booklet]
 - [Job Options] - [Resize document to fit printer page]
- To adjust the enlargement/reduction of printing result in the paper feed direction with [Stretch], select [Auto] for [Origin].

5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Printing only the cover from another tray

You can choose to feed the first page and the remaining pages from different trays.



- This function is not available to the Windows PS printer driver or the macOS PCL printer driver.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [More settings].

4 Click [Paper Feed Options] in the [Setup] tab.

5 Check [Use different source for first page].

6 Select a tray from [Paper Feed], and click [OK].

Select the paper type from [Type], and the paper weight from [Weight] as necessary.

7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed].
- 4 Select [First Page From], and select the tray to feed the first page.
- 5 Select the tray to feed the remaining pages in [Remaining From].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Booklet printing

- Some applications may not be available.
- This function is not available to macOS.
- Watermarks cannot be printed correctly when [Booklet] is used.
- This function is disabled when private jobs are printed from a client PC that shares the network of the device with the print server.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Booklet] in [Finishing Mode] on the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [Options], and set booklet printing as necessary.
 - [Signature]: Specify the unit of the page to close.
 - [2 pages]: Print two pages on one sheet of paper.
 - [Right to Left]: Print the data to create a right-to-left booklet.
 - [Bind Margin]: Set the margin.
- 6 Click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.



- To create an A5 booklet using A4-sized paper, select [A4] from [Size] in the [Setup] tab.
- If [Booklet] is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver, open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon [OKI *** PCL6] (where *** is your model name), select [Printer Properties] - the [Advanced] tab - [Print processor] - [OKX06BPP] - [RAW], and click [OK].
To open [Devices and Printers], please refer to "[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)".

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Booklet] in [Page Format] on the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Uncheck [Draw Borders] as necessary.
- 6 Click [Advanced].
- 7 Click [Booklet Binding Edge] under [Document Options] to set the binding position.

 - To make a right-edge binding booklet (i.e. a booklet with the binding on the right edge when the first page is facing up), select [On Right Edge].
 - To create an A5-sized booklet using A4 paper, select [A4] from [Paper Size].

8 Click [OK] until the [Printing preferences] screen is closed.

9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.



- If [Page Format] is not displayed in the [Layout] tab, open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon of [OKI*** PS] (where *** is your model name), and select [Printer Properties] - the [Advanced] tab. Check [Enable advanced printing features].
To open [Devices and Printers], please refer to "[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)".

Printing a poster by dividing a document

A single document can be divided or enlarged for printing on multiple pages. Finally, you will create a poster by combining all pages together.



- This function is not available to an IPP network.
- This function is not available to the Windows PS printer driver or macOS.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Poster Print] from [Finishing Mode] of the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [Options].
- 6 Set the values of [Enlarge], [Add Registration Marks] and [Add Overlap] as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.



- To create an A1-sized poster using 4 sheets of A4 paper, select [A4] in the paper size, and select [4] in [Enlarge].
- If this feature is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver, open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon [OKI *** PCL6] (where *** is your model name), select [Printer Properties] - the [Advanced] tab - [Print processor] - [OKX06BPP] - [RAW], and click [OK].

Printing with text watermarks (Watermarks)



- This function is not available to macOS.
- Watermarks cannot be printed correctly in booklet printing.
- If you check [Background] on the [Watermarks] screen of the Windows PS printer driver, the watermark may not be printed depending on the application. In this case, uncheck [Background].

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Watermarks] on the [Extend] tab.



- To print the job information such as a user name for printing or a document name as a watermark, check [Print job information] and set the job information to be printed.

- 5 Click [New].
- 6 Input the text string to be printed as a stamp in [Text] of the [Watermarks] screen.
- 7 Set [Font], [Size], etc. as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Make sure that the watermark to be printed is selected, and click [OK].
- 9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Watermarks] of the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [New].
- 6 Input the text string to be printed as a stamp in [Text] of the [Watermarks] screen.
- 7 Set [Font], [Size], etc. as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Make sure that the watermark to be printed is selected, and click [OK].
- 9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Printing overlaid text or logos (overlay printing)

You can print a document with an overlapping form file (like a logo or format) registered in this machine beforehand. It is called overlay printing.



- This function is not available to macOS.
- It is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver when [Print Mode] is set to [Image].

Registering a form file

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 From the application, create a form which you want to register with this machine.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [PCL] in [Print Mode].
- 6 Select the [Extend] tab.
- 7 Click [Overlays].
- 8 Select [Register print document as a new form].
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
 - 
 - If [PJL Command Security Enhancement] is set to [Mode 1] for this machine, set [Print Data Encryption] to [On] in the printer driver, or set [PJL Command Security Enhancement] to [Off] on this machine. If "Received Data Type Restricted" appears, the form may not be registered.
 -  [Printing with print data encrypted\(P.187\)](#)
- 11 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.
- 12 From [Registration information for printer], input [Form name] and [ID] to register with this machine.
 - 
 - You can also specify the print position of an overlay.
- 13 Select the page onto which you want to apply that overlay in [Print on Pages] as the registration information to the printer driver.
To specify a page to apply to, select "Custom", and input the target page in [Custom Pages].
- 14 Click [OK].

For the Windows PS printer driver

For the detailed procedure, please refer to "[Registering forms \(form overlay\)\(P.258\)](#)".

Printing a form file

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [PCL] in [Print Mode].
- 6 Select the [Extend] tab.
- 7 Click [Overlays].

- 8 Select [Overlay Print], and then select the form file to overlay from the drop-down list.



- Click [Edit list] and add it to the list if you want to add a form file registered with the Configuration Tool or if you want to overlay multiple forms as a group.

If you want to add a form file registered with the Configuration Tool, click [Add a registered form...], input the form name in [Form Name] and the ID of the form registered with the Configuration Tool in [ID], select the page onto which you want to apply that overlay in [Print on Pages], and click [OK].

- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 11 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver



- To perform this procedure, you will have to login to the PC as a user with administrator privileges.

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the PS printer icon, and select [Printing Preferences].
- 3 Click [Overlays] of the [Job Options] tab.
- 4 Select [Use Overlays] from the pull-down menu, and click [New].
- 5 Input the form name registered with the Configuration Tool in [Form Name], and click [Add].
[Registering forms \(form overlay\)](#)(P.258)
- 6 In [Overlay Name], input an overlay name.
- 7 Select the page onto which you want to apply that overlay in [Print on Pages].
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Select the overlay to be used for printing from [Defined Overlays], and click [Add].
- 10 Click [OK].
- 11 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 12 Open the file to be printed.
- 13 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 14 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Outputting to a file without printing on paper

You can export print data to a file and save it without printing on paper.



- To perform this procedure, you will have to login to the PC as a user with administrator privileges.

For Windows

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the icon of your model and select [Printer Properties].

- 3 Select the [Ports] tab.
- 4 Select [FILE:] from the port list, and click [OK].
- 5 Open the file to be printed.
- 6 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 7 Click [Print].
- 8 Input the file name, and click [OK].
Example: C:\temp\printdata.prn

For macOS

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [PDF] on the print screen, and select the file format to be saved as.
- 4 Input a name for the file, select a destination for the file, and then click [Save].

Printing frequently used documents without using a PC

By storing frequently used documents in the machine, you can print them directly from the operator panel without using a PC.



- This function is not available to the macOS PCL printer driver.
- If the print data cannot be stored due to insufficient capacity of the memory, a message is displayed indicating that the file system is full and the printing will not be performed.

Storing documents

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [Shared Print] from [Job Type].
- 6 Click [Job Type Option].
- 7 Input the print data name in [Job Name].
If you check [Input job type option when printing], a prompt asking for the print data name is displayed when the print data is sent to this machine.
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Make other settings as necessary to print.
The print data is sent to this machine, but not printed yet.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [Shared Print] from [Job Type].
- 6 Click [Job Type Option].
- 7 Input the print data name in [Job Name].
If you check [Input job type option when printing], a prompt asking for the print data name is displayed when the print data is sent to this machine.
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Make other settings as necessary to print.
The print data is sent to this machine, but not printed yet.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Secure Print].
- 4 Select [Shared Print] from [Job Type].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].
The print data is sent to this machine, but not printed yet.



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing the saved document

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Print], and then press «OK».
- 3 Press ▼ to select [Shared Print], and then press «OK».
- 4 As a list of shared print data appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the shared print data you want to print, and then press «OK».
 - To print all shared print data, select [Print All] and then press «OK».
 - Select [Delete All] and press «OK» to delete all the shared print data displayed.
- 5 Check that [Print] has been selected, and press «OK».
Select [Delete] and press «OK» to delete the print data.
- 6 Input the number of copies, and press «OK».

Printing an email attachment

This machine can print the file attached to the email you have received. Printable file formats are PDF (v1.7), JPEG (JFIF 1.02), and TIFF (V6 baseline).

To use this function, you will have to configure email reception settings on the POP server or SMTP server.

 [Setting e-mail receiving \(Web page\)](#)(P.215)



- The email body will not be printed.
- For the number of copies, duplex printing or other settings, the current settings of [Admin Setup] will be applied.
- Up to 10 files with a maximum size of 8 MB per file can be printed.

Printing in economy mode

This section describes how to save paper and toner during printing.

Printing on both sides of paper

You can print on both sides of paper.



- Some applications may not be available.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Long Edge] or [Short Edge] from [2-Sided Printing] on the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Flip on Long Edge] or [Flip on Short Edge] from [Print on Both Sides] in the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Long-Edge Binding] or [Short-Edge Binding] from [Printer Options] - [Setup] - [Duplex].
- 4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [On] or [On Short-Edge] in [Two-Sided].

4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing in the toner save mode

Print the data in the toner save mode.

The amount of toner to be saved can be set in 3 levels.

- [Printer Setting]: Follow the machine's settings.
- [Off]: Print at normal density without saving toner.
- [Save Level Low]: Print at a slightly lighter density.
- [Save Level Middle]: Print at a light density.
- [Save Level High]: Print at a considerably light density.



- The density of the image printed using this function may vary with the print data.
- The amount of toner to be saved can also be set from the operator panel of this machine. Set the amount to be saved in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Print Setup] - [Toner Save]. However, the setting of the printer driver takes priority.
- The default setting of the printer driver is [Printer Setting].

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Select the amount of toner to be saved from [Toner Saving].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select the amount of toner to be saved from [Toner Saving].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Job Options].
- 4 Select the amount of toner to be saved from [Toner Saving].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options].
- 4 Select the amount of toner to be saved from [Toner Saving].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

N-in-1 printing

You can print by zooming in on the data of multiple pages to one side of a single sheet of paper.



- This function prints data at a reduced size, so the center of the paper may not be aligned accurately.
- Some applications may not be available.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet in [Finishing Mode] of the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [Options].
- 6 Set [Page Borders], [Page Layout] and [Bind Margin], and then click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Pages per sheet] in the [Page Format] of the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet from the pull-down menu.
- 6 If you do not want to draw a border, uncheck [Draw Borders].

- 7 Click [Advanced], select the order of page layout from [Document Options] - [Pages per sheet layout].
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper in [Layout] - [Pages per Sheet].
- 4 Set [Border] and [Layout Direction].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet of paper in [Layout] - [Pages per Sheet].
- 4 Set [Border] and [Layout Direction].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Refining your finishing

This section describes how to make the print result better when you are printing from your PC.

Printing with the specified print resolution

You can change the print quality as needed.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select the value you want to set from [Quality].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select the value you want to set from [Quality].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Job Options].
- 4 Select the value you want to set from [Print Quality].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options].

- 4 Select the value you want to set from [Print Quality].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing by correcting fine lines

When the printer driver is installed, the fine line correcting function is enabled to prevent fine lines from becoming faint or inconsistent in thickness.

Depending on the specific application, the spacing of bar codes may become narrower. In that case, disable the function.



- This function is not available to the macOS PCL printer driver.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

When this function is enabled, ultra fine lines are slightly thicker.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Adjust ultra fine lines] in [Item], set it to [On] in [Settings], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

When this function is enabled, the thickness of ultra fine lines is consistent in the specified direction.

When this function is disabled, ultra fine lines may be slightly thicker.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Check [Adjust ultra fine lines], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options].
- 4 Check [Adjust ultra fine lines].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing by specifying the font to use

Using printer-specific fonts



- This function is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver when [Print Mode] is set to [Image], nor to a macOS.
- The printer fonts may not be reproduced as the TrueType font design displayed on screen.
- This function is not applicable to some applications.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [PCL] in [Print Mode].
- 6 Select the [Extend] tab.
- 7 Click [Fonts].
- 8 Check [Font Substitution] in [TrueType Font Output Type].
- 9 Specify the printer font to be used instead of the TrueType font in [Font Substitution Table].
- 10 Click [OK].
- 11 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 12 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the [OKI *** PS] icon (where *** is your model name) and select [Printer Properties].
- 3 Double-click on [Font Substitution Table] in the [Device Setup] tab.
- 4 Click the TrueType font, and select the substitution printer font from the list.
- 5 Click [OK].
- 6 Open the file to be printed.
- 7 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 8 Click [More settings].

- 9 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
- 10 Select [Substitute with Device Font] from [Graphic] - [TrueType Font].
- 11 Click [OK].
- 12 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 13 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Using PC fonts

With the TrueType font of the PC, you can print with the same text as the screen display.



- This function is not applicable to macOS.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [PCL] in [Print Mode].
- 6 Select the [Extend] tab.
- 7 Click [Fonts].
- 8 Uncheck [TrueType Font Output Type] - [Font Substitution], select the export format, and click [OK].
 - [Download as Outline Font]
Create a font image on the printer.
 - [Download as Bitmap Font]
Create a font image by using the printer driver.
- 9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Select [Download as Softfont] from [Graphic] - [TrueType Font].
- 6 Click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Useful functions

This section describes useful functions for printing from a PC.

Printing with multiple pages sorted into one complete set (Collate)

You can print the print data of multiple pages and put them into one complete set.



- Some applications may not be available.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Click [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Input the number of copies in [Copies], and check [Collate].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Click [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Input the number of copies in [Copies] of the [Job Options] tab, and check [Collate].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.



- Turn off the Collate function of the application.
If the Collate function of the application is turned on, you will print the data without using the memory of this machine.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Input the number of copies in [Copies].
- 4 Select [Paper Handling], and turn on [Collate pages].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.
- Click [Advanced] in [Print Options], and uncheck [The Printer Collate is always used] to print without using the memory of this machine.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Input the number of copies in [Copies].
- 4 Select [Paper Handling], and turn off [Collate pages].
- 5 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options], and check [Collate].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.
- If [Paper Handling] - [Collate pages] is checked, you will print the data without using the memory of this machine.

Printing from the last page of your document


- This function is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select [Back to Front] from [Page Order] on the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.



- If [Page Order] is not displayed, open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon of [OKI*** PS] (where *** is your model name), and select the [Advanced] tab from [Printer Properties]. Check [Enable advanced printing features]. To open [Devices and Printers], please refer to "[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)".

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Reverse] in [Paper Handling] - [Page Order].
- 4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Reverse] in [Paper Handling] - [Page Order].

4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing by automatically selecting a tray for the specified paper

The tray (the paper tray (Tray 1/2/3/4), or the MP tray) matching the paper size and type that are set in the printer driver will be selected automatically for printing. Trays are selected according to the setting of [Tray Sequence].



- Be sure to set the paper size and paper weight for the paper pay and MP tray on the operator panel.
[Loading paper\(P.74\)](#)

When using the MP tray

By default, the tray usage is set to [When Mismatching] for the MP tray. In this case, the MP tray is not subject to Auto Tray Selection.

To set the MP tray as a target for Auto Tray Selection, use the following settings.

1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».

4 Check that [Tray Configuration] is selected, and press «OK».

5 Check that [MPTray Config] is selected, and then press «OK».

6 Press ▲ to select [Tray Usage], and then press «OK».

7 Press ▲ to select [Normal Tray], and then press «OK».

8 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [More settings].

4 Select [Auto] from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.

5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [More settings].

- 4 Select [Automatically Select] from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Auto] from [Printer Options] - [Setup] - [Paper Source].
- 4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Auto Select] from [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From].
- 4 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Switching tray automatically at running out of paper

When the paper loaded in the trays (i.e. the paper tray (Tray1/2/3/4) or the MP Tray) is of the same size, weight and type, you can set the machine to continue the printing from another tray when the feeding tray is empty.

First, select Auto Tray Switch from the operator panel. Then, select Auto Tray Switch in the printer driver.



- Configure the same paper settings of the tray to be used for both the machine and the printer driver.
[Loading paper\(P.74\)](#)

When using the MP tray

By default, the tray usage is set to [When Mismatching] for the MP tray. In this case, the MP tray is not subject to Auto Tray Switch.

To set the MP tray as a target for Auto Tray Selection, use the following settings.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Menus], and press «OK».
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».

- 4 Check that [Tray Configuration] is selected, and then press «OK».
 - 5 Check that [MPTray Config] is selected, and then press «OK».
 - 6 Press ▲ to select [Tray Usage], and then press «OK».
 - 7 Press ▲ to select [Normal Tray], and then press «OK».
- 
- Trays are switched according to the setting of [Tray Sequence].
- 8 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the tray to feed paper from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [Paper Feed Options], check [Auto] in [Paper feed options], and click [OK].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the tray to feed paper from [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced], and select [Yes] from [Printer Features] - [Tray Switch].
- 6 Click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Setup].
- 4 Select the tray to be printed from [Paper Source].
- 5 Click [Paper Feed Options], and check [Auto tray switch].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [All Pages Form] in [Printer Options] - [Paper Feed], and select the tray to be printed from.
- 4 Select [Paper Feed] in [Printer Options] - [Print Options].
- 5 Check [Auto tray switch].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Changing the default settings of the printer driver

You can set those frequently used functions as the default settings of the printer driver.

For Windows

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
 [How to open \[Devices and Printers\]\(P.141\)](#)
- 2 Right-click on the icon of your model, and then select [Printing Preferences].

 - Please select the type of the printer driver that you want to use.
- 3 Configure the print settings to be used as the default settings of the printer driver.
- 4 Click [OK].

For macOS

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Configure the print settings to be used as the default settings of the printer driver.
- 4 Select [Save Current Settings as Preset] from [Presets].
- 5 Input a name for the setting, and click [OK].



- To use the saved setting, select the set name from [Presets] in the print screen.

Printing with frequently used settings registered in the printer driver



- This function is not available to the Windows PS printer driver.

Registering frequently used settings

You can save the settings you configured in the printer driver.

For the Windows PCL printer driver



- Up to 14 settings can be saved.

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the icon of your model, and then select [Printing Preferences].
- 3 Set the print options you want to save.
- 4 In the [Setup] tab, click [Save] in the [Driver Setting].
- 5 Specify a name for the setting to save, and click [OK].
- 6 Click [OK] to close the [Printing Preferences] screen.

For macOS



- You can change the default settings on the [Page Setup] screen.
- The operation cannot be guaranteed with settings saved by other printer drivers. Save the setting with a name that identifies the model name.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Set the print options you want to save.
- 4 Select [Save Current Settings as Preset...] from [Presets].
- 5 Input a preset name, and click [OK].

Printing with registered settings

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the setting name to be used from [Driver Setting] in the [Setup] tab.
- 5 Click [OK].
- 6 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For macOS

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the setting to be used from [Presets].
- 4 Click [Print].



- When [Edit Preset List] is selected from [Presets] and [Reset Preset Menu to "Default Settings" after Printing], the preset you set will always be applied.

Printing data from a USB memory

You can connect a USB memory to this machine, and print the data saved on it.



- We do not guarantee the use of all USB memory products (The USB memory with security function is not supported).
- Not compatible with USB 3.0.
- Not compatible with the USB Hub or external USB-HDD.
- Not compatible with encrypted PDF.



- Compatible with FAT12, FAT16 and FAT32.
- The compatible file formats are PDF (v1.7), JPEG (JFIF 1.02), TIFF (v6 baseline), and PRN (PS, PCL).
- Create data in ASCII form.
- Compatible with a maximum of 32GB USB memory.
- Among all the files saved in the USB memory with the compatible file format, a maximum of 100 files are displayed in the file list.
 - The file list will not be displayed correctly if more than 100 files are stored on the USB memory.
 - Files may not be read correctly from the USB memory with a directory structure of 20 or more layers.
 - Files with a path length of over 240 characters may not be read correctly.
- Only one file in the USB memory can be printed at a time.

- 1 Insert the USB memory into the USB host of this machine.
- 2 Check that [Select Print File] appears on the display, press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to select the file to be printed, and press «OK».
- 3 To set the number of printing sheets and other items, press ▼ to select [Printing Preferences] and press «OK».

Once completing the settings, press «BACK» to return to the screen of the file you want to print.
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Print], and press «OK».

The screen returns to the file list screen once the printing is completed. To continue printing, select the file from [Select File] and repeat Steps 3 and 4.

To complete the printing, press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.
- 5 Remove the USB memory.

Canceling the printing

To cancel the printing from the USB memory, press «CANCEL» on the operator panel.

Please refer to "[Canceling the printing](#)(P.193)" for details.



- The pages ready for printing in this machine will be printed as they are.

Printing data stored in this machine

The print data can be stored in the memory of this machine. Because the work on the PC completes more quickly, the PC can perform other tasks while this machine is operating in the background.



- This function is not available to macOS.
- If the print data cannot be stored due to insufficient capacity of the memory, a message is displayed indicating that

the file system is full and the printing will not be performed.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Job Spool], select [On] for [Settings], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Others].
- 6 Check [Job Spool], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Printing PS errors

You can print the error content when a PostScript error occurs.



- This function is not available to the Windows PCL printer driver or macOS.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
- 5 Click [PostScript Options] - [Send PostScript Error Handler], and select [Yes] from the drop-down list.
- 6 Click [OK] until the print setup screen is closed.
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Maximizing the printable area

You can maximize the printable area by reducing the top, bottom, left and right margins to 2.0 mm for the paper to print.



- This function is not available to the Windows PS printer driver or macOS.
- Print quality is not guaranteed for the area of up to 4.23 mm from the paper edge.

If the printout is not complete, you may take the following actions to improve such situations.

- Select [On] for [Advanced] - [Offset] of the [Job Options] tab in the printer driver, and click [Options] to correct the print position.
- Select [Scale] - [Independent Scale] of the [Job Options] tab in the printer driver before printing.
- Correct the print position on the operator panel. Refer to "[Correcting the print position of the tray](#)(P.186)" for details.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Margin Setup] in [Item], and set it to [Min] in [Settings].
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Editing margins

You can expand the margins to 30.0 mm/1.18 inches on the top, bottom, left and right for the paper to be printed, and thus change the printable area.



- This function is not available to the Windows PS printer driver or macOS.

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Margin Setup] in [Item], set it to [Edit individually] in [Settings], and click [Options].
- 7 Input margin values for [Top], [Bottom], [Left] and [Right], and click [OK].
- 8 Click [OK].

9 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

10 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Correcting the print position of the tray

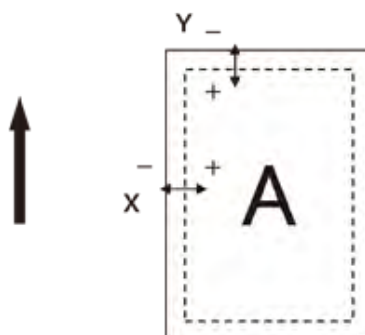
You can correct the start position vertically and horizontally on the paper for each tray. Set the correction volume in increments of 0.1 mm on the operator panel.

[X Adjust] and [Y Adjust] correct the simplex printing and the back side (the printing side fed from the tray) of duplex printing.

[Duplex X Adjust] and [Duplex Y Adjust] correct the face side (the printing side fed from the duplex unit) of duplex printing.



- The thick arrows in the figure indicate the paper feed direction.
- X indicates the vertical direction of paper travel, and Y indicates the horizontal direction of paper travel.
- Click [+] in the X direction to expand the margin vertically, and click [+] in the Y direction to expand the margin horizontally.
- Readjustment might be necessary depending on the usage conditions (e.g., temperature, humidity, paper type).
- This function corrects the position, but it does not improve the writing start position (± 2 mm).
- When you are printing from an expansion tray unit and the start position shifts significantly, please reinstall the expansion tray unit.



1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Menus], and press «OK».

3 Press ▼ several times to select [User Setup], and press «OK».

4 Press ▼ several times to select [Print Adjust], and then press «OK».

5 Check that [Print Position Adjust] is selected, and then press «OK».

6 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the tray to correct, and then press «OK».

7 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the item to correct.

8 Press «OK».

9 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the correction volume, and press «OK». Check that [*] is displayed to the left of the selected setting.

10 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Printing with security enhanced

Printing with print data encrypted

In order to protect its content against being read by a third party or printed to other machines before the print data reaches this machine, the print data is encrypted with the printer key of the destination machine.

Unauthorized access to confidential information can be prevented.



- The printer key of the destination machine is automatically obtained when the printer is installed or just before printing (for Windows only).
- If the printer key is not obtained automatically, follow the warning screen in the printer driver to obtain the printer key or input it manually.
- If it is encrypted with the printer key of any other machines than the destination machine, the print data will not be printed with "Failed to decrypt incoming data" displayed on the operator panel of the machine. In this case, follow ["Updating the printer key for encrypting print jobs\(P.189\)"](#) to update the printer key of the destination machine and print it again.
- With the following functions, the print data is sent to a different printer from the destination machine, so the print data cannot be encrypted before printing.
 - Auto Forwarding and Broadcast Printing of the OKI LPR utility
 - Printer Pooling for Windows

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Select [Encrypt print jobs] in [Item], and set it to [On] in [Settings].
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Click [Advanced].
- 6 Check [Encrypt print jobs], and click [OK].
- 7 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS printer driver



- If you attempt to print without saving the printer key in the printer driver and without opening the print settings screen, the printing cannot be done with [Failed to decrypt incoming data] displayed on the operator panel of this machine. In this case, retrieve the printer key as follows and print it again.

To retrieve by adding the printer again

Delete the printer in [System Settings] - [Printers & Scanners], check the connection with the printer, and add the printer again.

To input the printer key manually

Input the printer key by following the steps in [Procedure for manually setting the printer key] displayed in the [Printer Options] - [Print Job Encryption] screen.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Job Encryption].
- 4 Check [Encrypt print jobs].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

For the Linux/ChromeOS printer driver (PPD file)

For connection to this machine, select IPPS (Internet Printing Protocol Secure) before printing.

IPPS is a protocol for providing secure printing services to networked printers, and it uses TLS to encrypt communications and ensure the safety of print data and control information.

If IPPS is not selected or IPPS is not available, do not print personal or confidential documents as the security cannot be ensured.

For the Linux printer driver (PPD file)

- 1 Open "http://localhost:631" in your web browser.
- 2 Click [Add Printer] on the [Administration] tab.
- 3 Select [Other Network Printers] - [Internet Printing Protocol (IPPS)].
- 4 Input "https://this machine's IP address/ipp" in [Connection], and then click [Continue].
- 5 Input an arbitrary printer name in [Name], and then click [Continue].
- 6 Click [Browse], and specify the destination of the PPD file.
- 7 Click [Add Printer].

For the ChromeOS printer driver (PPD file)

- 1 Open the Settings menu from the menu bar at the lower right corner of the screen.
- 2 Select [Device] - [Print] - [Other available printers] - [Add printer manually] from the left menu.
- 3 Input the following:
 - Name: Input an arbitrary printer name
 - Address: Input the IP address of this machine
 - Protocol: Select [Internet Printing Protocol (IPPS)] or [Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)]

from the list

- 4 Click [Add].
- 5 If it a PPD file is required, input the following:
 - Manufacturer: Select [Oki] from the list
 - Model: Select a PPD file from the list
- 6 Click [Add].

Updating the printer key for encrypting print jobs

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]\(P.141\)](#)
- 2 Right-click on the icon of [OKI *** PCL] (where *** is your model name), and then select [Printing Preferences].
- 3 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 4 Click [Advanced].
- 5 Click [Encrypt print jobs] in [Item], and click [Options].
- 6 Click [Retrieve from printer] or [Manual input], and then follow the on-screen instructions to update the printer key.
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Click [OK] to close the [Printing Preferences] screen.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]\(P.141\)](#)
- 2 Right-click on the icon of [OKI *** PS] (where *** is your model name), and then select [Printing Preferences].
- 3 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 4 Click [Advanced].
- 5 Click [Encrypt print jobs] - [Options].
- 6 Click [Retrieve from printer] or [Manual input], and then follow the on-screen instructions to update the printer key.
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Click [OK].
- 9 Click [OK] to close the [Printing Preferences] screen.

For the macOS printer driver

To manually update the printer key, follow the procedure below.



- To retrieve the printer key automatically from the printer, delete the printer in [System Preferences] - [Printers & Scanners], check the connection with the printer, and add the printer again.

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Job Encryption].
- 4 Follow the on-screen instructions to input the printer key in [The printer key for encrypting the print job].
- 5 Click [OK].

Printing with print data encrypted and password set (Private Print)

When printing private jobs, to prevent others from seeing the printing results of personal and confidential documents, the print data is encrypted and saved with a password in the machine's memory, and it is authenticated and printed from the operator panel.

Because the print data is sent encryptedly, unauthorized access to confidential information can be prevented.



- This function is not available to the macOS PCL printer driver.
- If the print data cannot be stored due to insufficient capacity of the memory, a message is displayed indicating that the file system is full and the printing will not be performed.
- When this machine is shared over a network via a print server, this function cannot be used in conjunction with the poster or booklet printing in the Windows PCL printer driver.
- To use this function, uncheck [Job Spool].

 [Printing data stored in this machine\(P.183\)](#)

Setting encryption/password on your PC and sending it to this machine

For the Windows PCL printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
 - 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
 - 3 Click [More settings].
 - 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
 - 5 Select [Job Type] - [Private Print].
 - 6 Input any password in [Password] of [Job Type Option].
 - 7 Click [OK].
 - 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
 - 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.
- Only the print data with a password set for encryption is sent to this machine, but without printing.

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Select the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select [Job Type] - [Private Print].
- 6 Input the password in [Password] of [Job Type Option].
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Only the print data with a password set for encryption is sent to this machine, but without printing.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Secure Print].
- 4 Select [Job Type] - [Private Print].
- 5 Input the password in [Job Password].
- 6 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].

Only the print data with a password set for encryption is sent to this machine, but without printing.



- If there is no detail settings displayed in the [Print] screen, click [Show Details] at the bottom of the screen.

Printing a document with encryption/password set from this machine

You can print the encrypted print data with a password saved in the machine's memory.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Print], and then press «OK».
- 3 Press ▼ to select [Private Print], and then press «OK».
- 4 When the user list appears, select the user name of your PC and then press «OK».
- 5 Input the password set on the PC, and press «OK».
- 6 When a list of private jobs appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the data to print and then press «OK».
- 7 Check that [Execute] is selected, and then press «OK».
 Select [Delete] and then press «OK» to delete the specified print data.



- The print data saved in the memory is automatically deleted when the print data has been printed or has not been printed after the specified retention period. The factory default setting is 2 hours.
To change the retention period, select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Private Print Setup] - [Keep job for].
- If an error occurs sending data or it is detected that the print data has changed since it was sent from the PC, the print data will be deleted automatically.



- When [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Security Setup] - [Access Control] is set to [Enable] on this machine, if [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Private Print Setup] - [Verify job password] is set to [Off], you can skip inputting the password.
- You can skip inputting the password by unchecking the following items in the printer driver.
For the Windows PCL printer driver: [Verify Password for Private Print] of the [Device Options] tab
For the Windows PS printer driver: [Verify Password for Private Print] of the [Device Setup] tab
For macOS: [Verify Password for Private Print] of the [Options] tab of [Options and Supplies] after this machine is selected from [System Preferences] - [Printers & Scanners] in the Apple menu
- You cannot print private jobs in the following case if you skip inputting the password.
When [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Security Setup] - [Access Control] is set to [Disable] on this machine
When [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Security Setup] - [Access Control] is set to [Enable] on this machine and [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Private Print Setup] - [Verify job password] is set to [On]

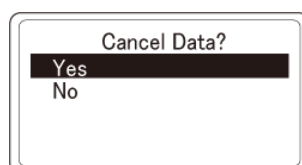
Canceling the printing

To cancel the data being printed or ready to print, press «CANCEL» on the operator panel for a short time (2 seconds or less).



- You can change how long the button is pressed from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Job Cancel Setup] - [Cancel Button Behavior] of the menu items.

If you press «CANCEL», the following screen will be displayed.



To cancel the printing, select [Yes] and press «OK».

To continue the printing, select [No] and press «OK».

If no operation is done within 3 minutes while this screen is displayed, the screen display will disappear and printing will continue.

Canceling the printing from the PC

Cancel the printing from your PC if you accidentally send a large amount of data from your PC to the printer.

For Windows

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the printer's icon, and select [See what's printing].
- 3 Select the name of the file under printing that you want to cancel.
- 4 Press the «Delete» key on the keyboard.
- 5 Check the operator panel of this machine.
If "Processing" or "Data Present" is displayed, cancel the printing from this machine's operator panel.

For macOS

- 1 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 2 Click [Printers & Scanners].
- 3 Click the icon of the printer.
- 4 Click [Open the Print Queue].
- 5 Select the name of the file under printing that you want to cancel.
- 6 Click [x].
- 7 Check the operator panel of this machine.
If "Processing" or "Data Present" is displayed, cancel the printing from this machine's operator panel.

6

Management of this machine

Administrator Password	195
Changing settings of Admin Setup.....	199
Managing the machine from the web page	200
User restriction (Access control)	226
Initializing the settings	235
Moving/Transporting this machine	237
Disposal.....	241

Administrator Password

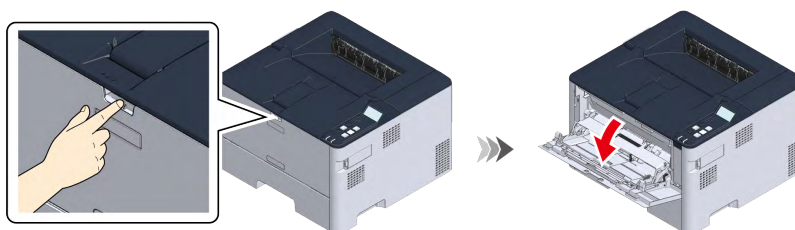
The administrator password is used to change the settings of the machine.

We recommend that you change the administrator password to protect your personal information.

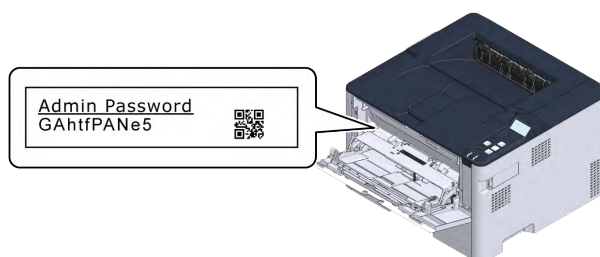
Checking the factory default admin password

The factory default admin password can be found on the password label attached on the inside of the machine.

- 1 Place your finger in the front recess, and pull to open the MP tray towards you.



- 2 Check the password label attached on the inside of this machine.



Inputting the factory default admin password

This section explains the procedure assuming that the factory default admin password is "GAhtfPANE5".

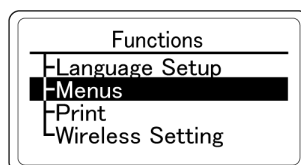
[Checking the factory default admin password\(P.195\)](#)

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

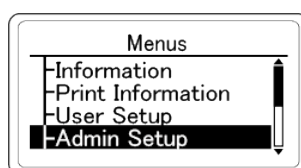


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».



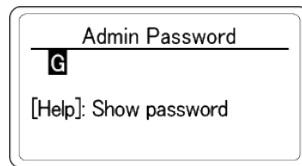
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».



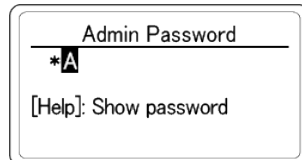
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ several times until "G" is displayed, and then press «OK».
The entered digit is displayed in "*" and the cursor moves to the next position.



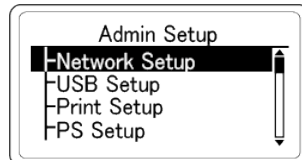
- When you press the «HELP» button, "*" will change to the text you entered.



- 5 Press ▲ or ▼ several times until "A" is displayed, and then press «OK».



- 6 Input the remaining characters by the same procedure.
7 Press «OK» again to complete inputting the admin password and display [Admin Setup].



Changing the admin password



- The password policy may differ from region to region.

The admin password consists of either 10 to 32 characters or 1 to 32 characters depending on the password policy.

The factory default setting of the password policy is as follows. [Password Policy] can be changed in [Admin Setup].

[Minimum Length]: 10 characters or 1 character

[Contain upper-case letters]: [On] or [Off]

[Contain lower-case letters]: [On] or [Off]

[Contain symbols]: [Off]

[Contain digits]: [Off]

The following characters can be used for the admin password.

- Upper-case letters
- Lower-case letters
- Digits
- Symbols: [Space] ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~



- Be sure to write down the password you set just in case you forget.
- If you forget the changed password, you cannot change [Admin Setup] or [Boot Menu].

- To reset the admin password, the charged service by maintenance staff may be necessary.

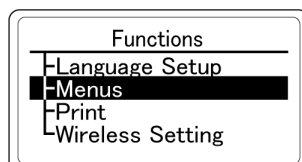
This section explains the procedure to change the password assuming that the factory default admin password is "GAhtfPANe5".

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

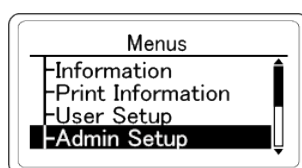


- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

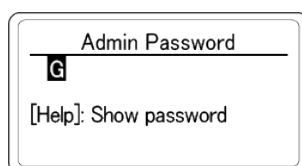


- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

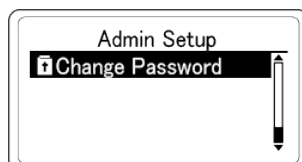


- 4 Input the factory default admin password.

[Inputting the factory default admin password\(P.195\)](#)

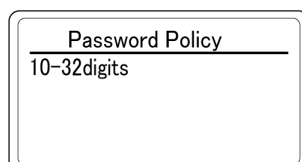


- 5 Press ▲ to select [Change Password], and then press «OK».



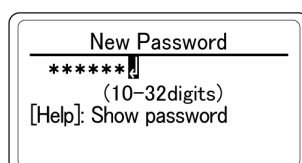
- 6 When "Please be careful not to forget the new admin password. It will be required for changing settings. Press «OK»." is displayed, press «OK».

- 7 When [Password Policy] is displayed, press «OK».

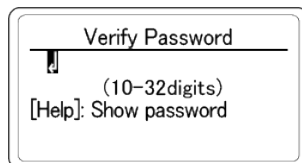


- 8 Enter a new password and press «OK».

[Inputting text\(P.93\)](#)



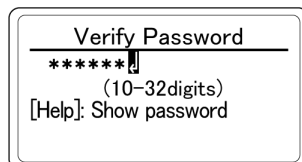
- 9 Press «OK» again to display the [Verify Password] screen.



Verify Password

⌨ (10–32digits)
[Help]: Show password

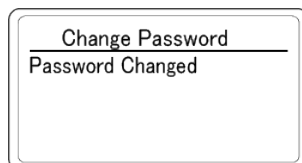
- 10 Input the password again, and press «OK».



Verify Password

*****⌨ (10–32digits)
[Help]: Show password

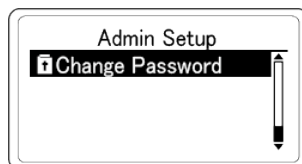
- 11 "Password Changed" is displayed.



Change Password

Password Changed

- 12 The screen will return to [Admin Setup] in 3 seconds.



Admin Setup

Change Password ⌨

Changing settings of Admin Setup

This section explains the procedure of changing settings of this machine as an administrator.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».
[Administrator Password](#)(P.195)
- 5 Press ▲ or ▼ to select the menu for which you want to change the settings, and then press «OK».
- 6 Press ▲ or ▼ to change the settings.
- 7 Press «OK».
- 8 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Managing the machine from the web page

You can manage the machine by accessing the web page of the machine from a web browser on your PC or mobile device. What you can do with the web page is as follows.

- Displaying the state of this machine
- Setting up the tray, network, default settings of each function, and this machine
- Displaying the print data list
- Printing PDF files without using the printer driver
- Links to frequently used web pages



- To change settings of this machine from the web page, it is necessary to log in as an administrator.

Opening the web page



- Please enable Cookies and JavaScript in the security setup of your web browser.

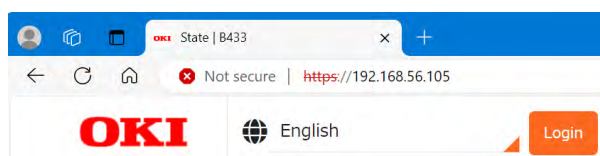
This section takes the following environment for example.

- Name of this machine: B433
- IP address of this machine: 192.168.0.2

- 1 Start the web browser.
- 2 Input the URL "https://(this machine's IP address)" in the address bar, and then press the «Enter» key.

The IP address of this machine is available on the printed menu map.

 [Printing the menu map \(configuration\)\(P.89\)](#)



- If the IP address includes values of 1 or 2 digits, do not add "0" before such values. Otherwise, communication may fail.
 - Correct: https://***.168.0.2/
 - Wrong: https://***.168.000.002/
 *** refers to any digits.
- By default, when you are opening the printer's web page, use HTTPS instead of HTTP.
- By default, when you are opening the printer's web page, a warning that it may not be a legitimate server will be displayed in your web browser. Set up the certificate appropriately, or temporarily ignore the warning.
- If you cannot access the machine via HTTPS due to an expired certificate or a corrupted certificate, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel, access the web page via HTTP, and reset the HTTPS settings.
- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If the web browser you are using only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, use a web browser that supports TLS 1.2 or higher, or after understanding the security risks, set [HTTPS Redirection (Web)] to [Disable] from the operator panel and access the web page via HTTP.

Logging in as an administrator

To change settings of this machine from the web page, it is necessary to log in as an administrator.

- 1 Click [Login].



- 2 Input "admin" in [User Name] and the admin password of this machine in [Password], and then click [Sign In].

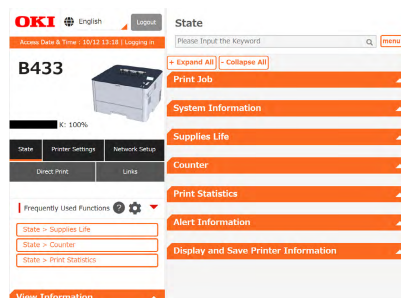
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



- When access control is enabled, you can log in as a local user with administrator privileges (with .AdminRole assigned).

 A screenshot of a web security dialog box titled 'Sign in to access this site'. It states 'Authorisation required by https://192.168.56.105'. There are two input fields: 'Username' and 'Password', both of which are highlighted with a red rectangular box. Below the fields are 'Sign in' and 'Cancel' buttons, with 'Sign in' also highlighted by a red box.

- 3 The following screen is displayed.



Changing the admin password (Web page)

You can change the admin password of this machine from the web page.

The admin password specified on the web page is used to log into this machine or to change settings from the operator panel or web page.

The machine comes with the setting function of password policy.



- The password policy may differ from region to region.

The factory default setting is a minimum length of 10 characters containing at least one upper-case letter and one lower-case letter, or a minimum length of 1 character.

Please set a string as the administrator password in accordance with the password policy.

The following characters can be used for the admin password.

- Upper-case letters
- Lower-case letters
- Digits
- Symbols: [Space] ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~



- Be sure to write down the password you set just in case you forget.
- If you forget the admin password, you cannot change [Admin Setup] or [Boot Menu].
- To reset the admin password, the charged service by maintenance staff may be necessary.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Printer Settings].

4 Click [Menu] on the upper right corner, and then select [Management] - [Admin Password].

5 Input a new password in [New Admin Password].

6 Input the new password again in [New Admin Password(Verify)].

The password you input is not displayed. Write down your password and keep it in a safe place.

7 Click [Apply].



- It is not necessary to restart the machine. The next time you log in as an administrator, use the new password.

Checking/Changing the state of this machine



- Please enable Cookies and JavaScript in the security setup of your web browser.
- To change settings of this machine from the web page, it is necessary to log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- About network setup
 -  [Connecting via a wired LAN](#)(P.37)
 -  [Connection form via a wireless LAN](#)(P.45)
 -  [Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)](#)(P.46)
 -  [Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)](#)(P.58)

This section takes the following environment for example.

- Name of this machine: B433
- IP address of this machine: 192.168.0.2

Checking the state of this machine

1 Open the web page of this machine.

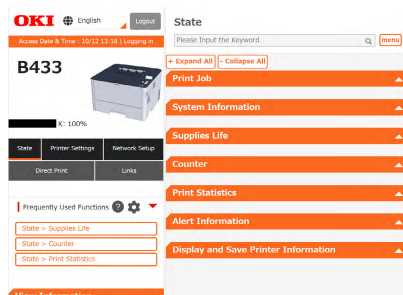
 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 The following screen is displayed.

You can check the print job, system information, supplies life, counter, print statistics and alert information of this machine.



Changing settings of this machine

You can change settings of this machine from the web page.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator\(P.201\)](#)

3 Change the settings, and click [Apply].

You can change settings of this machine from the following tabs.

- Printer Settings
- Network Setup
- Links

Saving configurations

The settings of this machine and the usage of consumables and maintenance parts can be saved as a CSV file.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)

2 Click [Menu] on the upper right corner, and then select [Display and Save Printer Information] - [Export MenuMap].

3 Click [Export], and save it with a name.

Communication encryption (SSL/TLS)

You can encrypt the communication between your PC or mobile device and this machine. The communication is encrypted with SSL/TLS in the following cases.

A certificate is pre-installed on this machine to enable the communication using HTTPS.

Registering a certificate

You can use a certificate when sending data to this machine connected to a network.

The following two types of certificates can be registered.

- Self-signed certificate
This certificate is issued by this machine.
- Certificate issued by certificate authority
This certificate is signed and issued by an external certificate authority for CSR (Certificate Signing Request) created by this machine.



- Before registering a certificate, be sure to delete the certificate already registered in this machine.
- If an IP address is set in [Common Name] of the certificate, the certificate will be invalidated when the machine's IP address is changed after the certificate is registered. Please register the certificate again.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Network Setup].

4 Click [Menu] on the upper right corner, select [Security] - [Communication Encryption (SSL/TLS Server Certificate)], and click [Delete Certificate].

5 Select [Delete] to delete the certificate that is already registered.



- If the certificate has been deleted, proceed to Step 6.

6 Select the certificate to be registered in [How to prepare the server certificate to be used].

- For a self-signed certificate
Select [Create a self-signed certificate], input the required items according to the on-screen instructions, and click [Create & Import].
- To obtain a certificate issued by a certificate authority
Select [Obtain a certificate issued by a certificate authority], input the required items according to the on-screen instructions, and click [Create & Download] to create a CSR, export it and send the CSR to the certificate authority, obtain a certificate from the certificate authority, and install it.
- For a certificate issued by an external certificate authority
Select [Import the certificate and private key you already have], input the required items according to the on-screen instructions, and click [Import].



- You can import a certificate in PKCS#12 format.

7 Select [Enable] for the protocol you want to apply the encryption to.

8 Click [Apply].

Exporting a certificate

Depending on the SSL/TLS communication function, your PC or mobile device may require to trust the machine's certificate.

To trust the machine's certificate, export the machine's certificate and import it into the trusted certificate store of the PC or mobile device.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Security] - [Communication Encryption (SSL/TLS Server Certificate)].
- 5 Select [Export Certificate] to export the certificate.



- The certificate is exported in the PEM format.

Disabling HTTP

If HTTPS is enabled, you can disable it for better security.

If HTTP is disabled, the following limitations apply.

- WSDPrint (Web Service Device Print) will not be available.
- Since [Role management] of the Configuration Tool is not available, restrict access to this machine from the web page.
- The web page of this machine cannot be opened with [Web Setting] of Network Extension and OKI LPR utility. To open the web page of this machine, input "https://<this machine's IP address>" directly from the web browser.
- For macOS, to add this machine by selecting [IP] in [Add Printer] with the protocol [IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)], specify "this machine's IP address + port number (443)" in [Address]. (Example: 192.168.1.1:443) Printing is not possible if only the IP address is specified.
Also, if "this machine's IP address + port number (443)" is specified but the device information cannot be obtained when a printer is added, set the device information on the [Options] tab.
- If you changed [Search Protocol] on the device search screen of Mobile Print (Android) to [WSD], you will not be able to search for devices. Search by setting it to [SNMP].
Also, if you changed [Print Protocol] on the device search screen to [IPP], you will not be able to print. Set it to [RAW] before printing.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Protocol] - [Protocol ON/OFF] - [HTTP].
- 5 Select [Disable], and then click [Apply].



- If you are trying to disable HTTP when HTTPS is disabled, [HTTP and HTTPS/IPPS cannot be disabled at the same time] will be displayed. Please enable HTTPS and try again.
If the server certificate is deleted, HTTPS will be automatically disabled. To avoid disabling HTTP and HTTPS at the same time, the certificate cannot be deleted while HTTP is disabled. If you are trying to delete the certificate, [The

certificate cannot be deleted while HTTP is disabled.] will be displayed.

Using IPP

Add this machine as an IPP printer in a PC.

For Windows

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers], and select [Add Printer].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]\(P.141\)](#)
- 2 In the [Add Printer] wizard, select [The printer that I want isn't listed].
- 3 Select [Select a shared printer by name].
- 4 Input "https://(IP address of this machine)/ipp" or "https://(IP address of this machine)/ipp/lp", and click [Next].
- 5 Click [Have Disk].
- 6 Prepare the driver software.
 Double-click on the driver software file downloaded from our website to unzip it, or insert the included DVD into the PC.
- 7 Input the following values in [Copy manufacturer's files from], and click [Browse].
 To install the PCL printer driver: "D:¥Drivers¥_PCL"
 To install the PS printer driver: "D:¥Drivers¥_PS"

 - The above values are examples when the included DVD is used and the DVD drive is set to the D drive.
 - When using driver software downloaded from our website, specify the folder unzipped in Step 6.
- 8 Select an INF file, and click [Open].
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Select a template, and click [OK].
- 11 Click [Next].
- 12 Click [Completed].
- 13 When the installation has completed, print a test page.

For macOS

- 1 Install the printer driver by opening the driver software file downloaded from our website, or inserting the included DVD into the PC.
[Installing software on your PC\(P.63\)](#)
- 2 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 3 Click [Printers & Scanners].
- 4 Click [Add Printer, Scanner or Fax].
- 5 Click the [IP] tab.
- 6 Select [IPP (Internet Printing Protocol)] in [Protocol].
- 7 Input the IP address of this machine in [Address].

- 8 Input "ipp" in [Cue].
- 9 Click [Add].
- 10 Click [Continue].
- 11 Check if this machine has been registered in [Printers & Scanners].

Communication encryption (IPSec)

You can encrypt the communication between your PC or mobile device and this machine.

Encrypt the communication with IPSec. When IPSec is enabled, all applications are encrypted using IPSec. You can specify 50 hosts per IP address. Any access to this machine from an unregistered host will be denied. Any attempt to access an unregistered host will be invalidated.

Set up your PC or mobile device after setting up this machine in advance.



- You need to prepare a pre-shared key beforehand.



- When IPSec is enabled, any communication with the host not specified in this step will be denied.
- IPSec communication is done when IPSec is set for this machine and the host. If IPSec is not set on the host, IPSec communication will not be done.
- Be sure to make a note of the values you specify in this step. They will be required to configure IPSec settings on a PC or mobile device.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

- 2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

- 3 Select [Network Setup].

- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, select [Security] - [IPSec], and then select [Enable] on the displayed screen.

- 5 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.



- For the "Phase 2 Proposal" setting, [AH] or [ESP] must be enabled.
- [AH] and [ESP] cannot be used simultaneously.

- 6 Click [Apply].



- If IPSec cannot be set up due to the inconsistency of specified parameters, the web page cannot be accessed. In this case, disable IPSec or initialize network settings from the operator panel of this machine.

- 7 Set IPSec on your PC or mobile device. For the setting method, please consult your network administrator.

Using the access control function (IP filter) with the IP address

You can use the IP Address to control the access to this machine. You can set whether or not to authorize setup or printing from the specified IP address. IP filtering is disabled by default.



- Be sure to specify the correct IP address. If you specify an incorrect IP address, you will not be able to access the machine using the IP protocol.
- When IP filtering is enabled, any access to the host not specified in this setting will be denied.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Network Setup].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, select [Security] - [IP Filtering], and then select [Enable] on the displayed screen.

5 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.



- If nothing is registered in [Administrator's IP Address setting], access to this machine may be disabled depending on the specified IP address range.
- If you are using a proxy server, [Your Current Local Host/Proxy IP Address] may not match the IP address of the current host.

6 Click [Apply].



- IP filtering is applicable only to IPv4.

Using the access control function with the MAC address

You can use the MAC Address to control the access to this machine. You can allow or deny the access from the specified MAC Address.



- Be sure to specify the correct MAC address. If you specify an incorrect MAC address, you will not be able to access the machine using the network.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Network Setup].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, select [Security] - [MAC Address Filtering], and then select [Enable] on the displayed screen.

5 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.



- If nothing is registered in [Administrator's MAC Address setting], access to this machine may be disabled depending on the specified MAC address range.
- If you are using a proxy server, [Your Current Local Host/Proxy MAC Address] may not match the MAC address of the current host.

6 Click [Apply].



- You cannot specify the access control individually for each address.

Notifying errors via e-mail

Errors of consumables or maintenance parts are notified via e-mail. You can also set the timing of notification.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Printer management] - [Email Alert].
- 5 Select [Enable] on the displayed screen.
- 6 Set the mail address allocated to this machine in [Device E-mail Address].
- 7 Input the e-mail server name or the address of e-mail server in [SMTP Server].
- 8 Set appropriate values for other setting items if necessary.
- 9 Input the e-mail address to receive notifications in [Notification Email Address].
- 10 Click [Settings] for the email address you input.
If you want to apply the notification condition to another address, select the copy source, and then click [Copy].
- 11 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.

 - When you select [Upon occurrence of an event], an error is notified just once.
 - When you select [Notify Periodically], an error is notified periodically until it is cleared.
- 12 Click [Apply].



- If no notification target error occurs, the notification e-mail will not be sent.

Using SNMPv3

By using the SNMP manager that is compatible with SNMPv3, the management of this machine can be encrypted with SNMP.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Protocol] - [SNMP].
- 5 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.

6 Click [Apply].



- You can use a commercially-available SNMP manager to verify and change the settings of this machine. For the MIB of this machine, refer to the supplied DVD, and check the MIB definition file in [Misc] - the [MIB Files] folder.

Using IEEE802.1X (Wired LAN)

This machine is compatible with IEEE802.1X authentication. IEEE802.1X authentication is possible after IEEE802.1X authentication on the web page of this machine is enabled and the authentication switch is connected.



- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If your server only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, connection will be impossible. Please double-check the environment.

Setting with EAP-TLS

This section describes how to set up EAP-TLS, one of the IEEE802.1X authentication.

- Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- Select [Network Setup].
- Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Security] - [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- Select [Enable] in [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- Select [EAP-TLS] in [EAP Type].
- Input the user name in [EAP User].
- Select [Do Not Use] in [Use server certificate (SSL/TLS certificate) in EAP authentication].
- Input the password in [Import of Client Certificate].
- Click [Import of Client Certificate], select the certificate file, and click [OPEN].
Only PKCS#12 files can be imported.
- Select [Authenticate Server] in [Server Authentication Settings], and then click [Import] in [Import of CA Certificate].
- Select the CA certificate file, and click [OPEN].
Specify the CA certificate used for RADIUS server authentication. PEM, DER and PKCS#7 files can be imported.
- Click [Apply].
- When the machine is online, power off the machine.
- Remove the LAN cable from the machine.
- Connect the LAN cable to the network interface connector of this machine.
- Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the authentication port of the authentication switch.

- 18 Power on this machine.
- 19 Set the IP address of this machine or the like.

Setting with PEAP

This section describes how to set up PEAP, one of the IEEE802.1X authentication.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Security] - [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 5 Select [Enable] in [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 6 Select [PEAP] in [EAP Type].
- 7 Input the user name in [EAP User].
- 8 Input the password in [EAP Password].
- 9 Select [Server Authentication Implementation] - [Authenticate Server].
- 10 Click [Import of CA Certificate] - [Import].
- 11 Select the CA certificate file, and click [OPEN].
Specify the CA certificate used for RADIUS server authentication. PEM, DER and PKCS#7 files can be imported.
- 12 Click [Apply].
- 13 When the machine is online, power off the machine.
- 14 Remove the LAN cable from the machine.
- 15 Connect the LAN cable to the network interface connector of this machine.
- 16 Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the authentication port of the authentication switch.
- 17 Power on this machine.
- 18 Set the IP address of this machine or the like.

Setting IEEE802.1X (Wireless LAN)

You can set IEEE802.1X authentication with a wireless LAN. First, access the web page of this machine via a wired LAN to set IEEE802.1X authentication, and then set the wireless connection on the web page.



- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If your server only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, connection will be impossible. Please double-check the environment.

Setting with EAP-TLS

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Security] - [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 5 Select [Disable] in [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 6 Select [EAP-TLS] in [EAP Type].
- 7 Input the user name in [EAP User].
- 8 Select [Do Not Use] in [Use server certificate (SSL/TLS certificate) in EAP authentication].

 - If you select [Use], the certificate must be preset in the [Communication Encryption (SSL/TLS Server Certificate)] menu.
[Communication encryption \(SSL/TLS\)](#)(P.203)
- 9 Input the password in [Import of Client Certificate].
- 10 Click [Import of Client Certificate], select the certificate file, and click [OPEN].
Only PKCS#12 files can be imported.
- 11 Select [Server Authentication Implementation] - [Authenticate Server].
When [Not Authenticate Server] is selected, go to Step 14.
When using WPA2-EAP or WPA3-EAP, it is required to select [Authenticate Server].
- 12 Click [Import of CA Certificate] - [Import].
- 13 Select the CA certificate file, and click [OPEN].

 - Specify the CA certificate used for RADIUS server authentication. PEM, DER and PKCS#7 files can be imported.
- 14 Click [Apply].
- 15 When this machine is online, go to "[Connecting to a wireless LAN \(WPA3-EAP\)](#)(P.213)".

Setting with PEAP

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Security] - [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 5 Select [Disable] in [IEEE802.1X Authentication].
- 6 Select [PEAP] in [EAP Type].

- 7 Input the user name in [EAP User].
- 8 Input the password in [EAP Password].
- 9 Select [Server Authentication Implementation] - [Authenticate Server].
When [Not Authenticate Server] is selected, go to Step 12.
When using WPA2-EAP or WPA3-EAP, it is required to select [Authenticate Server].
- 10 Click [Import of CA Certificate] - [Import].
- 11 Select the CA certificate file, and click [OPEN].

 - Specify the CA certificate used for RADIUS server authentication. PEM, DER and PKCS#7 files can be imported.
- 12 Click [Apply].
- 13 When this machine is online, go to "[Connecting to a wireless LAN \(WPA3-EAP\)\(P.213\)](#)".

Connecting to a wireless LAN (WPA3-EAP)

This machine supports the wireless LAN security method WPA/WPA2-EAP and WPA3-EAP.

Before setting WPA/WPA2-EAP or WPA3-EAP as the wireless LAN security method, it is necessary to set it from the [IEEE802.1X Authentication] menu of the web page with a wired network connection.

Refer to "[Setting IEEE802.1X \(Wireless LAN\)\(P.211\)](#)".

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
 [Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator\(P.201\)](#)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Network Connection] - [Extended Network].
- 5 Select [Wireless LAN] in [Extended Network].
If [Wireless LAN] has already been set, proceed to Step 7.



- The factory default setting is [Disable].

- 6 Click [Apply] to restart the machine. During the restart, the web page will display the reconnecting screen. When this machine has restarted, the setting screen of [Extended Network] will be displayed again.
- 7 Select [Wireless(Infrastructure)] in [Wireless LAN].
- 8 Select [Manual Setup] in [Wireless Network Selection].
- 9 In the [SSID] field, input the SSID of the access point you want to connect to.
- 10 In the [Security] field, select the security protocol ([WPA/WPA2-EAP] or [WPA3-EAP]) of the

access point.

- 11 Click [Connect] to apply the settings. It may take up to 1 minute to connect to the wireless access point. If the connection fails, reset the wireless settings from the operator panel, or switch to wired LAN from the operator panel and reset the wireless settings from the web page.

Setting the LDAP server



- Consult your network administrator for the LDAP server and encryption setup.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Network Setup].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Protocol] - [LDAP Server Setting].
- 5 Input the FQDN or IP address of the LDAP server in [LDAP Server].
 - When [Digest-MD5] or [Secure Protocol] is selected in Step 9, please input the FQDN instead of the IP address. An FQDN is a combination of the host name and domain name. (Example of FQDN: Server1.domain.local)
- 6 Input the port number of the LDAP server in [Port Number].
- 7 In [Timeout], specify the timeout value to wait for the search result.
- 8 Specify the Base DN to access the LDAP server in [DN (Distinguished Name)].
- 9 Select the required authentication method in [Authentication] - [Confirmation method].
[Anonymous]: Select it when you want to access the LDAP server using anonymous authentication.
[Simple]: Select it when you want to access the LDAP server using simple authentication.
[Digest-MD5]: Select it when you want to access the LDAP server using Digest-MD5 authentication.
[Secure Protocol]: Select it when you want to access the LDAP server using Secure Protocol (Kerberos) authentication.
 - If [Anonymous] is selected, authentication will always be anonymous, even when the LDAP server is used for LDAP name authentication. If the LDAP server is used for LDAP name authentication, select any authentication method other than [Anonymous].
 - If [Digest-MD5] is selected, it is required to set the DNS server.
 - If [Secure Protocol] is selected, it is required to set the Sntp server, DNS server and secure protocol server.
- 10 If any option other than [Anonymous] is selected in Step 9, specify the user ID and password to login to the LDAP server.
- 11 Select an encryption method in [Encryption].
[None]: No encryption will be done.
[LDAPS]: The encryption will be done with the LDAPS method.
[STARTTLS]: The encryption will be done with the StartTLS method.



- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If your server only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, please double-check the environment or select [None] with understanding of security risks.

12 Click [Apply].

Setting e-mail receiving (Web page)

Set the protocol (POP3, SMTP, etc.) for this machine to receive e-mails.



- Consult your network administrator about the mail server.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Network Setup].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Protocol] - [E-mail Printing].

5 Select [POP3] or [SMTP] in [Use Protocol] according to your environment.

6 Configure the settings following the on-screen instructions.



- This machine does not support TLS 1.1 or lower. If your server only supports TLS 1.1 or lower, please double-check the environment or select [None] with understanding of security risks.

7 Click [Apply].

Setting the Power Save Time (Web page)

Set the time that will elapse before the power save mode is entered.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Select [Printer Settings].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Management] - [Power Setup].

5 Select the transition time in [Power Save Time], and click [Apply].

Setting the sleep time (Web page)

Set the time that will elapse before the sleep mode is entered.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

- 3 Select [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Management] - [Power Setup].
- 5 Select the transition time in [Sleep Time], and click [Apply].

Setting "Auto Power Off" (Web page)

Set the Auto Power Off function.

Enabling Auto Power Off

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Management] - [Power Setup].
- 5 Select [Enable] in [Auto Power Off].
- 6 Select the transition time in [Auto Power Off Time], and click [Apply].

Setting actions of the power save mode (Web page)

Set actions of the power save mode.

Mode1: Set it to the power save mode. The power consumption is lower than that in Mode 2.

Mode2: Set it to the low temperature standby mode. The printing startup is faster than that in Mode 1.



- The factory default setting is [Mode1].
- When the setting is changed, the machine will restart automatically.

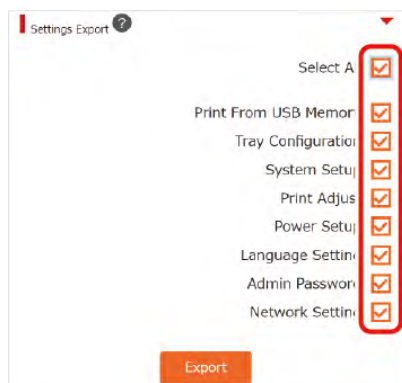
- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner. Then, select [Management] - [Power Setup].
- 5 Select the action mode in [Power Save Setting], and click [Apply].

Copying the setup information of this machine to other devices

Exporting settings of this machine

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

- 3 Select [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Configuration Management] - [Settings Export].
- 5 Select the settings to be copied.



- 6 Click [Export].
- 7 Specify the storage location, name the file, and click [Save].



- The file may be saved without displaying the saving screen depending on the specific web browser.

Importing settings of this machine

- 1 Open the web page of the device to which you want to copy the settings.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [Configuration Management] - [Settings Import].
- 5 Click [Select File], and select the copying file to export.
- 6 Click [Import].

Printing PDF/JPEG files (Direct Print)

With the application, you can print a PDF or JPEG file without opening it.



- The compatible file formats are PDF (v1.7) and JPEG (JFIF 1.02).

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Select [Direct Print].
- 3 Select the PDF or JPEG file to print in [Step 1: Select a print file].
- 4 Set up the printing conditions by following the on-screen instructions in [Step 2: Set up printing

options].

- 5 Click [Print] in [Step 3: Start the printing].

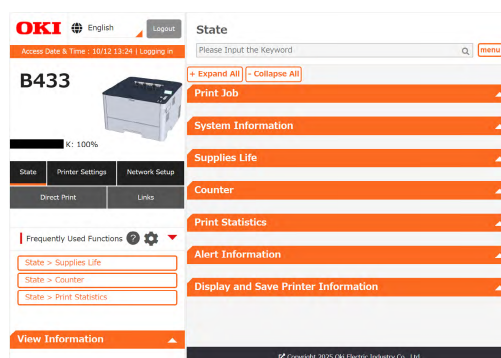
Setting a link to the support page

You can order consumables and set a URL for firmware update as you wish.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Select [Links].
- 4 Scroll the screen until [Edit Links] is displayed, and then click [Edit Links].
- 5 Input the title and URL of each item.
- 6 Click [Apply].

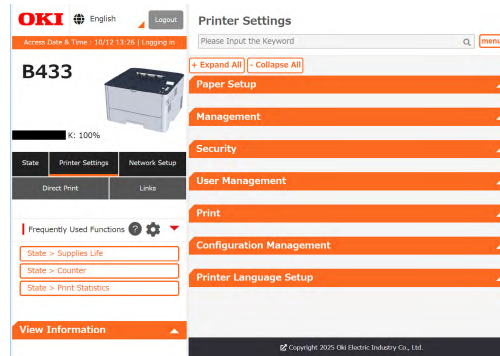
Setting items of the web page

State



Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
Print Job	Job Lists	Display a list of print data sent to this machine. You can also delete the print data during or before printing.	☐	
	Job Log	Display the job log (or job history) saved in this machine. The job log is displayed when [Printer Settings] - [Management] - [Job Log] - [Save Job Log] is enabled.	☐	
System Information	Information	Display the information of this machine.	☐	☐
	Version Information	Display the version of firmware.	☐	☐
Network	Wireless(Infrastructure)	Display the settings of Wireless(Infrastructure).	☐	☐
	Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)	Display the settings of Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct).	☐	☐
Supplies Life	Remaining Toner	Display the remaining toner amount.	☐	☐
	Drum Life Remaining	Display the remaining service life of the image drum.	☐	☐
	Fuser Life Remaining	Display the remaining service life of the drum unit.	☐	☐
Counter	Print Counter	Display the total number of printed pages for each tray.	☐	☐
	Paper Feed Roller Counter	Display the number of sheets fed from each tray.	☐	☐
Print Statistics	Usage Report	Display the Usage Report.	☐	
Alert Information	Error	Display errors that have occurred in this machine as "Alert Information".	☐	☐
	Warning	Display warnings that have occurred in this machine as "Alert Information".	☐	☐
Display and Save Printer Information	Open Printer Information	Display the information of this machine in a separate window.	☐	
	Export MenuMap	You can save the printer's menu map.	☐	☐
	Export NFC Setting Log	You can save the result of setting changes by NFC. * It is displayed only when the setting is changed by NFC.  Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.	☐	☐
	Export Access Log	You can save the access log data.	☐	
Print Job Encryption	Printer Key	Display the printer key used for job encryption in the printer driver.	☐	☐

Printer Settings

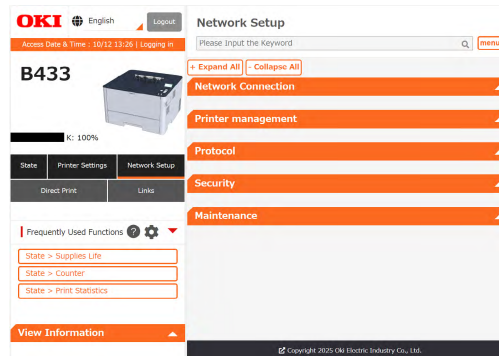


Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
Paper	Paper Tray Setup	You can view or set the paper size, custom paper, etc. of each tray. When a printer driver is used, the setup in the printer driver takes priority over this setting value. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	Paper Input Options	Set the paper-related options, tray switching and priority.	☐	
	Duplex Last Page	Set whether to print on both sides when the last page is single-sided.	☐	
Management	Identification	You can view or set the information to identify this machine. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	Panel Setup	Set the items to be displayed on the screen.	☐	☐
	Time Setup	Set the time-related items.	☐	
	Power Setup	You can set Power Save, Sleep, Sleep After Printing and Auto Power Off.	☐	
	Buzzer Setup	You can adjust the volume of the buzzer when an error occurs, when the printing has completed, and when AirPrint is checked.	☐	
	System Adjust	Set general items related to the system.	☐	
	Admin Password	You can set the admin password.	☐	
	Near Life Setup	Set whether or not to display a message when the supplies or maintenance parts are approaching the end of service life.	☐	
	USB Setup	Set the USB-related information.	☐	
	Job Cancel Setup	You can set the actions when «CANCEL» is pressed.	☐	
	Font output mode setting	Set the information related to the font output mode.	☐	
	Private Print Setup	Set how private jobs will be handled in the device.	☐	
	Flash Memory Setup	It is used to initialize the flash memory and format a partition.	☐	
	Job Log Setup	You can set whether or not to save the job log. It is also used to clear the saved job logs.	☐	
	Access Log Setup	You can set whether or not to save the access log.	☐	
Security	Account Lockout	You can enable/disable the lockout control when authentication fails.	☐	

Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
	Password Policy	You can configure policies for the admin password, general user password, default user password for IPP Basic Authentication, SNMPv3 authentication passphrase, and SNMPv3 encryption passphrase.	○	
User Management	Access Control Setup	You can set the access control function.	○	
	User Management	User List You can register/delete a user to use this machine. A maximum of 5,000 users can be registered.	○	
		Role List You can manage the role assigned to the user. Up to 100 roles can be registered.	○	
		Group List You can manage users registered in this machine in group. Up to 1,000 groups can be registered.	○	
	LDAP Authentication	You can set the user information, PIN, etc. required to use LDAP authentication.	○	
	Role Assignment Rules for LDAP Authentication	You can define the regulations on assigning roles to users when using LDAP authentication.	○	
	Print Statistics	Configure settings related to the Print Statistics function. Print Statistics Login is required.	○	○
	User Counter	Display the Usage Report of each user. It is displayed when [Printer Settings] - [Management] - [Job Log] - [Save Job Log] is enabled.	○	
	Usage Report Export	Export the Usage Report of each user to a CSV file. It is displayed when [Printer Settings] - [Management] - [Job Log] - [Save Job Log] is enabled.	○	
Print	Print Setup	You can set the number of copies, etc. When a printer driver is used, the setup in the printer driver takes priority over this setting value.	○	
	Print From USB Memory Setup	You can set items related to the Print From USB Memory function.	○	
	Printing behavior	You can set items related to printing behavior such as Toner Save and Manual Timeout.	○	
	Error behavior	You can set the items related to actions when an error like a paper jam has occurred.	○	
	Print Adjustment	You can set items related to print adjustment such as High Humid Mode and Drum Cleaning.	○	
	Print Position Adjust	You can adjust the print position such as X Adjust, Y Adjust, Duplex X Adjust and Duplex Y Adjust.	○	
	Hex Dump	Convert the data received from the host PC to hexadecimal format and print it.	○	
Configuration Management	Settings Export	File and save the settings of this machine to a PC.	○	
	Settings Import	Transmit settings of this machine which are saved and filed to the PC.	○	
	Erase Privacy Data	Erase the following data set in this machine. - Admin password, values set in various menus - Various records - Access control and user information registered to the device	○	
	Reset Settings	Reset the menu settings changed by the user to the factory default settings.	○	

Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
Printer Language Setup	PS Setup	You can set the PS-related information.	☐	
	PCL Setup	You can set the PCL-related information.	☐	
	SIDM Setup	Set the SIDM-related information.	☐	
	IBM PPR Setup	You can set the IBM 5577-related information.	☐	
	EPSON FX Setup	You can set the ESC/P-related information.	☐	

Network Setup

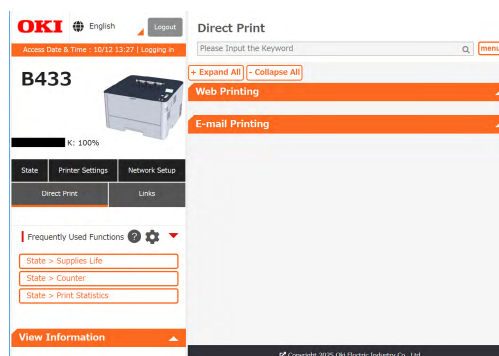


Item			Description	○: Items to display	
				Admin	User
Network Connection	Wired(LAN1)		You can view and set the connection information of the supplied wired LAN module. You can disable the Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) function of the wired network (LAN1) by setting [Energy Efficient Ethernet] included in this item to [Disable]. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	Extended Network	Disable	View and set the network module to be added in addition to the wired LAN (LAN1) module. Specify Disable, Wireless LAN, or Wired(LAN2). Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
		Wired(LAN2)	You can view and set the connection information of the extended wired LAN module. It is displayed when the Wired LAN module is installed and [Extended Network] is set to [Wired(LAN2)]. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
		Wireless LAN	You can view and check the connection information of the optional wireless LAN module. It is displayed when the wireless LAN module is installed and [Extended Network] is set to [Wireless LAN]. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	Default Gateway Settings		Specify the network connection method for segment-based communication. It is displayed when [Extended Network] is set to [Wired(LAN2)] or [Wireless LAN].	☐	
	Other TCP/IP Settings		You can view and set other TCP/IP information such as the DNS server and the WINS server. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	AirPrint		You can set the AirPrint-related items.	☐	

Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
	Network Scale	This setting is to operate more efficiently on the network. When a hub with a spanning tree function is used, this function is effective when the PC and this machine are connected on a one-to-one basis with a crossover cable.	☐	
Printer management	Email Alert	You can set the function to receive notifications by email when an error has occurred in this machine.	☐	
Protocol	NetBIOS over TCP/IP	You can view and set the information related to NetBIOS over TCP/IP. If you are using NetBIOS to list computer names on a Windows network, you can set this item to display printers in the computer name list. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	IPP	You can view and set the IPP-related information. The IPP protocol (Port number: 443, 631) can be used for printing. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
	Windows Rally	You can set the information related to Windows Rally.	☐	
	Mopria	You can set the information related to Mopria Print Service. Mopria Print Service allows you to print from Mopria™ compatible clients without using a printer driver. When the setting is changed, the machine will restart automatically (Depending on the settings of other menus, the machine may not restart). Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	
	IPP Everywhere	You can set the information related to IPP Everywhere. IPP Everywhere allows you to print from IPP Everywhere™ compatible clients without using a printer driver. When the setting is changed, the machine will restart automatically (Depending on the settings of other menus, the machine may not restart). Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	
	E-mail Printing	You can set the information required to receive e-mails. You can print PDF, JPEG, or TIFF files attached to emails received by this machine.	☐	
	LDAP Server Setting	You can set the information related to the LDAP server.	☐	
	SNMP	You can view and set the SNMP-related information. This is a protocol for monitoring/managing network devices via the network. From the SNMP Manager software, you can use the information acquisition command to retrieve information about the printer and control the printer. Only the administrator can configure the settings.	☐	☐
Security	Protocol ON/OFF	Stops network protocols and network services that you do not use.	☐	☐
	IP Filtering	You can restrict access by TCP/IP. You can control access from outside the company. However, this function requires knowledge about the IP address. This machine may be denied from access to network due to serious problems depending on settings.	☐	

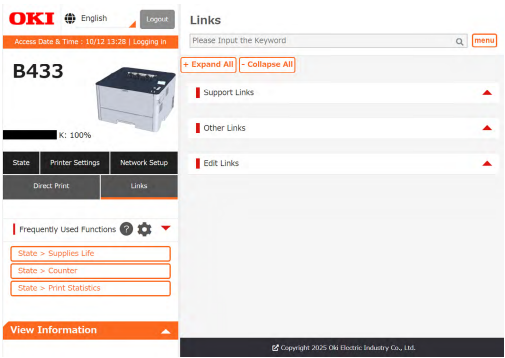
Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
	MAC Address Filtering	You can restrict access by the MAC address. You can control access from outside the company. However, this function requires knowledge about the MAC address. This machine may be denied from access to network due to serious problems depending on settings.	☐	
	IPSec	You can set the encryption and tampering of communication between this machine and your PC (client).	☐	
	IEEE802.1X Authentication	You can set the information related to IEEE802.1X/EAP.	☐	
	Secure Protocol Server Setting	You can set the information related to the secure protocol server.	☐	
	Proxy	You can set the information related to the proxy.	☐	
	PJL Security	You can set whether to receive unencrypted data.	☐	
	WebPage Authentication Method	You can set the WebPage authentication method.	☐	
	Communication Encryption (SSL/TLS Server Certificate)	You can encrypt communication between this machine and your PC (client).	☐	
Maintenance	Reset Network Card	Reset the network card. The web page will not be displayed even if you access from the web browser until the resetting has completed.	☐	
	Restore Network Card to Factory Defaults	Restore the network card to its factory default settings. The IP address will be reset to the initial state, and the information set manually will be lost. In that case, it is required to redo the printer's network settings to access the web page again.	☐	

Direct Print



Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
Direct Print	Web Printing	You can print any PDF/JPEG file you specified.	☐	☐
	E-mail Printing	Set the e-mail reception. You can print a PDF, JPEG or TIFF file attached to an e-mail. * Please configure the e-mail reception settings in advance.	☐	

Links



Item		Description	○: Items to display	
			Admin	User
Links	Support Links	Display the links set by the manufacturer.	☐	☐
	Other Links	Display the links set by the administrator.	☐	☐
	Edit Links	You can set the URL to be displayed in the links. You can register 5 support links and 5 other links. Input the URL that contains "https://".	☐	

User restriction (Access control)

Access control is a function that a user authenticated by this machine can only perform permitted operations. Before using this machine, user authentication is required. The information required for user authentication refer to a user name and its password, or a PIN (Personal Identification Number).

To enable the access control function, the administrator shall do the following on the web page of this machine.

1. Registering a role (P.226)	Register a role to set which operations are permitted or prohibited.
2. Registering a user (P.227)	If you use the local authentication method for user authentication, register users and groups.  User registration can also be performed using the Configuration Tool. Registering the user name and password (P.259)
3. Registering a group (P.228)	
4. Setting the authentication server (P.229)	If you use server authentication for user authentication, configure server authentication settings.
5. Enabling access control (P.230)	Enable access control.



- If you have been authenticated but cannot operate, check with the administrator if the operation is permitted.

[Printing from a PC](#)(P.128)

1. Registering a role

Register a role to assign to the user. For example, create an organizational unit name or job title role, and set and register the allowed operations (like printing) for each role.

A maximum of 100 roles can be registered. You can also assign multiple roles to a single user.

You can set to permit/prohibit the following operations for a role.

- Printing from a PC

By default, two types of roles are registered.

- .AdminRole:**
The role of the device administrator. It can be assigned to general users. A user with [.AdminRole] assigned can act as a device administrator and perform [Administrator Login] on the web page. (However, the condition is that access control is enabled and it is a local user.)
[.AdminRole] cannot be deleted or edited.
- .DefaultRole:**
This is the role to be assigned if no role is specified when a user is registered.
[.DefaultRole] cannot be deleted, but the access rights can be edited.

- Open the web page of this machine.
[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- Log in as an administrator.
[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- Click [Printer Settings].
- Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [User Management] - [User

Management].

5 Click [Role].

6 When the Role Information screen is displayed, input the required information.

- Role Name: Input any role name. The same [Role Name] cannot be registered. Also, [Role Name] cannot be omitted.
- Role Description: Input a description for the role.
- Permission: Set permission/prohibition/forced prohibition of each operation in this role. Setting forced prohibition will prohibit operations permitted by other roles.
- Local User List: Add or delete a local user to which this role is assigned.
- Kerberos User List: Add a Kerberos user to whom this role applies.

7 Click [Submit].

You can copy registered roles and add new roles based on the copied configuration.

When you click [Copy] below the role name, the role information screen will be displayed, so change and register the required items.

2. Registering a user

When performing user authentication using the local confirmation method, register the user on this machine from the web browser. A maximum of 5,000 users can be registered.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page\(P.200\)](#)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator\(P.201\)](#)

3 Click [Printer Settings].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [User Management] - [User Management].

5 Click [User].

6 Set the type of user.

- Local User: Register user information in this machine.
- LDAP User: A user registered in the LDAP server.
LDAP server authentication setting is required. LDAP user cannot be registered.
Only browse is possible. You can check the users who used this machine.
- Kerberos User: A user registered in the Kerberos server.

Kerberos server authentication setting is required. Kerberos user cannot be registered. Only browse is possible.

You can check the list of users who used this machine. You can also assign a role to a Kerberos user.

The screenshot shows the 'User Management' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Add', 'Role', and 'Group'. Below the tabs, there is a table with columns for 'User Name', 'Password', 'Display Name', 'E-mail Address', 'Language Code', 'PIN', 'Role', and 'Group'. To the right of the table, there is a form for adding a new user. The form includes fields for 'User Name (Required)', 'Password (Required)', 'Display Name', 'E-mail Address', 'Language Code', 'PIN', 'Role', and 'Group'. There are also buttons for 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Submit'.

7 When the User Information Settings screen is displayed, input the required information.

- User Name: Input the user name. The same [User Name] cannot be registered. Be sure to set it.
- Password: Input the password. Be sure to set it.
- Display Name: Input the display name.
- E-mail Address: Input the user's e-mail address.
- Language Code: Input the language code. When [Advanced] is selected, input the language code in a RFC1766-compliant format. (e.g. en-us)
- PIN: Input the user's PIN.
- Role: Set the user's role. [Role] can be assigned to multiple users.
- Group: Set the group to which the user belongs.

8 Click [Submit].

You can copy registered roles and add new users based on the copied settings.

When you click [Copy] below the user name, the user information screen will be displayed. Then change and register the required items.

3. Registering a group

Users registered in this machine can be managed in a group. Up to 1,000 groups can be registered. Up to 5,000 users can be registered in one group.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

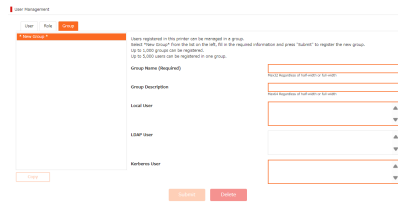
3 Click [Printer Settings].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [User Management] - [User Management].

5 Click [Group].

6 When the Group Information screen is displayed, input the required information.

- Group Name: Input any group name. Be sure to set it.
- Group Description: Input a description for the group.
- Local User List: Set the users you want to assign to this group.
- Kerberos User List: Set the Kerberos users you want to assign to this group.



7 Click [Submit].

You can copy already registered groups and add new groups based on the copied settings.

When you click [Copy] below the group name, the group information screen will be displayed, so change and register the required items.

4. Setting the authentication server

When performing user authentication using the server authentication method, set the server settings from the web browser.

Here is an example of using an LDAP authentication server.

1 Open the web page of this machine.

[Opening the web page](#)(P.200)

2 Log in as an administrator.

[Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)

3 Click [Printer Settings].

4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [User Management] - [LDAP Authentication].

5 Create user information based on the LDAP server information.

Input the LDAP key from which each value is obtained.

- Display name: Set the LDAP key to obtain the display name of user information.
- E-mail address: Set the LDAP key to obtain the E-mail address of user information.
- Language Code: Set the LDAP key to obtain the language code of user information.
- Group: Set it to assign users to a group automatically. Set the LDAP key to obtain the assigned group name. When a group with a group name defined by the same text string as the acquired text exists in this machine, each group is assigned. When it does not exist, a group with the group name of acquired text string is automatically created and assigned.
- PIN: Set the LDAP key to acquire the PIN to use for PIN authentication. If you do not use PIN authentication, no need to input anything.
- User Name: Set the LDAP key of the user name registered in the LDAP server.
The factory default user name is "sAMAccountName" for the LDAP key of a Windows server.
Users using a Windows server do not need to change this setting.
- Cache authentication information: Set whether authentication information is temporarily stored in this machine. The factory default setting is [Disable] (Do not save temporarily). When [Enable] is set, user authentication can be performed even when communication with the LDAP authentication server is not available due to a communication breakdown, etc., so this machine can be used continuously.
- Cache confirmation information validity period: It appear when [Cache authentication information] is set to [Enable]. Set the validity period of the temporarily saved authentication information in this machine on a daily basis. The setting range is 1 to 2000 days. After the set number of days,

authentication with temporarily stored information will not be available any more.

1

LDAP Authentication

Use information LDAP key settings

Display Name

Enterprise

Full Name of the LDAP server

Full Path

Full Name of the LDAP server

Enterprise Code

Enterprise Code

Full Name of the LDAP server

Group

Default

Full Name of the LDAP server

PS

Yes

Full Name of the LDAP server

User Name (Required)

Authentication Policy

Full Name of the LDAP server

Enable

Disable

Use information cache settings

Cache authentication information

Enable

Disable

- 6 Click [Apply].
- 7 Scroll the screen until [Role Assignment Regulations] is displayed, and define the regulations for automatically assigning roles to LDAP users.
- 8 When the Role Assignment screen is displayed, input the LDAP key, the LDAP value and the applicable role.

When the LDAP value which is registered in the role assignment regulations of the user, and the LDAP value defined by the regulations are identified at the time of authentication, apply the role which is defined by each role assignment regulation to each user.

When a single user matches multiple role assignment regulations, all the roles which match those regulations are applied to the user.

Rule Assignment Rules for LDAP Authentication

New Rule

LDAP Key (Required)

LDAP Value (Required)

Applicable Role

Applicable Definition

Select Delete

- 9 Click [Submit].

5. Enabling access control

After registering users and configuring the authentication server, enable access control.

- 1 Open the web page of this machine.
 [Opening the web page](#)(P.200)
- 2 Log in as an administrator.
 [Logging in as an administrator](#)(P.201)
- 3 Click [Printer Settings].
- 4 Click the Menu button on the upper right corner, and then select [User Management] - [Access Control Setup].

5 Select [Enable] in [Access Control].

The screenshot shows the 'Access Control' configuration page. The 'Access Control' section has 'Enable' selected. The 'Set Guest Permissions' section has 'Guest user use' set to 'Enable'. The 'Confirmation method' section has 'Authenticate Local Name' set to 'Enable', 'Authenticate Local PIN' set to 'Enable', 'Authenticate Local Mobile Keycode' set to 'Enable', 'Authenticate Local Name' set to 'Enable', 'Authenticate Local PIN' set to 'Enable', and 'Authenticate Local Name' set to 'Enable'. The 'Direct Print' section has 'E-mail Printing' set to 'Enable'.

6 Configure access control settings according to your environment.

- **Set Guest Permissions:** The screen for setting the permissions for guest authentication is displayed. By default, guest access rights are granted for all operations. You can define guest permissions according to your security policy.

- **Guest user use:** Guest is a user assigned to those who are not successful with user authentication when the access control is enabled.

This setting is used to enable or disable the use of this machine by guest.

When [Disable] is set, you can limit the use of this machine by users who failed the user authentication. Specifically, you can disable printing by users who failed the user authentication and the operation of the operator panel.

When [Enable] is set, you can allow users who failed the user authentication to use this machine within the range of guest permissions. The definition of guest permissions can be set in the guest permission settings.

[Guest] is displayed as the confirmation method on the Login screen.

- If you want to discard print data that cannot be authenticated, set [Guest user use] to [Disable], or set [Set Guest Permissions] to prohibit the printing permission of the guest.
- **Confirmation method:** Enable/Disable each authentication method.

A user can select the authentication method within the range granted by the administrator at the time of authentication.

If an unnecessary authentication method is disabled in this setting, the disabled authentication method will not be displayed in the user options.

- **Default authentication method:** Define the focused authentication method as default when the user calls the authentication screen from the operator panel.

7 Set the actions of Direct Print according to your environment.

- **E-mail Printing:** Set it to [Enable] or [Disable]. When [Enable] is set, the attached file received by the E-mail Printing function will be printed.

When [Disable] is set, the attached file received by the E-mail Printing function will not be printed.

8 Click [Apply].



- When [Access Control] and [Lockout Function] are set to [Enable] and [IPP Authentication] is set to [Basic], the lockout times of this machine may be fewer than the lockout times set when the machine is logged in from an IPP-based application.

Using the machine

When access control is enabled, the home screen of this machine changes to the login screen, and user authentication is required.

This section explains the login method to this machine by authenticating a user name and password.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».
- 3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select [User Account Info], and then press «OK».
- 4 Input your own user name, and then press «OK».
- 5 Press ▲ or ▼ to input your password, and then press «OK».
- 6 Login is complete when "Ready To Print (logged in)" is displayed. The home screen is displayed.



- You will be automatically logged out after a certain period of time without operating the panel.

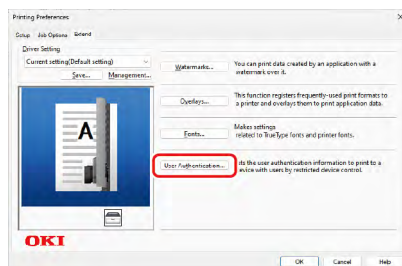
Printing from a PC

If access control is enabled, when printing from a PC, you need to input user information in the printer driver.

For Windows

In this example, Notepad is used to print from the PCL driver.

- 1 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 2 Select [OKI *** PCL] (where *** is your model name) from [Printer], and click [More settings].
- 3 Select the [Extend] tab.
- 4 Click [User Authentication].



- 5 Set [User name] and [Password] of the user as user authentication information, and [Authentication Type] to specify the authentication destination and authentication mode of the user.



- [Password], [Authentication Type], and [Use User Authentication] may not be displayed in the screen depending on the setting of [User Authentication Options...] in the [Device Options] tab.

- 6 Check [Use User Authentication] if it is displayed.



- Uncheck [Use User Authentication] if the PIN of the job accounting client is used as user authentication information.

7 Input the user name and password.

The user name may be fixed as login name depending on the setting of [User Authentication Options...] of the [Device Options] tab.

Check [Use logon name as user name] to use the Windows login name as the user name.

8 If [Authentication Type] is displayed, select the user's authentication destination and authentication mode from the list.

- Auto: Follow the method for logging into Windows. Authentication will be made by [Server LDAP] when you are logged into a domain or by [Device Local] when you are logged into a local PC.
- Device Local: Authentication is made by the user information in this machine.
- Server LDAP: Authentication is made by using LDAP in the user information of the server.
- Server Kerberos: Authentication is made by using Kerberos in the user information of the server.



- The default authentication type can be set in [User Authentication Options...] of the [Device Options] tab.

9 Click [OK].

10 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [OK].

11 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

Setting details of user authentication

Set the user authentication details of the printer driver from the [Device Options] tab or [Device Settings] tab of printer properties.

1 Open [Devices and Printers].

[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)

2 Right-click on the icon of your model and select [Printer Properties].

3 For the Windows PCL printer driver, select the [Device Options] tab, and click [User Authentication Options...]. For the Windows PS printer driver, select the [Device Settings] tab, and expand [Installable Options].

4 Set the details of user authentication.

- Set User Authentication Options for each user: Display [Use User Authentication] on the User Authentication Options screen so that you can set whether or not to use user authentication.



- When [Set User Authentication Options for each user] is unchecked, user authentication will be used, and authentication type will follow the method for logging into Windows. Authentication will be made by [Server LDAP] when you are logged into a domain or by [Device Local] when you are logged into a local PC.
- To use a PIN in the pop-up mode of the job accounting client as user authentication information, check [Set User Authentication Options for each user].
- Input user authentication information when printing: Pop up User Authentication Options for each print job. Use this option to specify an actual user for each print job in an environment where multiple users use the same login account on the same PC.
This cannot be set if [Set User Authentication Options for each user] is checked.
- Authentication Type: Set the authentication type in User Authentication Options.
- Default Authentication Type: Specify the default authentication type if the authentication type cannot

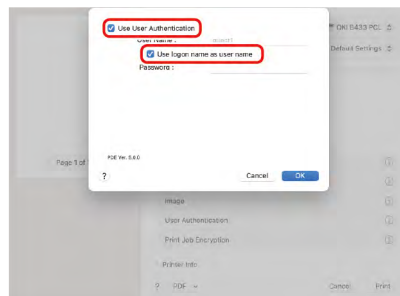
be set.

- 5 For the Windows PCL printer driver, click [OK].
- 6 Click [OK].

For macOS

Here is an example with Text Edit.

- 1 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 2 Select the printer driver of this machine.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [User Authentication].
- 4 Check [Use User Authentication].



- Uncheck [Use User Authentication] if the PIN of the job accounting client is used as user authentication information.

- 5 Input [User name] and [Password].
Check [Use login name as user name] to use the login name as the user name.
- 6 If [Authentication Type] is displayed, select the user's authentication destination and authentication mode from the list.
 - Auto: Follow the method for logging into macOS. Authentication will be made by [Server LDAP] when you are logged into a domain or by [Device Local] when you are not logged into a domain.
 - Device Local: Authentication is made by the user information in this machine.
 - Server LDAP: Authentication is made by using LDAP in the user information of the server.
 - Server Kerberos: Authentication is made by using Kerberos in the user information of the server.
- 7 Make settings required for printing.
- 8 Click [Print].

When using authentication type

- 1 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 2 Click [Printers & Scanners].
- 3 Select this machine, and click [Options and Supplies].
- 4 Set [Use User Authentication] to On in the [Options] tab.
- 5 Specify the default authentication type, and click [OK].

Initializing the settings

This section explains how to initialize the memory and the settings of this machine.

When you forget the admin password, the settings cannot be initialized.

Initializing network settings

The network settings will return to factory defaults after initialization.



- With this operation, all network settings will be initialized.

1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».



[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

5 Check that [Network Setup] is selected, and press «OK».

6 Check that [General Setup] is selected, and press «OK».

7 Press ▲ to select [Network Factory Defaults], and then press «OK».

8 Check that [Execute] is selected, and press «OK».

9 The display will return to the standby screen.

Initializing the flash memory



- Once the flash memory is initialized, the following data will be deleted.
 - Data saved by [Shared Print] or [Private Print]
 - Form data

1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».



[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

5 Press ▲ or ▼ several times to select [Others Setup], and then press «OK».

6 Press ▼ to select [Flash Memory Setup], and then press «OK».

7 Select [Initialize], and then press «OK».

8 Press ▼ to select the partition you want to initialize, and then press «OK».

9 When [Are you sure?] is displayed, select [Yes] and press «OK».

To cancel the initialization, select [No] instead.

10 When [Execute Now?] is displayed, select [Yes] and press «OK».



- If you select [No], the display will return to [Flash Memory Setup], but the initialization will not be canceled. Initialization will be done upon the next power on.

11 Press the power button to power off the machine, and then power it back on.

Initializing settings of this machine

You can restore settings of this machine to the factory default settings.



- Initialization of settings of this machine will return the following data to the default factory settings.
 - [Menus] settings
 - [Admin Setup] settings
 - [Calibration] settings

1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)

5 Press ▲ several times to select [Settings], and then press «OK».

6 Check that [Reset Settings] is selected, and press «OK».

7 Check that [Execute] is selected, and press «OK».

This machine restarts and its settings will be initialized.

Moving/Transporting this machine

Moving this machine

- 1 Press the power button to power off this machine.
- 2 Remove all cables.
 - Power cord
 - LAN cable/USB cable
- 3 Remove the paper from the paper cassette.
- 4 If the optional expansion tray unit is installed, use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the parts connecting this machine and the expansion tray unit, and separate this machine and the expansion tray unit.
- 5 Lift the optional expansion tray unit out of this machine, and move it to the destination.
If the optional dedicated caster stand is installed, unlock the casters (x 2) before moving the machine.

Transporting this machine



CAUTION

Burns may be caused.



Do not touch the fuser unit because it is hot.

A flat-head screwdriver is required to install the expansion tray unit.

A Phillips screwdriver and a flat-head screwdriver are required to install the dedicated caster stand.



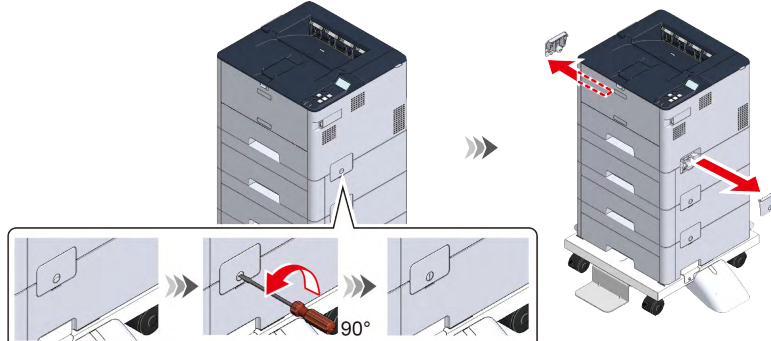
- Please use the packing case and cushioning material which came with the product.

- 1 Press the power button to power off this machine.
- 2 Remove all cables.
 - Power cord
 - LAN cable/USB cable
- 3 Remove the paper from the paper cassette.

- 4** If the optional expansion tray unit is installed, use a flat-head screwdriver to remove the parts (x 2) that connect this machine and the expansion tray unit.



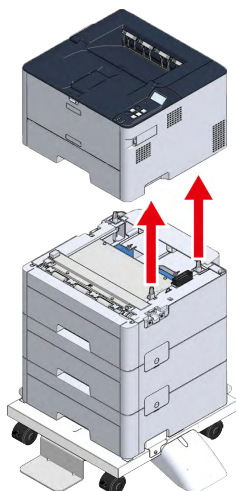
- Do not remove the parts that connect the expansion tray units to each other.
- Do not lose the removed connecting parts.



- 5** Lift the machine and remove it from the expansion tray unit.

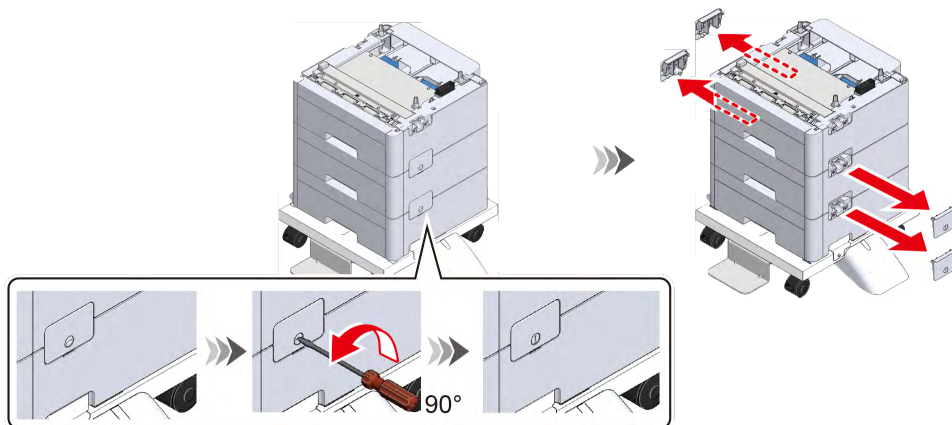


- Pack and ship this machine and the expansion tray unit separately.

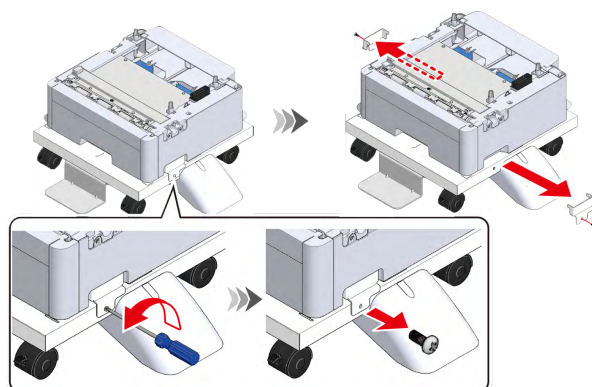


- 6** Attach the cushioning material to this machine and put them together in the packing case.

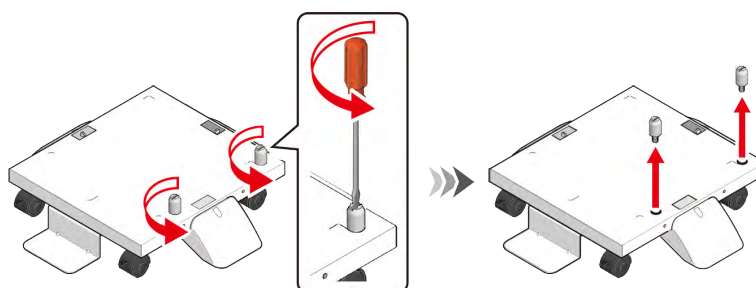
- 7** If you have multiple expansion tray units, use a flat-head screwdriver to remove all connecting parts and pack them together with each connected part.



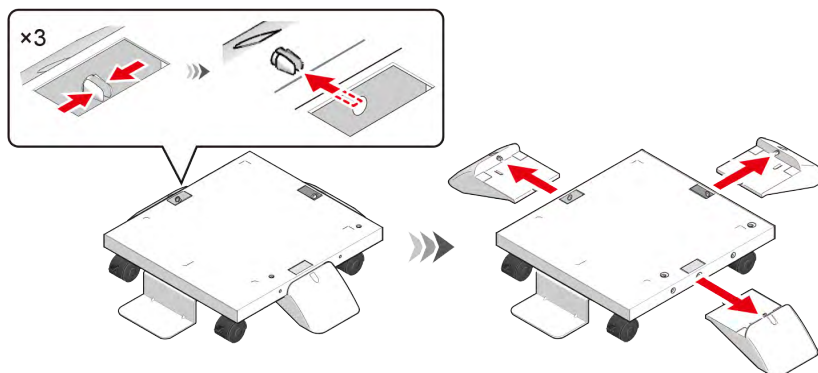
- 8** If the caster stand is installed, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the metal fixtures (x 2) that fix the caster stand and the expansion tray unit.



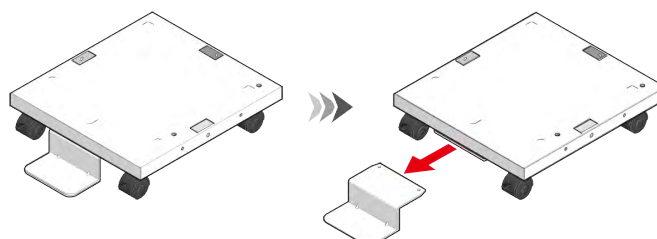
- 9** Use a flat-head screwdriver to turn the positioning pins (x 2) in the arrow direction to remove them from the caster stand.



- 10** Pinch the protrusion of the anti-tip foot b through the hole on the caster stand and push it out to remove the anti-tip foot b. Follow the same procedure to remove the remaining anti-tip feet b.



- 11** Remove the anti-tip foot a from the caster stand.



- 12** Put the caster stand in the packing box. At the same time, put the metal fixtures (x 2) of the caster stand, positioning pins (x 2), anti-tip feet b (x 3), and anti-tip foot a that were removed in

Steps 9 to 11 in the packing box.



- Do not lose the removed connecting parts.

Disposal

To dispose of this machine, it is recommended to erase the information registered or saved in this machine.

The following items are included in the information saved in this machine.

- Admin Password
- Various menu settings
- Private print data
- Various records
- Data of access control and user management (local user, external user cache [LDAP, Kerberos])

You can erase the information by the following procedure.

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.



- If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.

- 2 Press the scroll button ▼ on the operator panel to select [Menus], and then press «OK».

- 3 Press ▼ several times to select [Admin Setup], and press «OK».

- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».

 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)

- 5 Press ▼ several times to select [Others Setup], and then press «OK».

- 6 Press ▼ several times to select [Erase Privacy Data], and press «OK».

- 7 When "Execute" is displayed, press «OK».

- 8 When "Are you sure?" is displayed, select [Yes] and then press «OK».



- Once the action is executed, the erased data cannot be restored. To cancel the erasing, select [No].

- 9 When "Would you like really?" is displayed, select [Yes(No Report print)] or [Yes(Report print)] and then press «OK».

Restart the machine to erase the data. The result of [Erase Privacy Data] appears on the display. If [Yes(Report print)] was selected, a report of the results of [Erase Privacy Data] is printed.

How to dispose of the used machine

- For corporate customers, we accept collection and recycling of the used machine at your expense. Please refer to the support page of our website.
- For individual customers, please consult your local government.

7

Useful software

Software list.....	243
Installing software.....	245
Monitoring Tool (Windows)	247
PS Gamma Adjuster.....	253
Configuration Tool	255
OKI LPR utility	264
Print Job Accounting Client	268
Network Status Monitor	271
Printer Supply Manager	273

Software list

This section describes the software that can be used with this machine. Please refer to each topic for how to use the software.

Windows software



- Software cannot be installed on an OS that is not listed in the operating environment.

Operating environment

- Windows 11
- Windows 10
- Windows Server 2025
- Windows Server 2022
- Windows Server 2019
- Windows Server 2016

Item	Description	Reference
Monitoring Tool	It is a tool to monitor the firmware version of the machine, software version and the service life of maintenance parts.	Monitoring Tool (Windows)(P.247)
PS Gamma Adjuster Utility	You can adjust the halftone density when printing from a PC. You can adjust the image density of photos or the like.	PS Gamma Adjuster(P.253)
Configuration Tool	You can configure the access control settings for this machine. You can also register or delete form data.	Configuration Tool(P.255)
OKI LPR Utility	You can check the status of this machine connected to the network from your PC. You can also transfer print data to another machine.	OKI LPR utility(P.264)
Print Job Accounting Client	You can set a user ID (PIN) in the printer driver to use the job accounting function or access control function of this machine.	Print Job Accounting Client(P.268)
Network Status Monitor	You can check the status of this machine connected to the network from your PC. You can also be notified when printing is complete.	Network Status Monitor(P.271)
Printer Supply Manager	You can monitor the usage status of consumables and maintenance parts of the printer and keep the administrator notified.	Printer Supply Manager(P.273)
smart PrintSuperVision	This software is used to manage networked machines. You can check the usage status of the machine and impose restrictions on its operation.	For details, please refer to the "smart PrintSuperVisionUser's Manual" on our website.
Driver Installer Generator	This software is used to create printer driver installers. By creating an installer that fits your environment, you can save the trouble of installing a printer driver.	For details, please refer to the "Driver Installer GeneratorUser's Manual" on our website.

macOS software

Operating environment

- macOS 15 - 12

Item	Description	Reference
PS Gamma Adjuster Utility	You can adjust the halftone density when printing from a PC. You can adjust the image density of photos or the like.	PS Gamma Adjuster(P.253)
Print Job Accounting Client	You can set a user ID (PIN) in the printer driver to use the job accounting function or access control function of this machine.	Print Job Accounting Client(P.268)

Applications for mobile devices

Item	Description	Reference
Mobile Print	You can print web pages or photos with an OKI LED printer or LED MFP connected to a network via a wireless LAN from your smartphone, tablet or other mobile devices. (For Android/iOS)	Printing with Mobile Print(P.278)
NFC Setting Tool	You can restore the default settings of this machine from a smartphone by using the NFC function even when this machine is powered off. (For Android only) ⚠ Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.	For details, please refer to the "Online Manual" on our website.
Print Plugin	You can print with OKI's printers by connecting them to Wi-Fi and clicking the print button in the menu of each application on your Android device.	Printing with Print Plugin(P.291)

Installing software

You can download your desired software if any from our website and install it on your PC.

If your PC comes with a DVD drive, you can install the software from the included DVD.

For Windows

Install your desired software by selecting it from the "Software Package for Windows" downloaded from our website or the included DVD.

Connect this machine to a PC with a network or USB cable, and start the installation.

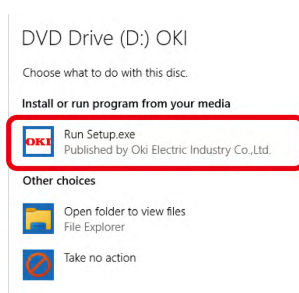


- Check the status of this machine before installation.
 - The power is turned on.
 - For connection with a network, the machine is connected to a network with a network cable and the IP address and other settings of the machine have been configured.

- 1 Open the "Software Package for Windows" downloaded from our website, or insert the included DVD into the PC.

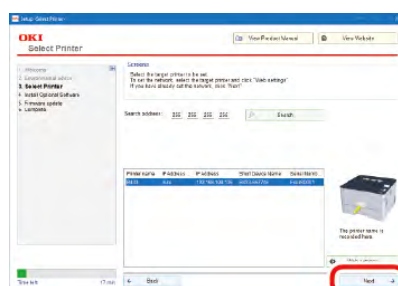


- When using the included DVD, click [Run Setup.exe] when the [DVD drive] screen is displayed.

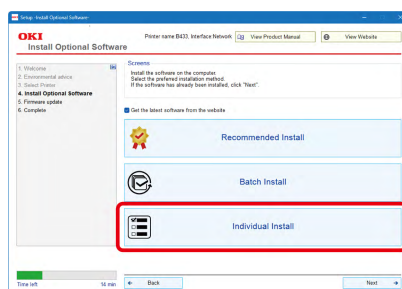


- When the [User Account Control] screen is displayed, click [Yes].

- 2 Choose a language from the pull-down menu of language selection in the [Welcome] screen.
- 3 Read the software license agreement, and click [Accept].
- 4 Read the environmental advice, and click [Next].
- 5 Click either [Network Connection] or [USB Connection] depending on the connection method between the PC and this machine.
- 6 Select the model name of this machine, and click [Next].



7 Click [Individual Install].



8 Click the printer driver or software you want to install.



- The procedure below may vary with the selected software.
This is an example of installing the Configuration Tool.

9 Click [Next] to start the installation.

The installation starts.

10 When the installation is complete, click [Finish].

For macOS

Copy it to any location using drag-and-drop. You can also boot directly from the mounted drive.

- Download the "Software Package for Mac" from our website and open that file. To use the included DVD, insert the DVD to the PC.
- Double-click on [OKI] - the [Utility] folder.
- Copy the folder of the software to be installed to any location you want using drag-and-drop.



- Double-click on the software icon in the folder to launch it.

For mobile devices

- Mobile Print is now available on App Store and Google Play.



- The Android version can also be downloaded from our website.

- The NFC Setting Tool can be downloaded from our website.
For details, please refer to the "Online Manual" on our website.



- Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.

- Print Plugin is now available on our website and Google Play.

Monitoring Tool (Windows)

You can use the Monitoring Tool to update the firmware and software of the printer.

The Monitoring Tool is available only for Windows.

To learn how to install the Monitoring Tool, please refer to "[Installing software\(P.245\)](#)".



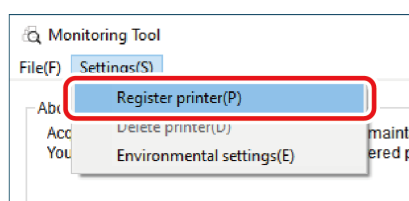
- You can also automatically manage the printer's firmware updates.
When using the automatic management function, use the same Windows login user when installing the Monitoring Tool and when using the Monitoring Tool.

Changing settings of Monitoring Tool

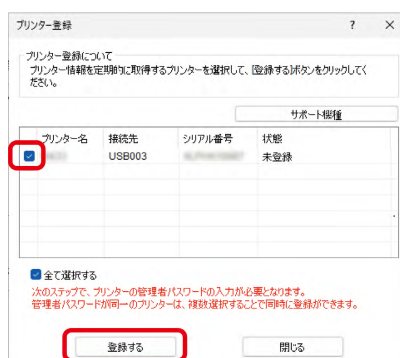
Registering the printer

Register the printer to be monitored with the Monitoring Tool.

- 1 Select [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [Monitoring Tool] to start the Monitoring Tool.
- 2 Select [Register printer] from the [Settings] menu.

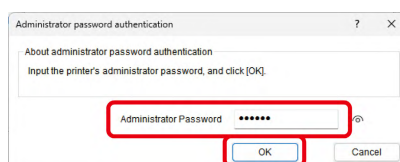


- 3 Select the printer to be registered from the printer list, and click [Register].



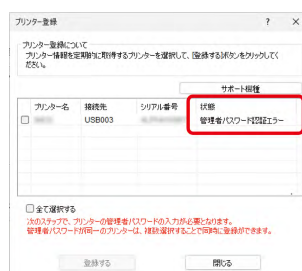
- 4 Input the admin password of the printer, and click [OK].

[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

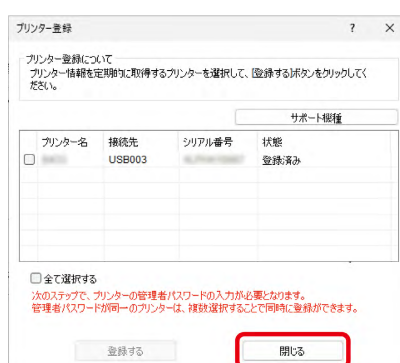




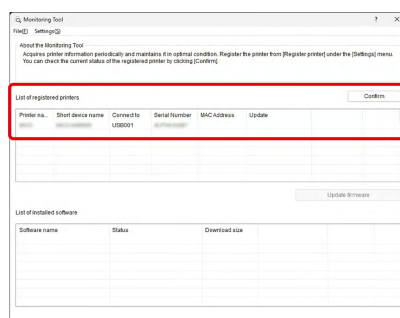
- If an admin password authentication error is displayed, the admin password you input may be incorrect. Input the correct admin password again.



5 Click [Close].



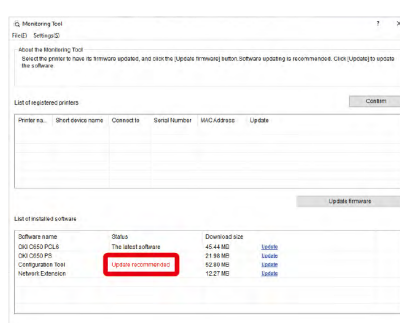
6 Check that the registered printer is displayed.



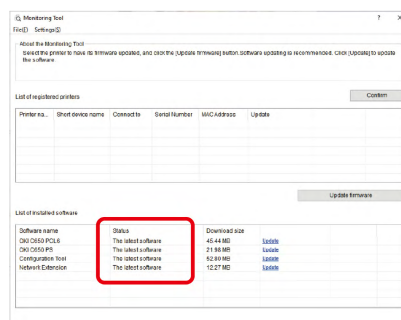
Updating the printer software

Monitoring Tool checks for software updates periodically. When an update is available for the software, follow the on-screen instructions to update the software.

1 When an update is available for software, [Update Recommended] is displayed in the [Status] field.



- 2 Click [Update] on the line where [Update Recommended] is displayed.
 - 3 Click [Agree] on the license agreement screen.
 - 4 Follow the on-screen instructions to install it.
- 
- The screen may vary with the software.
- 5 When the installation is complete, click [Finish].
 - 6 Check that [The latest software] is displayed in the [Status] field.

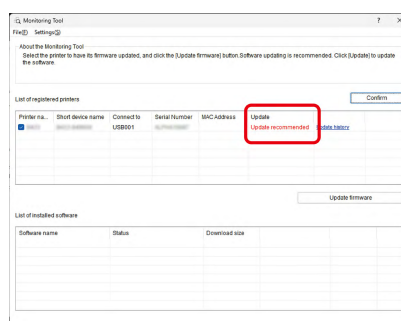


- 7 Select [Exit] from the [File] menu.

Updating the printer's firmware

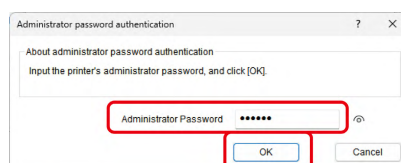
Monitoring Tool checks the status of this machine periodically. When a firmware update is available for this machine, follow the on-screen instructions to update the firmware.

- 1 When a firmware update is available for this machine, [Update Recommended] is displayed in the update field.



- 2 Check the name of this machine, and click [Update firmware].
- 3 On the [Administrator password authentication] screen, input the admin password of this machine, and click [OK].

 [Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)



- 4 The latest firmware is downloaded from our website, and the printer firmware is updated.



- Do not power off the printer while updating the firmware

- 5 When [Completed] is displayed and "Success" is displayed in the [Status] field, the firmware update is completed.

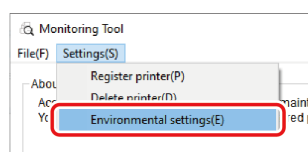


- If failed, an error message will be displayed in the [Status] field. Click [Details] on the right side of the message to display the error correction method.

- 6 Select [Exit] from the [File] menu.

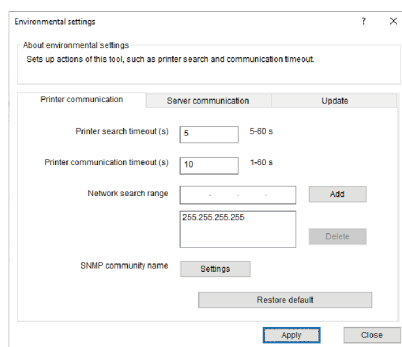
Changing settings of Monitoring Tool

- 1 Select [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [Monitoring Tool] to start the Monitoring Tool.
- 2 Select [Environment Settings] from the [Settings] menu.



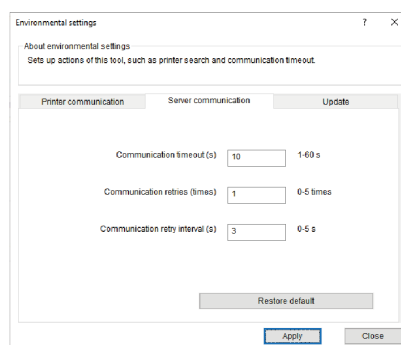
- 3 Set the values in each tab, and click [Apply].

- [Printer Communication] tab



Item	Description
Printer search timeout (s)	Set the time for searching for the printer.
Printer communication timeout (s)	Set the time limit for the timeout error of connection to the printer.
Network search range	Specify the range for searching for the printer.
SNMP community name	Set the SNMP community name.
Restore default	Restore all the settings to the default values.

- [Server Communication] tab



Item	Description
Communication timeout (s)	Set the timeout time for communication with our website.
Communication retries (times)	Set the number of retries when an error has occurred to communication with our website.
Communication retry interval(s)	Sets the interval for retrying communication with the website.
Restore default	Restore all the settings to the default values.

- [Firmware Update] tab

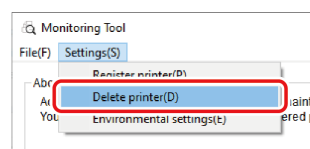


Item	Description
Update timeout (m)	Set the timeout limit for the firmware update.
Restore default	Restore all the settings to the default values.

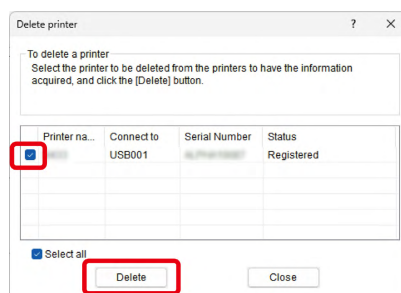
Deleting the printer

Delete a printer registered with the Monitoring Tool.

- 1 Select [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [Monitoring Tool] to start the Monitoring Tool.
- 2 Select [Delete printer] from the [Settings] menu.



3 Check the printer to be deleted, and click [Delete].



Troubleshooting (Monitoring Tool)



- Please check the following explanation and the "FAQ" on our website.
- If the problem persists, contact your dealer.
- For problems arising from the application, contact the application development company.

When firmware update has failed

Cause	Solution
The connection with the server has failed.	Check your Internet connection environment.
The admin password that you input is incorrect.	Check the admin password.
The printer is powered off.	Power on the printer, enter the standby mode, and run the update again.
The printer is not connected.	Connect the printer.
The printer is being used.	Update the firmware after the printer has stopped.
An error occurred in the printer (No toner, paper jam, etc.).	Update the firmware after the error has been cleared.

PS Gamma Adjuster

You can adjust the halftone density of this machine. Make adjustments if an image like a photo is too dark.



- For Windows, the [Custom Gamma Adjustment] menu or its content may not be displayed on the [Job Options] tab of the printer driver after a name is registered in [Gamma Curve Name]. In such a case, restart your PC.
- Using the Gamma Adjuster may slow down the printing. To prioritize the speed, for Windows, uncheck [Custom Gamma Adjustment] in the [Job Options] tab of the printer driver. For macOS, select [Not specified] in [Printer Options] - [Print Options] - [Custom Gamma Adjustment].
- Applications that have been started before registering [Gamma Curve Name] must be restarted before printing.
- Some applications allow you to specify dot gain correction and gamma adjustment when printing or include this setting in an EPS file. To use the functions provided by an application, for Windows, uncheck [Custom Gamma Adjustment] in the [Job Options] tab of the printer driver. For macOS, select [Not specified] in [Printer Options] - [Print Options] - [Custom Gamma Adjustment].
- For Windows, the model name is displayed in the "Select Printer" list of the PS Gamma Adjuster Utility. If multiple identical models exist in [Devices and Printers], the registered [Gamma Curve Name] is valid for all identical models.

Registering a gamma curve name

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [PS Gamma Adjuster].
- 2 When the [User Account Control] screen is displayed, click [Yes].
- 3 Select [OKI *** PS] (where *** is your model name) from [Select Printer].
- 4 Click [New].
- 5 Adjust the halftone.
Adjust the halftone by editing the graph or inputting the gamma value and tone density in the text box.
- 6 Input the setting name in [Gamma Curve Name], and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Add].
- 8 Click [Apply].
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Click [Exit] to close the PS Gamma Adjuster Utility.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Start the PS Gamma Adjuster Utility.
- 2 Click [Edit Gamma Curve].
- 3 Adjust the halftone.
Adjust the halftone by editing the graph or inputting the gamma value and tone density in the text box.
- 4 Input the setting name in [Gamma Curve Name], and click [Save].
- 5 Click [Select PPD File].
- 6 Select a PPD file, and click [Open].
- 7 Select the gamma adjuster you created, and click [Add].
- 8 Click [Save].

- 9 Select [Printers & Scanners] from [System Preferences].
- 10 Delete the registered device to which the adjustment has been set, and then register it again.



- Do not click the [Config] button displayed while adding the printer.
- If a dialog box for selecting a printer option is displayed while adding a printer, click [Cancel] and then add the printer again.

Printing with registered halftone

For the Windows PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [More settings].
- 4 Check [Custom Gamma Adjustment] in the [Job Options] tab.
- 5 Select the registered Gamma curve name.
- 6 Specify other menus as necessary, and click [OK].
- 7 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen.

For the macOS PS printer driver

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select [Printer Options] - [Print Options].
- 4 Select the registered Gamma curve name from [Custom Gamma Adjustment].
- 5 Specify other settings as necessary, and click [Print].

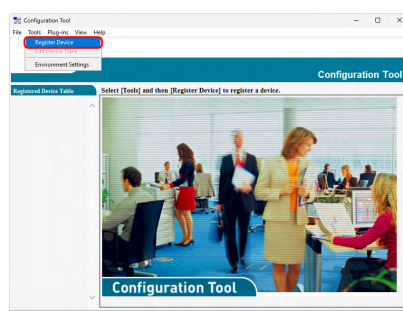
Configuration Tool

The Configuration Tool allows you to manage multiple machines and change their settings.

Registering this machine

Register this machine with the Configuration Tool when installing it for the first time.

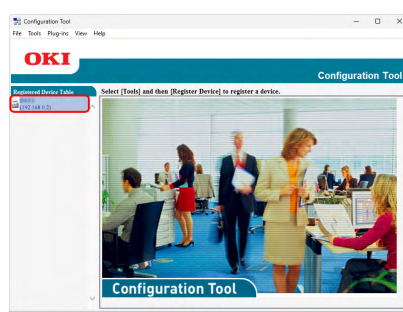
- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Register Device] from the [Tools] menu.



- 3 When registrable devices are displayed, select this machine, and click [Register].
- 4 Click [Yes] on the confirmation screen.

Starting the Configuration Tool

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select this machine from [Registered Device Table].



Checking the state of this machine

You can check the state and information of this machine.

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select this machine from [Registered Device Table].
- 3 Select the [Device Info] tab.



- When this machine is connected to a network, [Device Status] is displayed.

- To update the information, click [Update Device Information].

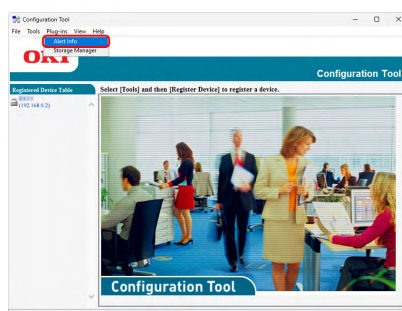
Displaying print completion on the PC



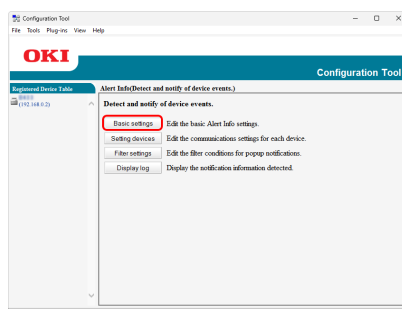
- The time and time zone of this machine must be consistent with your PC.

Basic settings

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Alert Info] from the [Plug-in] menu.



- 3 Select [Setup].

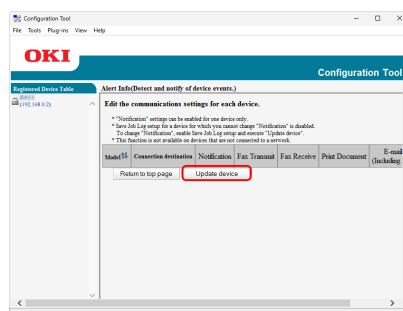


- 4 Change the settings as necessary.
- 5 Click [Update].

Device Settings

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Alert Info] from the [Plug-in] menu.
- 3 Select [Setting devices].

- 4 Click [Update device].

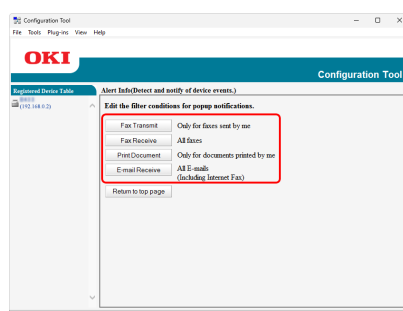


- 5 Click the device name you want to set.
- 6 Change the settings as necessary, and click [OK].

Filter Settings

You can set alert conditions to be displayed when an e-mail is received during printing.

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Alert Info] from the [Plug-in] menu.
- 3 Select [Filter settings].
- 4 Change the settings as necessary.



- 5 Click [OK].



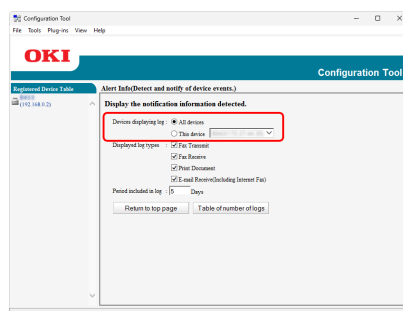
- Up to 100 senders can be registered as e-mail senders.

Checking logs

From the event log, you can check whether there are any records for this registered machine.

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Alert Info] from the [Plug-in] menu.
- 3 Select [Display log].

4 Select [Devices displaying log].



- You can check the total number of recorded events in [Table of number of logs].
- You can check the details of recorded logs in [Log details].

Registering forms (form overlay)

You can register a logo, etc., as a form file in this machine for overlay printing. This section explains how to register a form file.

 [Printing overlaid text or logos \(overlay printing\)\(P.162\)](#)



- This explanation is applicable to the Windows PS printer driver. (The printer's administrator privileges are required.)
- To use the Windows PCL printer driver, see "[Printing overlaid text or logos \(overlay printing\)](#)(P.162)".

Creating a form file

- 1 Open [Devices and Printers].
 [How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 2 Right-click on the [OKI *** PS] icon (where *** is your model name) and select [Printer Properties].
- 3 Select the [Port] tab, check [FILE:] from [Printing Port], and click [Apply].
- 4 Open the file to be created as a form.
- 5 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 6 Click [Advanced], and then click [Overlays] on the [Job Options] tab.
- 7 Select [Create Form] from the pull-down menu, and click [OK].
- 8 Printing starts.
- 9 When the screen for saving the file name is displayed, input a file name with an extension of ".prn", and then click [Save].
Example: C:¥temp¥form.prn

 - Files with any other extensions than ".prn" cannot be registered as forms.
- 10 When "Failed to encrypt print job" is displayed, select [Print without encryption], and then click [Enter].
- 11 Select the original port from [Printing Port] on the [Port] tab, and click [OK].

Registering a form with this machine using Configuration Tool

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Storage Manager] from the [Plug-in] menu.
- 3 Click the [New Project] icon.
- 4 Click the [Add File to Project] icon, and select the created form file.
The form will be added to the project.
- 5 Click the form file.
- 6 Select this machine in the window at the bottom of the Storage Manager plug-in screen.

 - When this machine is not registered with the Configuration Tool, see "[Registering this machine](#)(P.255)" to register it.
- 7 Click the [Send project files to printer] icon.
- 8 Click [OK].

Checking free space of memory/hard disk

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select [Storage Manager] from the [Plug-in] menu.
- 3 Click the device name on the device selection area.
The display shows the storage, volume name, size, free space, location name, usage, status, file name, size, comments, etc. by communicating with the device.

Registering the user name and password

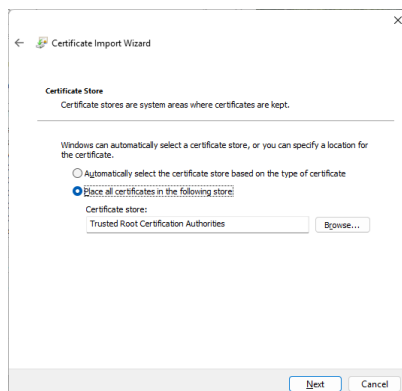
You can use the user name and password to restrict access to this machine.

The changed settings are reflected in this machine when the [Save to Device] icon is clicked.

Since HTTPS is used for the communication with this machine, it is necessary to import the certificate of this machine to the computer for correct operation.

Importing a certificate

- 1 Open [Control Panel], and click [View network status and tasks].
- 2 Click [Internet Options], then click the [Content] tab - [Certificate].
- 3 Click on the [Trusted Root Certification Authorities] tab, and then click [Import].
- 4 Pay attention to the following points, follow the wizard that appears, and import the certificate.
 - Select the certificate file to import from the file exported from this machine.
 - Check that [Place all certificates in the following store] is selected and [Trusted Root Certification Authorities] is set for the certificate store.



- 5 If the warning screen appears, click [Yes]; and then click [OK] on the screen indicating that importing was successful.

Creating a new user

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select this machine from [Registered Device Table].
- 3 Select the [User Setting] tab.
- 4 Click [Role management].
- 5 Input the admin password, and click [OK].
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)
- 6 Click [User Name/Group].
- 7 Click the [New(User)] icon.
- 8 Input the user name and password.
 Set other necessary information.
 Name: Input the display name.
 E-mail Address: Input the user's e-mail address.
 Language Code: Input the language code.
 PIN: Input the user's PIN.
 Role: Set the user's role.
 Group: Set the group to which the user belongs.

 - You can input the PIN as a user setting option.
 - "admin" cannot be registered as a new user name.
- 9 Click [OK].
- 10 Click the [Save to Device] icon.

Changing user settings

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select this machine from [Registered Device Table].
- 3 Select the [User Setting] tab.
- 4 Click [Role management].

- 5 Input the admin password, and click [OK].
 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)
- 6 Click [User Name/Group].
- 7 Select the user name to be changed.
- 8 Change the settings as necessary, and click [OK].
- 9 Click the [Save to Device] icon.

Deleting a user

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Select this machine from [Registered Device Table].
- 3 Select the [User Setting] tab.
- 4 Click [Role management].
- 5 Input the admin password, and click [OK].
 [Administrator Password](#)(P.195)
- 6 Click [User Name/Group].
- 7 Select the check box of the user to be deleted.
- 8 Click the [Delete] icon.
- 9 Click [Yes] on the confirmation screen.
- 10 Click the [Save to Device] icon.

Deleting this machine

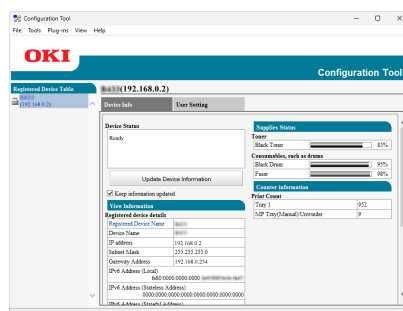
You can unregister this machine.

- 1 Click [Start], and select [All] - [OKI] - [Configuration Tool].
- 2 Right-click on this machine from [Registered Device Table].
- 3 Select [Remove device].
- 4 Click [Yes] on the confirmation screen.

Name and function of each screen

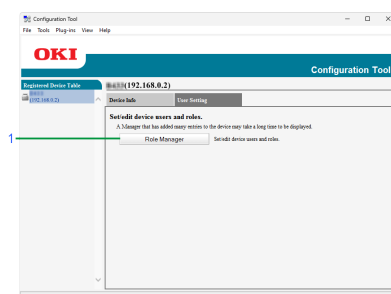
[Device Info] tab

Display the information related to this machine.



[User Setting] tab

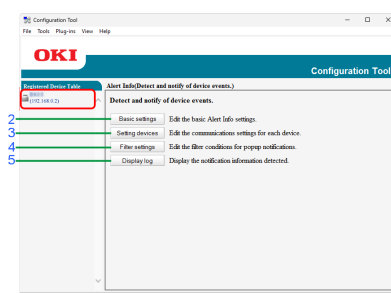
Set the user, role and so on.



No.	Item	Description
1	Role management	Register users and roles, and edit the user and role information.

[Alert Info] plug-in

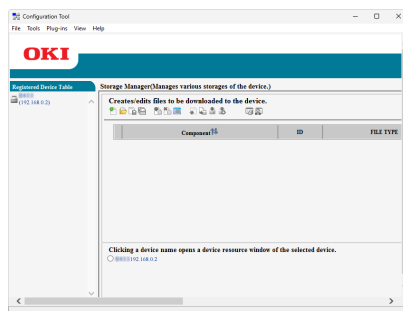
Detect and notify the event like the end of printing.



No.	Item	Description
2	Basic settings	Set the notification method, detection interval, etc.
3	Setting devices	Set the type and presence of the event notified by each machine.
4	Filter settings	Set filter conditions for pop-up notifications.
5	Display log	Display detected notification information.

[Storage Manager] plug-in

Register and edit files to be downloaded to the machine.



Icon description

Icon	Icon name	Description
	Create New Project	Create a new project.
	Add File to Project	Add files to a project.
	Send Project	Send a project to this machine.
	Save to Device	Save the settings to this machine.
	New (User)	Create a new user.
	Delete	Delete a user.

OKI LPR utility

With the OKI LPR utility, you can print via a network, manage print jobs, or check the state of this machine. To use the OKI LPR utility, TCP/IP must be enabled.



- The OKI LPR utility cannot be used for shared printers. Please use the standard TCP/IP port.

Starting the OKI LPR utility

- 1 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [OKI LPR Utility].

Registering this machine with the OKI LPR utility

Add this machine to the OKI LPR utility.

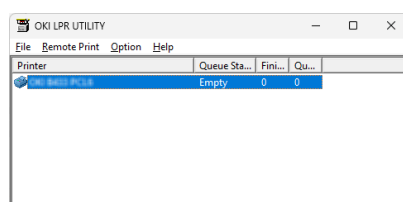


- Administrator privileges are required.
- If this machine cannot be added, exit the OKI LPR utility temporarily, right-click on [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [OKI LPR Utility], and select [More] - [Running As Administrator] to restart the utility.



- You cannot set a device that is already registered in the OKI LPR utility. To change the port, select [Confirm Connections] from [Remote Print].

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select [Add Printer] from the [Remote Print] menu.
When [User Account Control] screen is displayed, click [Yes].
- 3 Select [Printer Name].
Networked printers and printers connected to the LPR port will not be displayed.
- 4 Input [IP Address]. Or, click [Discovery], select the model name to be registered from [Discovered Printer], and click [OK].
- 5 If necessary, input the information to identify this machine in [Comment].
- 6 Click [OK].



Checking the state of the registered machine

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select this machine.
- 3 Select [Printer Status] from the [Remote Print] menu.

Transferring print data to the registered device

This section explains how to transfer the specified print data to a registered device using the OKI LPR utility. This section also explains how to transfer the print data to another device when a problem occurs to the destination device.



- Print data can be transferred only to devices with the same model name as your device.
- Before transferring print data, a device must be added.
- If you encrypt it before printing, the print data will not be printed correctly on other devices.

Transferring the selected print data

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select [Job Status] from the [Remote Print] menu.
- 3 Select the print data to be transferred, and select [Redirect] from [Job] menu.
- 4 Select the destination device, and click [OK].

Automatically transferring print data

When this machine cannot print since it is busy, offline, out of paper, etc., you can set the print data to be automatically transferred to another OKI machine.



- Administrator privileges are required.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select the machine to set.
- 3 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.
- 4 Click [Advanced].
- 5 Check [Automatic Job Redirect Used].
- 6 To transfer the print data only when an error occurs, check [Redirect only at the time of an error].
- 7 Click [Add].
- 8 Input the IP address of the destination device, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [OK].

Printing the same document from multiple registered devices

You can print from multiple devices with a single order.



- Administrator privileges are required.
- If you encrypt it before printing, the print data will not be printed correctly on other devices.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select the machine to set.
- 3 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.
- 4 Click [Detail Setup].
- 5 Check [Print to more than one printer at a time].
- 6 Click [Options].
- 7 Click [Add].
- 8 Input the IP address of the devices to print at the same time, and click [OK].
- 9 Click [OK].

Opening the web page of a registered device

You can open the web page of this machine from the OKI LPR utility.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select this machine.
- 3 Select [Web Setting] from the [Remote Print] menu.



- When the web port number is changed, the web page cannot be opened.
For details, see "[Setting the port number of the web page for the registered device](#)(P.267)".

Automatically following the IP address of the registered device

You can set to maintain the connection to the original device even if the IP address of this machine is changed.



- Administrator privileges are required.



- The IP address may be changed when the IP address is dynamically allocated by DHCP, or when the network administrator has manually changed the IP address of this machine.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select [Setup] from the [Option] menu.
- 3 Check [Auto Reconnect], and click [OK].

Setting the port number of the web page for the registered device

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select this machine.
- 3 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.
- 4 Click [Detail Setup].
- 5 Input the port number of web page in [Port Numbers].
- 6 Click [OK].

Sending files to this machine registered with the OKI LPR utility

If this machine is connected to the network and registered with the OKI LPR utility, you can download the print data.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select the download destination device.
- 3 Select [Download] from [Remote Print].
- 4 Select the file and click [Open].
The file is sent to this machine.

Deleting unnecessary print data

You can use the OKI LPR utility to delete unnecessary print data.

- 1 Start the OKI LPR utility.
- 2 Select this machine.
- 3 Select [Job Status] from the [Remote Print] menu.
- 4 Select the print data to be deleted.
- 5 Select [Delete Job] from the [Job] menu.

Uninstalling OKI LPR utility



- Administrator privileges are required.

- 1 Make sure the OKI LPR utility is closed.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [Uninstall OKI LPR Utility].
- 3 When [User Account Control] screen is displayed, click [Yes].
- 4 Click [Yes] on the confirmation screen.

Print Job Accounting Client

The Print Job Accounting Client is a program for setting the user information in the printer driver so as to use the job accounting function and the access control function of this machine.

For Windows

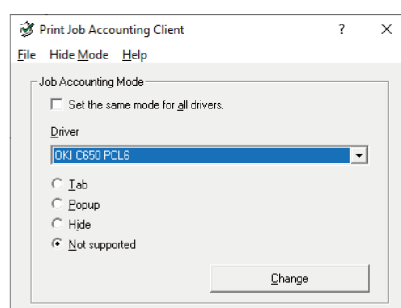
You can set the user name and user ID (PIN) in the printer driver.



- Since the job account mode will be disabled after the printer driver is updated or reinstalled, please reset the job account mode. However, when all printer drivers are set to the same mode, it is not necessary to reset the mode.

Setting the user name and user ID

You can set the user name and user ID using "Properties" in the printer driver.



- 1 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [Change Job Accounting Mode].
- 2 From the list of printer drivers, select the printer driver you want to set.
To set all printer drivers to the same mode, check [Set the same mode for all drivers].
- 3 Select [Tab], and click [Change].
A window is displayed.
- 4 Click [OK].
- 5 Select [Close] from the [File] menu.
- 6 Open [Devices and Printers].
[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)
- 7 Right-click on the printer icon, and select [Printer Properties].
- 8 Select the [Job Accounting] tab, input the user name and user ID, and click [OK].

Setting the pop-up mode

With this feature, each time you start printing, you need to enter a user name and a user ID.

- 1 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [Change Job Accounting Mode].
- 2 From the list of printer drivers, select the printer driver you want to set.

- 3 Select [Popup], and click [Change].
A window is displayed.
- 4 Click [OK].
- 5 Select [Close] from the [File] menu.

Setting the user ID for each user in the hide mode

The system administrator creates beforehand the ID file that describes the user ID and user name corresponding to the login user name for Windows. Since users are identified by this software, you do not have to enter a user name or ID when printing.

Please use the Hide mode with shared printers.

- 1 Create an ID file with the Notepad or spreadsheet software.



- ID files are listed in the following order.
Login user name (the user name input when logging into Windows), user ID (the user ID corresponding to the login user name), and the user name
- The user name can be omitted. When omitted, the user name will follow the login user name.
- Separate each item with a comma.
- For the spreadsheet software, input one login user name, one user ID, and one user name on each line.

- 2 Save the file in "CSV" format.

- 3 Click [Start], and then select [All] - [OKI] - [Change Job Accounting Mode].

- 4 From the list of printer drivers, select the printer driver you want to set.

To set all printer drivers to the same mode, check [Set the same mode for all drivers].

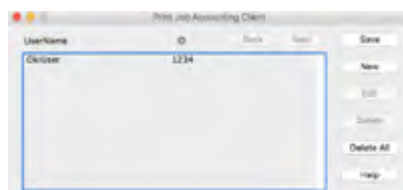


- When using a shared printer, do not use the function to set all printer drivers to the same mode. The account information is not output when you are printing from a shared printer client.

- 5 Select [Hide], and click [Change].
- 6 Click [OK].
- 7 Select [Import ID file] from the [Hide Mode] menu.
- 8 Specify the ID file created in Step 1, and click [Open].
- 9 Uncheck [Set fixed Job Account ID for all users] from the [Hide Mode] menu.
- 10 Select [Close] from the [File] menu.

For macOS

You can set the user name and user ID in the printer driver.



Registering the user ID

- 1 Start the Print Job Accounting Client.
- 2 Click [New].
- 3 Input your macOS login name, new user name and new user ID, and then click [Save].
- 4 Click [Save].
- 5 Exit the Print Job Accounting Client.

Registering multiple users simultaneously

You can register multiple user IDs and user names simultaneously using a CSV file.



- The following procedure uses TextEdit as an example.

- 1 Start the TextEdit.
- 2 Input the login name, user ID and user name in order, separated by commas.
- 3 Save the file in CSV format.
- 4 Start the Print Job Accounting Client.
- 5 Select [Import] from the [File] menu.
- 6 Select the CSV file created in Step 3 and click [Open].
- 7 Click [Save].
- 8 Exit the Print Job Accounting Client.

Changing the user ID and user name

- 1 Start the Print Job Accounting Client.
- 2 Select the user to be changed, and click [Edit].
- 3 Input the new user ID and user name, and then click [Save].
- 4 Click [Save].
- 5 Exit the Print Job Accounting Client.

Deleting the user ID and user name

- 1 Start the Print Job Accounting Client.
- 2 Select the user to be deleted, and click [Delete].
- 3 Click [Save].
- 4 Exit the Print Job Accounting Client.

Network Status Monitor

With the Network Status Monitor, you can check the status of the networked machine and the completion of printing.

To use it, TCP/IP must be enabled.

Starting the Network Status Monitor

- 1 Select [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [Network Status Monitor] to start the Network Status Monitor.
- 2 Click [Discovery].
- 3 From the list of found printers, select the printer whose status you want to check, and then click [OK].



- If [AutoStart] is checked in the display menu, when you start your computer and log in, the Network Status Monitor will automatically start and reconnect to the machine you were connected to when you last logged out.

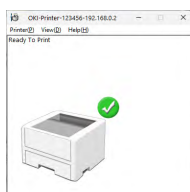
Checking the state of this machine

You can check the state of this machine from your PC.

- 1 Start the Network Status Monitor.
[Starting the Network Status Monitor\(P.271\)](#)

The status of the machine is displayed in the Network Status Monitor window and in the notification tray icon of Windows.

Display example of the Network Status Monitor window



Status illustration and notification icon

State	Illustration in the window	Notification icon
Normal		
Warning		
Error		
Not connected		

Displaying print completion on the PC



- The time and time zone of this machine must be consistent with your PC.

- 1 Start the Network Status Monitor.
- 2 Click [Display] - [Pop-up] - [Printing Completed], and then click [All Jobs] or [Jobs sent from my own PC] to make it checked.
- 3 Print a job from a PC to this machine.
- 4 When printing is complete, a completion message is displayed.



- The printing completion message is displayed for 5 seconds and then disappears automatically.
- It does not distinguish whether the printing was completed successfully or due to cancellation.

Printer Supply Manager

You can monitor the usage status of consumables and maintenance parts of the printer and keep the administrator notified.

Printer Supply Manager is available only for Windows.

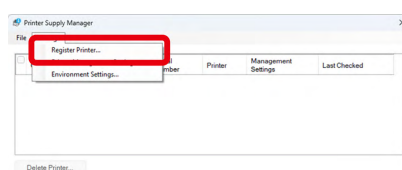
To use the notification feature, you need to exit the Printer Supply Manager screen. After completing the settings described in this section, be sure to exit the screen.

Installing

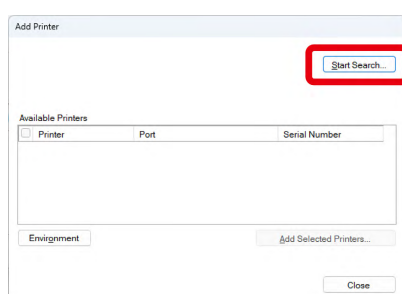
- 1 Unzip the .zip file downloaded from our website.
- 2 Run the setup.exe located in the unzipped folder.
- 3 Follow the installation screen displayed to proceed with the installation.

Registering the printer

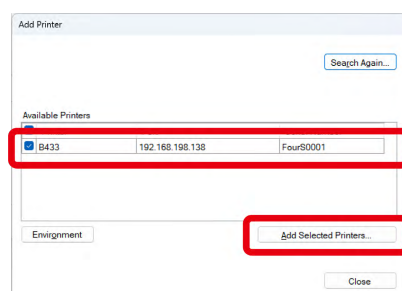
- 1 Click [Start] - [All] - [OKI] - [Printer Supply Manager] to start the Printer Supply Manager.
- 2 Click [Register printer] from the [Settings] menu.



- 3 Click [Discover Devices].

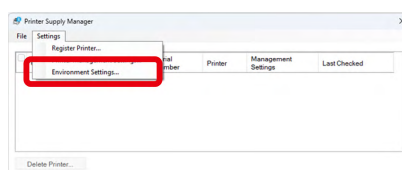


- 4 Select the discovered printer, and click [Add Selected Printers].



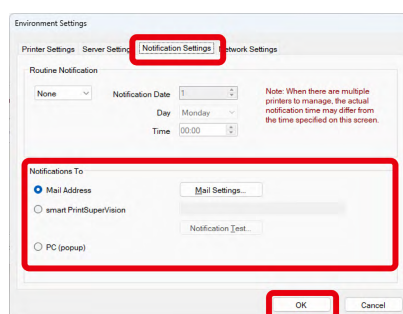
Setting the notified party for notifications about consumables/maintenance parts

- 1 Click [Environmental Settings] from the [Settings] menu.



- 2 Select the notified party from the [Notifications To] on the [Notification Settings] tab, and click [OK].

- Email address: Device data will be sent to the email address entered in [Mail Settings].
- smart PrintSuperVision: Device data will be sent to smart PrintSuperVision, an integrated management tool.
- PC (Popup): Device data will be displayed in a popup format on the PC.



Setting the notified party for notifications about consumables/maintenance parts (E-mail Address)

- 1 Click [Mail Settings] from [Notifications To] on the [Notification Settings] tab.
- 2 Input each item and click [OK].

- Destination Email Address: Email address to be notified
- Originating Email Address: Email address of the sender displayed in the notification email
- Display Name: E-mail sender ID displayed in the notification email
- Server Name: Server name or IP address of the SMTP server
- Port Number: Port number used for communication with the SMTP server
- Authentication Method: Authentication method when connecting to the SMTP server
- User Name: User name of the SMTP server
- Password: Password of the SMTP server
- Encrypt Communication: Encrypting the communication with the SMTP server



- Consult your network administrator for any questions regarding the SMTP server settings.

- Click [OK] on the [Notification Settings] tab.

Periodical notification of the usage status of consumables/maintenance parts

You can set periodical notifications at specific time intervals.

This setting operates regardless of the usage of consumables and maintenance parts, so it can keep you notified of the usage status of consumables and maintenance parts periodically.

- Click [Environmental Settings] from the [Settings] menu.
- Select your desired notification setting from [Notification Settings] - [Notify Periodically], and click [OK].

- Click [x] in the upper right corner of the screen to exit the Printer Supply Manager.

Notification based on the usage status of consumables/maintenance parts

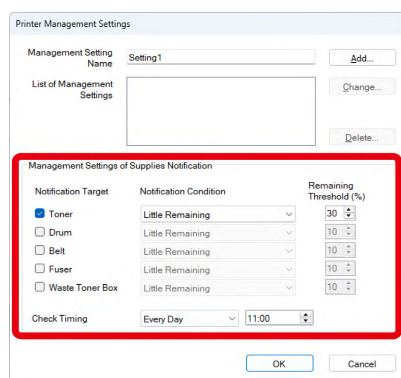
You can set notifications based on the usage status of consumables and maintenance items.

This setting only operates when the usage status of consumables and maintenance parts meets the specified conditions, so it can keep you notified of the specified usage status of consumables and maintenance parts.

- Click [Printer Management Settings] from the [Settings] menu.

- Input any name for the management setting.

- 3 Set the conditions for notifications in [Management Settings of Supplies Notification].
Example) If you want to be notified when the toner level drops below 30%, set it up as follows.



- 4 Click [Add] to save the settings, and then click [OK].

To change the conditions for notifications you have set, change the settings, click [Change], and then click [OK].

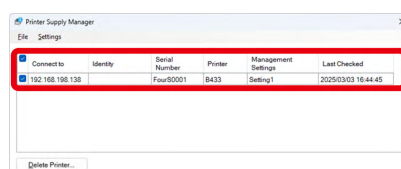


- Click [Add] or [Change] to apply the settings.

- 5 Double-click on the cell of the [Management Settings] for the printer to be notified, and input the management setting name added in Step 3.

In addition to [Management Settings], you can also change the name of [Identification].

Since this is the information that identifies the printer upon notification, it is recommended to input/change it as necessary.



- 6 Click [x] in the upper right corner of the screen to exit the Printer Supply Manager.

8

Printing from a mobile device

Printing with Mobile Print..... 278

Printing with AirPrint..... 281

Printing with Mopria Print Service 285

Printing with IPP Everywhere..... 288

Printing with Print Plugin 291

Printing with Mobile Print

Mobile Print is an application that allows you to print photos, images, etc. stored on your smartphone, tablet or other mobile devices, web pages displayed on the web browser, and photos taken with the built-in camera directly onto an OKI printer or MFP from your smartphone, tablet or other mobile devices.

Mobile Print is now available on App Store and Google Play.



- The Android version can also be downloaded from our website.

For details on the procedure, please refer to the "Mobile Print WebManual" on our website.

Printing by connecting to an access point

- 1 Connect the mobile device to the same network as this machine.
You can connect it to the wireless LAN access point in the same network as this machine, or directly to this machine via Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct).
 - [Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)
 - [Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)
 - [Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)
- 2 Register this machine in the app and set it as the output destination.
If it has already been registered, only the destination is set.
- 3 Select the target you want to print.
- 4 Tap [Print].

Printing with the NFC function



- Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.

If your mobile device supports the NFC function, you can print using the NFC function of this machine.

To print using the NFC function, it is necessary to set [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] to [Enable] for this machine.



- [Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)] cannot be used simultaneously with [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)].

Enabling Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)

- 1 Check that "Ready To Print" appears on the display.

 - If the machine is in the power save mode, press «OK» to restore.
- 2 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ on the operator panel several times to select [Wireless Setting], and press «OK».
- 3 Check that [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] is selected, and press «OK».
- 4 Press ▲ or ▼ to input the admin password, and press «OK».
[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)
- 5 Select [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)], and press «OK».

- 6 Select [Enable], and then press «OK».
- 7 Press «CANCEL» to return to the standby screen.

Printing with this machine registered with the app

- 1 Enable the NFC function of your mobile device, and enable Wi-Fi.
- 2 Bring the NFC antenna of the mobile device close to the NFC mark on this machine.
This machine is registered to the mobile device application. If it has already been registered, only the destination is set.



- For iOS, it is necessary to display the NFC reading screen on the application in advance.

- 3 Select the target you want to print.
- 4 Tap [Print].



- As the position of the NFC antenna differs for each mobile device, please refer to the manual of your mobile device for further details.
- If the printing has failed, check the Wi-Fi settings of your mobile device, and register this machine with the application again.

Troubleshooting for Mobile Print



- It may take two or three minutes for this machine to join a network after it is turned on. Make sure that the machine is connected to the network before attempting to print.

Cannot register this machine using the NFC function



- Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the wireless setting of this machine set to Wi-Fi Direct?	Enable Wi-Fi Direct.	Printing with Mobile Print(P.278)
Is the NFC setting of this machine set to [Enable]?	Check the status of [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [NFC Setup] on this machine. If [Disable] is displayed, the NFC function is not available. Set it to [Enable].	-
Is the wireless setting of the mobile device enabled?	Enable the wireless setting on your mobile device.	-

Unable to print

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on(P.73) Turning the power off(P.73)

Cause	Solution	Reference
When you are printing with the NFC function, are this machine and the mobile device set to communicate via Wi-Fi Direct?	Enable Wi-Fi Direct of this machine. Enable Wi-Fi on the mobile device and set the connection destination to this machine.	🔗 Printing with Mobile Print(P.278)
Is there any paper?	Check that the out-of-paper message is not displayed.	🔗 Error message list(P.350) 🔗 When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is there any toner?	Check that the out-of-toner message is not displayed.	🔗 Error message list(P.350) 🔗 When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is any error displayed?	Check the error message.	🔗 Error message list(P.350) 🔗 When an error message appears on the display(P.349)

Printing with AirPrint

With AirPrint, you can print without installing a printer driver.

This section gives an overview of AirPrint and describes its basic settings.

About AirPrint

AirPrint is a function that allows you to easily print from macOS or iOS. Mobile devices and Mac computers automatically detect this machine.

With AirPrint, you can easily print photos, emails, web pages, and anything else that appears on your screen with just two or three taps on the screen.

To use this function, you need to connect this machine to a mobile device or Mac computer with a wired LAN, wireless LAN or USB cable.

For details about AirPrint, please visit the Apple website.

1. Setting AirPrint

1 Connect this machine to the same network as the mobile device.

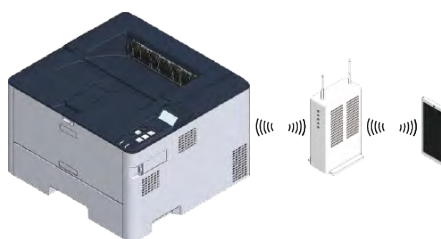
Connect this machine and the mobile device via a wireless LAN access point or directly with a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct).

Connect this machine and the access point via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] or [Wired LAN].

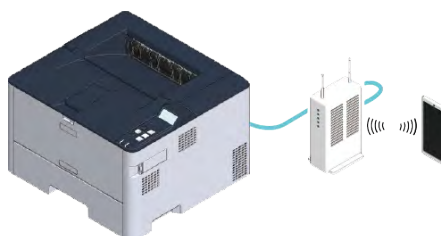
To connect via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)], please set [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)



To connect via a wired LAN, connect this machine and the access point with a LAN cable.



To connect via [Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)], please set [Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)] in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)



- 2 To use it from a Mac, connect this machine with the Mac.
 - 3 To print with AirPrint, make settings from the mobile device.
- Go to "3. Printing with AirPrint(P.282)".

2. Registering this machine on Mac

When using AirPrint for the first time, register this machine on your Mac.

- 1 Turn on the power of this machine and the PC.
- 2 Connect this machine and the PC via a wireless or wired LAN.
- 3 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.
- 4 Click [Printers & Scanners].
- 5 Click [Add Printer, Scanner or Fax].
- 6 Select the model name of this machine, and click [Add].
- 7 Make sure that the model name of this machine is displayed in [Printer] and that [(your model name)-AirPrint] is displayed in [Type].
- 8 Close [Printers & Scanners].

3. Printing with AirPrint

To AirPrint from a Mac, register this machine on the Mac in advance.

[2. Registering this machine on Mac\(P.282\)](#)

Printing from an iOS device

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2  Tap (Operation).
- 3  Tap (Print).

The model name of the previously used printer on the same network is displayed.



- When printing for the first time or when a model name other than this machine is displayed, select this machine in Step 4.

- 4 Tap [Printer], and select the model of this machine.
- 5 Set the required items.

6 Tap [Print].

Printing from Mac

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Select the model name of this machine from [Printer].
- 4 Set the required items.
- 5 Click [Print].

Troubleshooting for AirPrint



- It may take two or three minutes for this machine to join a network after it is turned on. Make sure that the machine is connected to the network before attempting to print.
- If you are using macOS or iOS, please update the software to the latest version before printing.

"No AirPrint Printers Found" is displayed on the iOS device

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on(P.73) Turning the power off(P.73)
Is this machine connected to the same network as the iOS device?	Check if this machine is displayed on the iOS print screen. If this machine is not displayed, check the IP address.	-

Unable to print

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on(P.73) Turning the power off(P.73)
Is this machine connected to the same network as the iOS device?	Check if this machine is displayed on the iOS print screen. If this machine is not displayed, check the IP address.	-
Is the latest firmware installed?	Make sure that the firmware of this machine and the software of macOS and iOS are of the latest versions. If they are not of the latest versions, please update them to the latest versions from our website or Apple's website.	-
Is there any paper?	Check that the out-of-paper message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is there any toner?	Check that the out-of-toner message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is AirPrint set to [Enable]?	Press the scroll button on the operator panel several times to check the status of [AirPrint]. If [Disable] is displayed, AirPrint cannot be used.	-
Is any error displayed?	Check the error message.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is the lockout function enabled?	When [Access Control] and [Lockout Function] are set to [Enable] and [IPP Authentication] is set to [Basic], the lockout times of this machine may be fewer than the lockout times set when the machine is logged in from an IPP-based application.	Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine(P.417)

Printing with Mopria Print Service

With Mopria Print Service, you can print from Android or Windows to a Mopria™ certified printer. This section gives an overview of Mopria Print Service and describes its basic settings.

About Mopria Print Service

Mopria Print Service is an application that allows you to print to Mopria™ certified multifunction printers from many manufacturers. It is not required to install a printer driver. Mopria Print Service is now available on Google Play. Visit <https://www.mopria.org> for details.

1. Setting Mopria Print Service

1 Connect this machine to the same network as the mobile device.

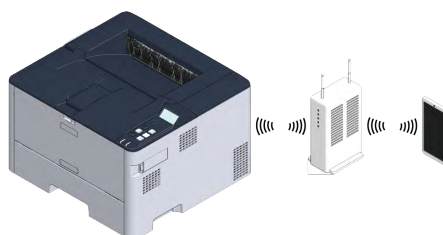
Connect this machine and the mobile device via a wireless LAN access point or directly with [Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)].

Connect this machine and the access point via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] or [Wired LAN].

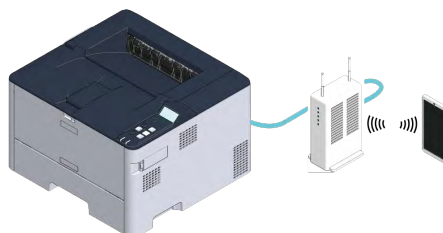
To connect via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)], please set [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)



To connect via a wired LAN, connect this machine and the access point with a LAN cable.



To connect via a Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct), please set the Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)



2 To use from a Windows, connect this machine to the Windows.

3 To print using the Mopria Print Service, configure the settings from the mobile device.

Go to "3. Printing with Mopria Print Service(P.286)".

2. Registering this machine with a Windows

When using the Mopria Print Service for the first time, register this machine in Windows.

- 1 Turn on the power of this machine and the PC.
- 2 Connect this machine and the PC via a wireless or wired LAN.
- 3 Open [Start] - [All] - [Settings].
- 4 Click [Printers & Scanners] from [Bluetooth & devices].
- 5 Click [Add device].
- 6 Select the model name of this machine, and click [Add device].
- 7 Check that the model name of this machine is displayed in [Printers & Scanners].
- 8 Close [Settings].

3. Printing with Mopria Print Service

To use Mopria Print Service from a Windows, register this machine on the Windows in advance.

 [2. Registering this machine with a Windows\(P.286\)](#)

Printing from Android

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Tap [⋮].
- 3 Tap [Print].
- 4 The model name of the previously used printer on the same network is displayed.
When printing for the first time or when a model name other than this machine is displayed, select this machine in Step 5.
- 5 Select the model of this machine.
- 6 Set the required items.
- 7 Tap [Print].

Printing from Windows

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
- 3 Click [Print].
- 4 Select the model of this machine.
- 5 Set the required items.
- 6 Click [Print].

Troubleshooting for Mopria Print Service



- It may take two or three minutes for this machine to join a network after it is turned on. Make sure that the machine is connected to the network before attempting to print.
- For Android, please update the software to the latest version before printing.

When "No Mopria Printer Found" is displayed on an Android or Windows

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on(P.73) Turning the power off(P.73)
Is the machine connected to the same network as the Android device?	Check if this machine is displayed on the Android print screen. If this machine is not displayed, check the IP address. If the network is not connected to the Internet, select [Yes] in [Do you wish to stay connected?] on the notification screen of the Android device.	-
Is the latest firmware installed?	Check that the firmware of this machine or the Android software is of the latest versions. If it is not of the latest version, update it to the latest versions.	-
Is there any paper?	Check that the out-of-paper message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is there any toner?	Check that the out-of-toner message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is Mopria set to [Enable]?	Check the status of [Network Setup] - [Mopria] from the web page of this machine. If [Disable] is displayed, Mopria is not available.	Managing the machine from the web page(P.200)
Is any error displayed?	Check the error message.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is the Android's print service set to [Enable]?	Check the status of [Default Print Service] or [Mopria Print Service] from the Android's print service. If [Disable] is displayed, Mopria is not available.	-
Is the lockout function enabled?	When [Access Control] and [Lockout Function] are set to [Enable] and [IPP Authentication] is set to [Basic], the lockout times of this machine may be fewer than the lockout times set when the machine is logged in from an IPP-based application.	Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine(P.417)

Printing with IPP Everywhere

IPP Everywhere allows you to print from Linux or Chromebook to IPP Everywhere™ compatible printers. This section describes basic settings of IPP Everywhere.

1. Setting IPP Everywhere

1 Connect this machine to the same network as the mobile device.

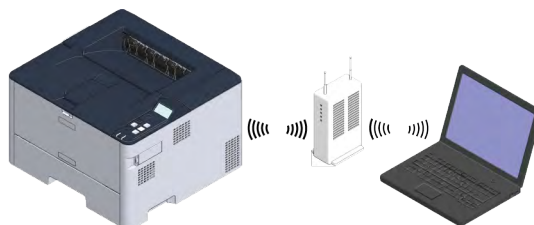
Connect this machine and the mobile device via a wireless LAN access point or directly with [Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)].

Connect this machine and the access point via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] or [Wired LAN].

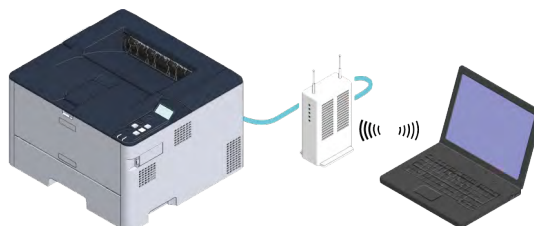
To connect via [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)], please set [Wireless LAN (Infrastructure)] in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)



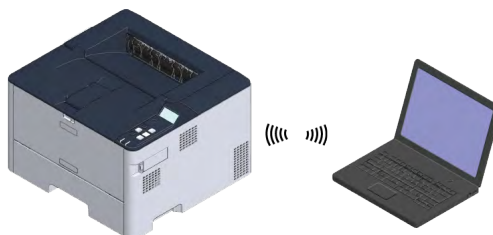
When connecting via a wired LAN, connect this machine to the access point with a LAN cable.



To connect via a Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct), please set the Wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) in advance.

[Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)

[Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)



2 To use it from Chromebook, connect this machine to Chromebook.

3 To print with IPP Everywhere, configure the settings from the mobile device.

Go to "[3. Printing with IPP Everywhere\(P.289\)](#)".

2. Registering this machine with Chromebook

When using IPP Everywhere for the first time, register this machine on your Chromebook.

- 1 Turn on the power of this machine and the PC.
- 2 Connect this machine and the PC via a wireless or wired LAN.
- 3 Open [Settings].
- 4 Click [Devices] from the left menu.
- 5 Click [Print].
- 6 Select the model name of this machine, and click [Save].
- 7 Check that the model name of this machine is displayed in [Your saved printers].
- 8 Close [Settings].

3. Printing with IPP Everywhere

To use IPP Everywhere from Chromebook, register this machine with your Chromebook in advance.

[2. Registering this machine with Chromebook](#)(P.288)

You can print from Linux by following the same procedure.

Printing from Chromebook

- 1 Open the file to be printed.
- 2 Click [⋮].
- 3 Click [Print].
- 4 Select the model of this machine.
- 5 Set the required items.
- 6 Click [Print].

Troubleshooting for IPP Everywhere



- It may take two or three minutes for this machine to join a network after it is turned on. Make sure that the machine is connected to the network before attempting to print.
- For Linux or Chromebook, please update the software to the latest version before printing.

"Printer not found" is displayed on Linux or Chromebook

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on (P.73) Turning the power off (P.73)
Is the machine connected to the same network as the Linux or Chromebook device?	Check if this machine is displayed on the print screen of Linux or Chromebook. If this machine is not displayed, check the IP address.	-
Is the latest firmware installed?	Check that the firmware of this machine or the software of Linux or Chromebook is of the latest versions. If it is not of the latest version, update it to the latest versions.	-

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is there any paper?	Check that the out-of-paper message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is there any toner?	Check that the out-of-toner message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is IPP Everywhere set to [Enable]?	Check the status of [Network Setup] - [IPP Everywhere] from the web page of this machine. If [Disable] is displayed, IPP Everywhere is not available.	Managing the machine from the web page(P.200)
Is any error displayed?	Check the error message.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
If you are using Linux, is the CUPS service set to [Enable]?	Check the status of the CUPS service installed on Linux. If the CUPS service is not installed, please install the latest version.	-
If you are using Chromebook, are this machine and your Chromebook connected to the Internet?	Check that this machine and your Chromebook are both connected to the Internet. IPP Everywhere is not available if they are not connected to the Internet.	Visit Chromebook's official website for details.
Is the lockout function enabled?	When [Access Control] and [Lockout Function] are set to [Enable] and [IPP Authentication] is set to [Basic], the lockout times of this machine may be fewer than the lockout times set when the machine is logged in from an IPP-based application.	Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine(P.417)

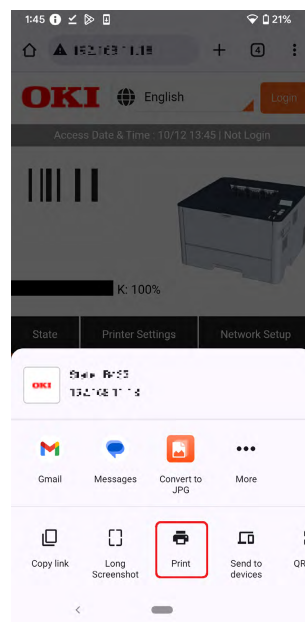
Printing with Print Plugin

With Print Plugin, you can print to an OKI printer from an Android mobile device. Print Plugin is now available on our website or Google Play.



Printing by connecting to an access point

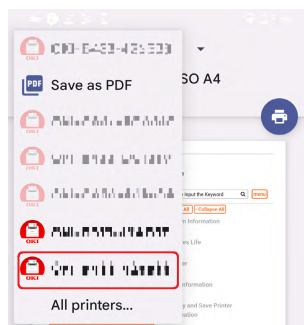
- 1 Connect the mobile device to the same network as this machine.
You can connect it to the wireless LAN access point in the same network as this machine, or directly to this machine via [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)].
 - [Connection form via a wireless LAN\(P.45\)](#)
 - [Connecting via an access point \(Infrastructure\)\(P.46\)](#)
 - [Connecting directly with this machine \(Wi-Fi Direct\)\(P.58\)](#)
- 2 Open the file to be printed.
- 3 Tap [⋮] on the upper right corner of the screen.
- 4 Tap [Print].



- 5 Tap the printer.

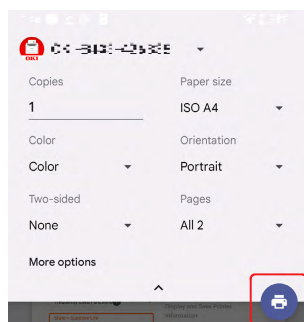


6 Select the printer you want to print to.



7 Set the required items.

8 Tap the [Printer] icon.



Troubleshooting for Print Plugin



- It may take two or three minutes for this machine to join a network after it is turned on. Make sure that the machine is connected to the network before attempting to print.

Printer not found

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is the power supply of this machine turned on?	Turn on the power supply of this machine. If the power supply is on, turn it off and then back on, and then check if the problem is resolved.	Turning the power on(P.73) Turning the power off(P.73)
Is the wireless setting of the mobile device enabled?	Enable the wireless setting on your mobile device.	-
Is the Android's print service set to [Enable]?	Check the status of [Print Plugin] from the Android's print service. If it is set to [Disable], change it to [Enable].	-

Unable to print

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is there any paper?	Check that the out-of-paper message is not displayed.	Error message list(P.350) When an error message appears on the display(P.349)

Cause	Solution	Reference
Is there any toner?	Check that the out-of-toner message is not displayed.	🔗 Error message list(P.350) 🔗 When an error message appears on the display(P.349)
Is any error displayed?	Check the error message.	🔗 Error message list(P.350) 🔗 When an error message appears on the display(P.349)

9

Maintenance

Precautions for replacing consumables and maintenance parts	295
Service life and replacement cycle of consumables	296
Replacing toner cartridges	298
Replacing the image drum	300
Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge	305
Service life and replacement cycle of maintenance parts	310
Replacing the maintenance kit	312
Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 1)	319
Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 2/3/4 (Optional))	324
Replacing the paper feed roller (MP Tray)	329
Cleaning the main unit and the parts	333
Updating software	344
Deleting software	345
Firmware update	347

Precautions for replacing consumables and maintenance parts

Note the following points during the replacement.

 WARNING	
	Do not throw the toner or toner cartridge in fire. Toner may fly off, thus causing burns.
	Do not store the toner cartridge in a place with fire. Doing so may cause a fire or burns.
	Do not clean up spilled toner using an electric vacuum cleaner. Otherwise, a fire may be caused due to sparks from the electrical contacts. Wipe off and remove the toner spilled on the floor using a wet cloth.

 CAUTION	
	There are high-temperature parts inside the machine. Do not touch the area with the "Caution: High Temperature" label. Doing so may cause burns.
	As the fuser unit may be hot, be cautious during operation and always hold the handle to lift it. When it is hot, wait until it cools down before any operation.
	Keep the toner cartridge out of the reach of children. If children swallow toner by mistake, immediately consult a physician.
	When toner is inhaled, gargle with a lot of water and move the person to a place with fresh air. Consult a physician as necessary.
	When toner gets contact with the skin of your hands etc., wash it off with soapy water.
	If toner gets into your eyes, immediately wash it off with a large quantity of water. Consult a physician as necessary.
	When toner is swallowed, exhale the toner. Consult a physician as necessary.
	When clearing a paper jam or replacing the toner cartridge, take care that your hands and clothes are not stained with toner. When clothes are stained with toner, wash them in cold water. Heating it like washing in hot water may dye the toner on clothes, and the stains may not be removed easily.
	Do not disassemble the image drum or toner cartridge. Doing so may scatter the toner, which may be inhaled by people or may stain clothes or hands.
	Store the used toner cartridge in a bag such that toner does not scatter.



- Please use genuine OKI genuine consumables for optimum performance.
- Failures caused by using non-genuine consumables may void the warranty or maintenance contract. (The use of non-genuine consumables will not necessarily cause failures, but please fully take notice of such usage.)

Service life and replacement cycle of consumables

Toner cartridge

Service life of the toner cartridge

The number of printable pages of a toner cartridge is based on the condition that continuous printing is done on 1-sided A4 paper according to the data of "ISO/IEC 19752". The number of printable pages may vary with the actual printing conditions (*).

* Printing conditions: content of printed documents, printer driver settings, user's operating environment, OS environment, operational adjustments during power ON/OFF or cover opening/closing, etc.

To check the remaining toner amount, select [Menus] - [Configuration] - [Supplies Life] - [Toner] on the operator panel.

Replacement cycle of the toner cartridge

When the time for replacement is approaching or has arrived, the following message appears on the display.

	When the time for replacement is approaching	→	When the time for replacement has arrived
Displayed message	Toner Low.	→	The toner cartridge is empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
Response to the message	Prepare a new toner cartridge.	→	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
State of this machine	Printing is possible, but the remaining toner is low.	→	The toner cartridge is empty. Printing stops.

About 180 pages can be printed from when the time for replacement is approaching to when the time for replacement has arrived. (reference value for A4_ISO pattern_simplex printing)



- Printing quality will decline after the toner cartridge stays unpacked for one year or longer. Therefore, prepare a new toner cartridge.
- Please use genuine OKI genuine consumables for optimum performance.
- Failures caused by using non-genuine consumables may void the warranty or maintenance contract. (The use of non-genuine consumables will not necessarily cause failures, but please fully take notice of such usage.)
- Replace the toner cartridge immediately when a message indicating replacement of the toner cartridge is displayed and printing has stopped.

If you repeatedly open and close the top cover so that you can continue printing temporarily, a failure may be caused or the print quality may be degraded.

In addition, after a certain period of time, printing will be disabled even if you open and close the top cover. (The printable period of time varies with the usage condition.)

 [Replacing toner cartridges](#)(P.298)

Image drum

Service life of the image drum

The image drum can print approximately 30,000 sheets of A4-sized paper (for simplex printing), but the actual printable number of sheets may vary with the usage condition.

The above number of printable pages is based on the condition that 3 sheets are printed at a time on 1-sided A4 paper (continuous printing). If one sheet is printed at a time, the yield may reduce to approximately half or less depending on the printing conditions (*).

* Printing conditions: content of printed documents, printer driver settings, user's operating environment, OS

environment, operational adjustments during power ON/OFF or cover opening/closing, etc.

To check the life of the image drum, select [Menus] - [Configuration] - [Supplies Life] - [Drum] on the operator panel.

Replacement cycle of the image drum

When the time for replacement is approaching or has arrived, the following message appears on the display.

	When the time for replacement is approaching	→	When the time for replacement has arrived
Displayed message	Image Drum Near Life.	→	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Replace the image drum with a new one.
Response to the message	Prepare a new image drum.	→	Replace the image drum with a new one.
State of this machine	Printing is possible, but the image drum is approaching the end of its service life.	→	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Printing stops.

About 1,000 pages can be printed from when the time for replacement is approaching to when the time for replacement has arrived. (When printing under general usage conditions with factory default settings)



- Printing quality will decline after the image drum stays unpacked for one year or longer. Therefore, prepare a new image drum.
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (About 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Please use genuine OKI genuine consumables for optimum performance.
- Failures caused by using non-genuine consumables may void the warranty or maintenance contract. (The use of non-genuine consumables will not necessarily cause failures, but please fully take notice of such usage.)
- Replace the image drum immediately when a message indicating replacement of the image drum is displayed and printing has stopped.

If you repeatedly open and close the top cover so that you can continue printing temporarily, a failure may be caused or the print quality may be degraded.

In addition, after a certain period of time, printing will be disabled even if you open and close the top cover. (The printable period of time varies with the usage condition.)

- If [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Panel Setup] - [Near Life Status] is set to [Disable], a message indicating the time for replacement will not be displayed.



- You can change the timing for displaying a message indicating the time for replacement of the image drum. The factory default setting is [1000].
This timing can be set from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Near Life Setup] - [Drum Near Life Timing] on the operator panel.
The setting range is from 500 to 5,000 (in increments of 500).

 [Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge\(P.305\)](#)

Replacing toner cartridges

1 Prepare a new toner cartridge.

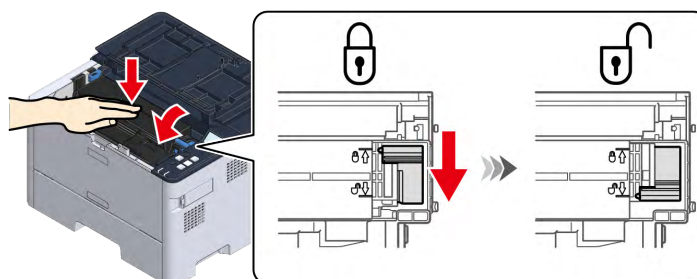
2 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



3 Press the toner cartridge from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side in the direction of the unlock mark until it stops.



4 Lift the right side of the toner cartridge, and gently pull the toner cartridge out.

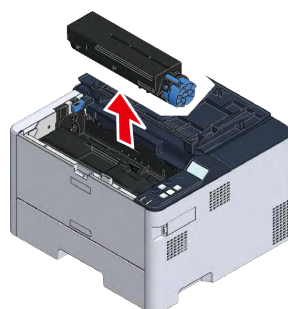


WARNING

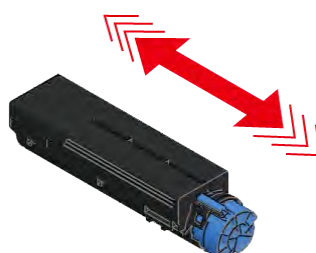
Burns may be caused.



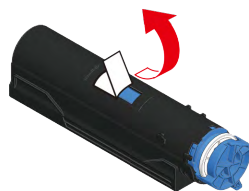
Never throw a used toner cartridge in fire. The toner inside may scatter or even explode, thus resulting in burns.



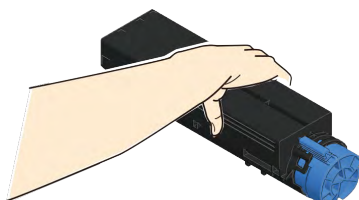
5 Remove the new toner cartridge from its packaging bag, and shake it horizontally to even out the toner inside.



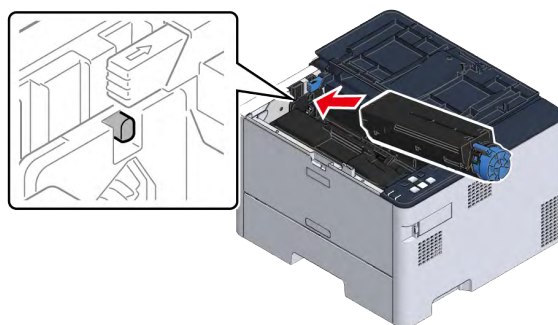
- 6** Remove the protective tape on the bottom while keeping the toner cartridge level.



- 7** Hold the toner cartridge with the flat part facing up and the blue lever on the right side.



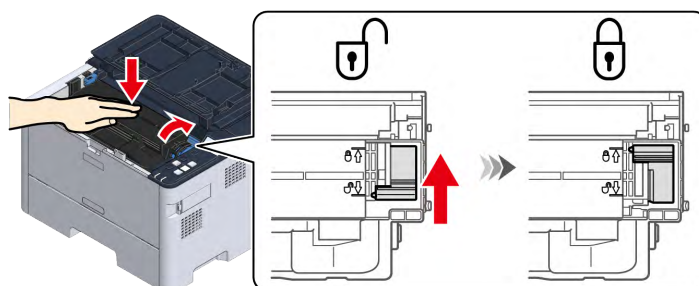
- 8** Tilt the left side of the toner cartridge downward, insert the toner cartridge so that it is pressed against the protrusion on the image drum, and then lower its right side.



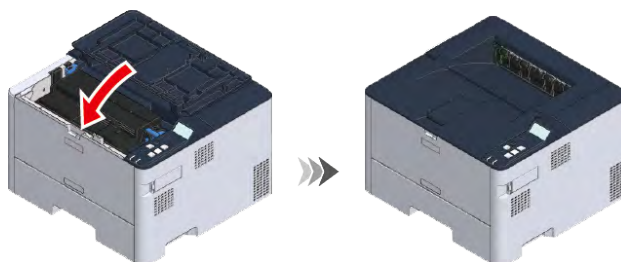
- 9** Press the toner cartridge from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side in the direction of the lock mark until it stops.



- If the toner cartridge is not installed correctly, the toner cartridge lever will not rotate.



- 10** Close the top cover (front).



- Please recycle the used toner cartridge.

Replacing the image drum

This section explains how to only replace the image drum with a new one, and continue using the existing toner cartridge.

Refer to "[Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge](#)(P.305)" if you want to replace both the image drum and toner cartridge with new ones.



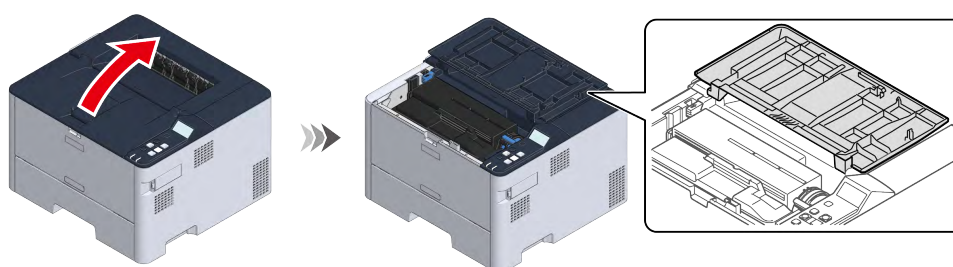
- If you attach the existing toner cartridge to a new image drum, the remaining amount of the toner cartridge may not be displayed correctly. In addition, "Toner low." or "Toner Empty. Waste Toner Full." may be displayed after the replacement.
- Please use genuine OKI consumables for optimum performance.
- Failures caused by using non-genuine consumables may void the warranty or maintenance contract. (The use of non-genuine consumables will not necessarily cause failures, but please fully take notice of such usage.)

1 Prepare a new image drum.

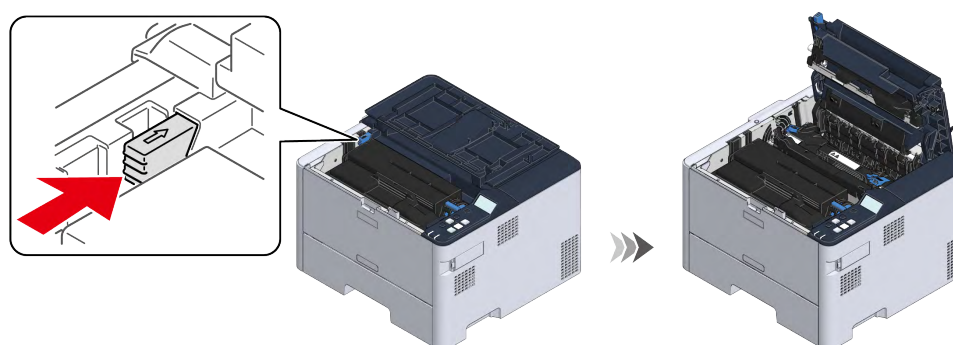
2 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



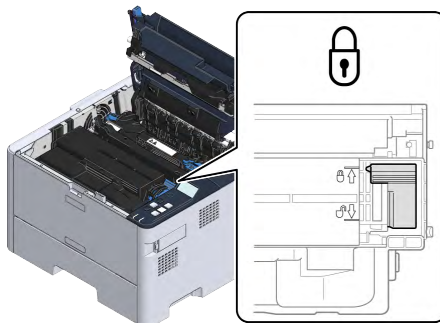
3 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



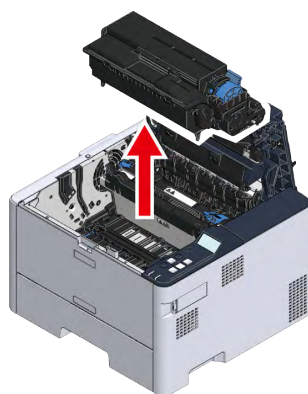
- 4** Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



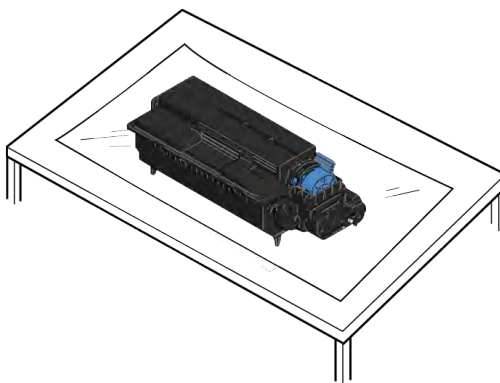
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 5** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



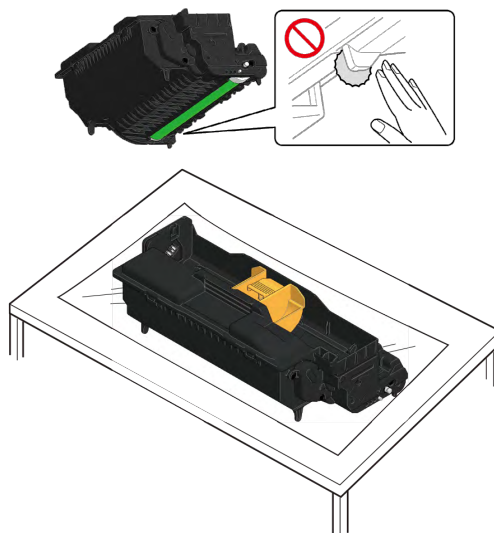
- 6** Place the image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface covered with newspaper or the like.



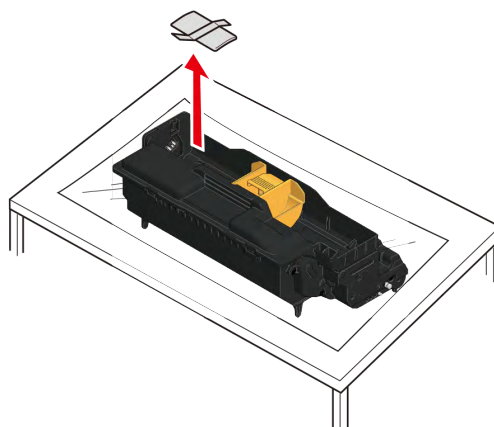
- 7** Remove the new image drum from its packaging bag, and then place it on a flat surface covered with newspaper or the like.



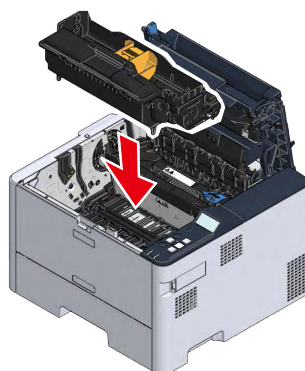
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



- 8** Take out the desiccant.



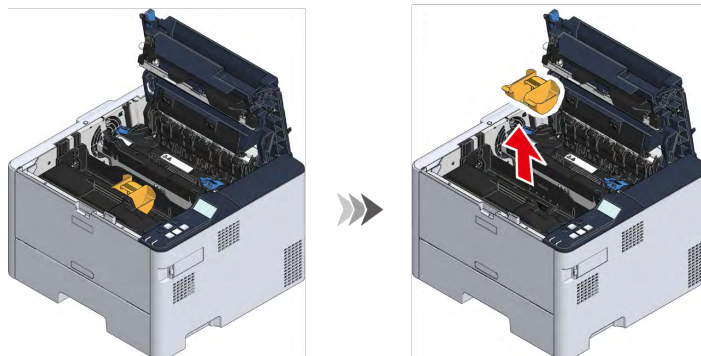
- 9** Install the new image drum into the main unit.



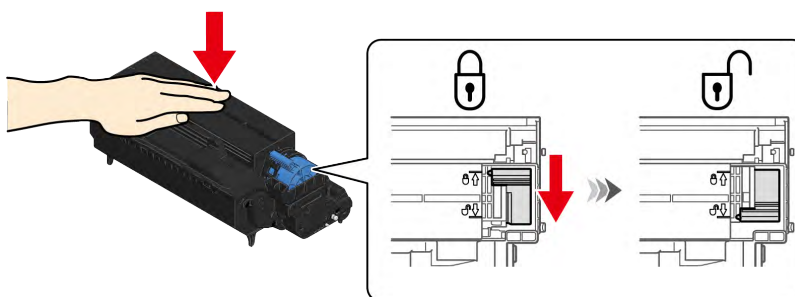
10 Remove the toner cover attached to the new image drum.



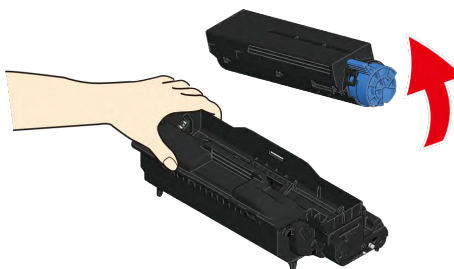
- Handle the toner cover with your both hands and be careful not to hit it on surrounding objects. The toner on the toner cover may scatter and stain your clothes.



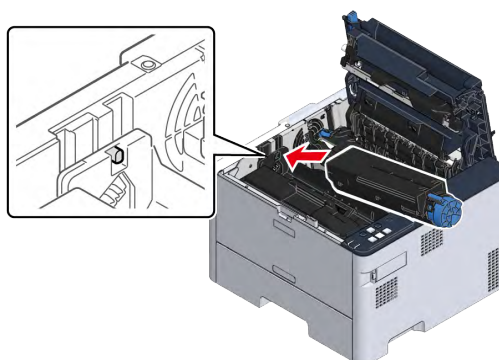
11 For the used image drum and toner cartridge removed in Steps 5-6, press them down from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge in the direction of the unlock mark until it stops.



12 While pressing down the image drum, remove the toner cartridge by lifting its right side.



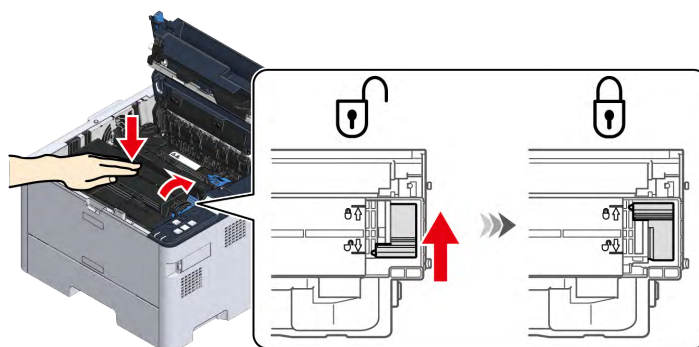
13 Tilt the left side of the toner cartridge downward, insert the toner cartridge so that it is pressed against the protrusion on the new image drum, and then lower its right side.



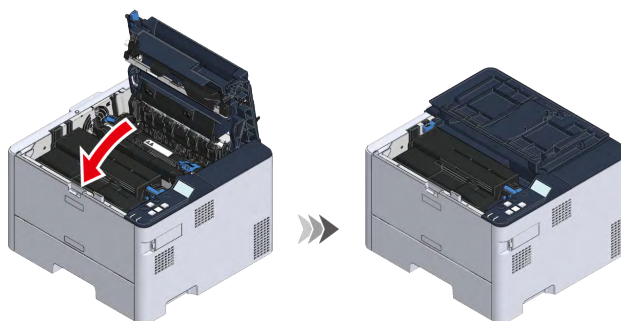
- 14** Press the toner cartridge from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side in the direction of the lock mark until it stops.



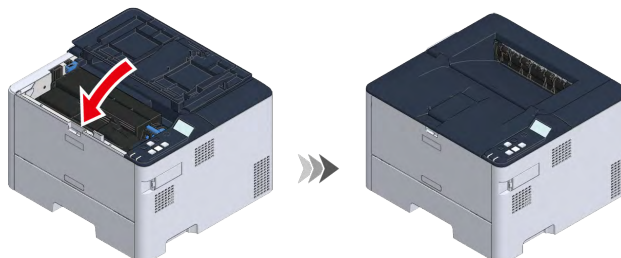
- If the toner cartridge is not installed correctly, the toner cartridge lever will not rotate.



- 15** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 16** Close the top cover (front).



- Please recycle the used image drum.

Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge

This section explains how to replace both the image drum and toner cartridge with new ones.

Refer to "[Replacing the image drum](#)(P.300)" if you want to replace only the image drum with a new one but continue using the existing toner cartridge.

1 Prepare a new image drum and a new toner cartridge.

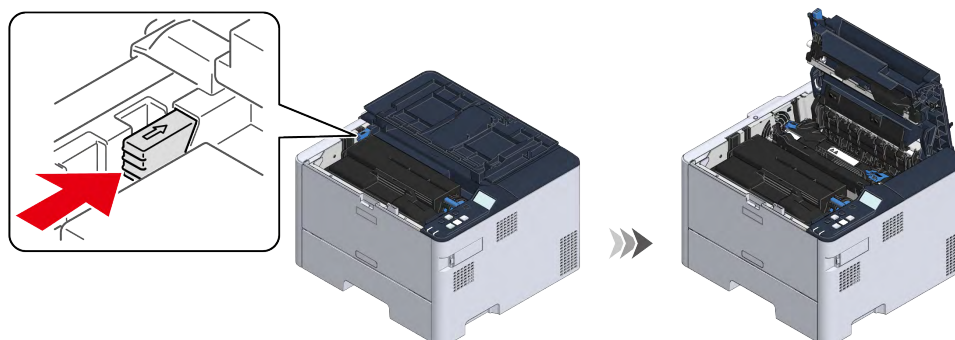
2 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



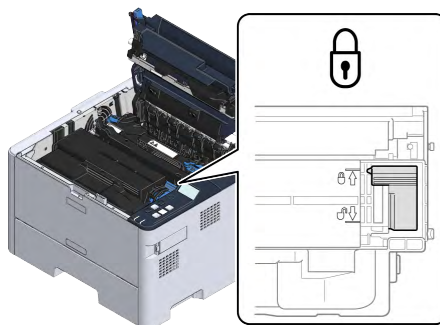
3 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



4 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



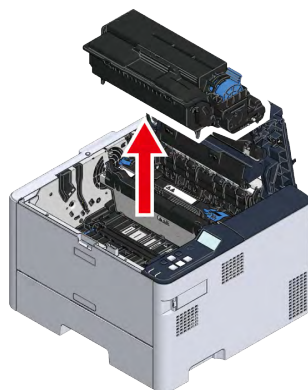
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



5 Remove the image drum. Remove it with the toner cartridge attached to the image drum.



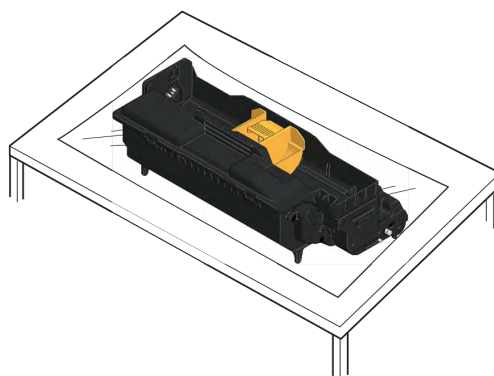
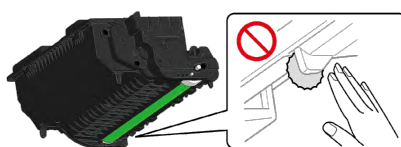
- Do not remove the toner cartridge from the image drum.



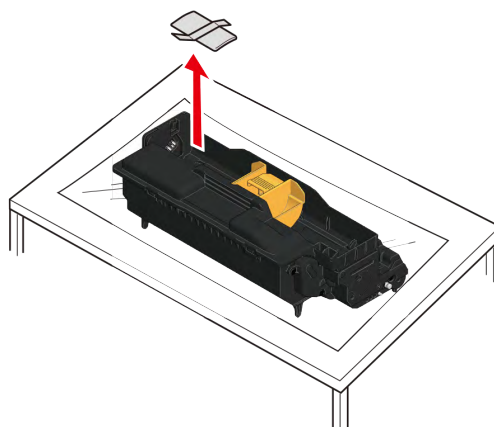
6 Remove the new image drum from its packaging bag, and then place it on a flat surface covered with newspaper or the like.



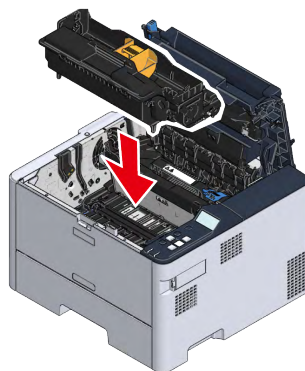
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



7 Take out the desiccant.



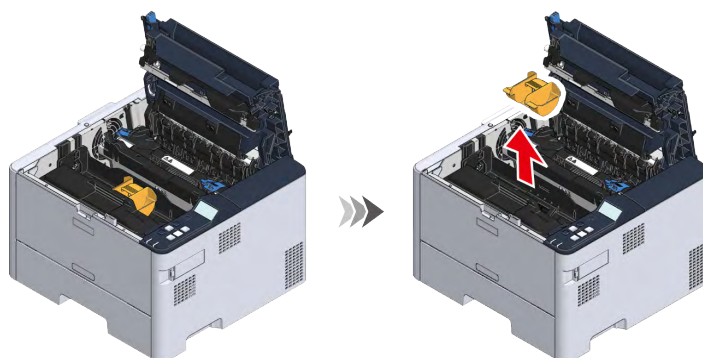
- 8** Install the new image drum into the main unit.



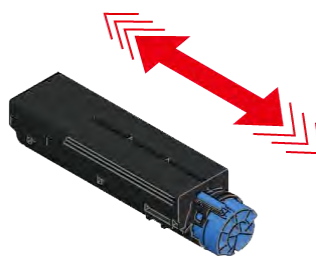
- 9** Remove the toner cover attached to the new image drum.



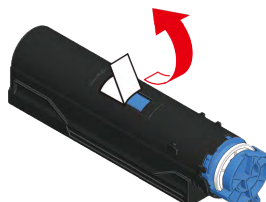
- Handle the toner cover with your both hands and be careful not to hit it on surrounding objects. The toner on the toner cover may scatter and stain your clothes.



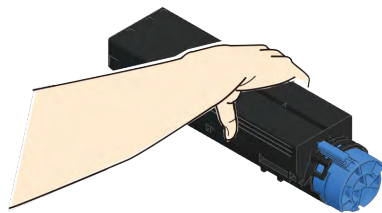
- 10** Remove the new toner cartridge from its packaging bag, and shake it horizontally to even out the toner inside.



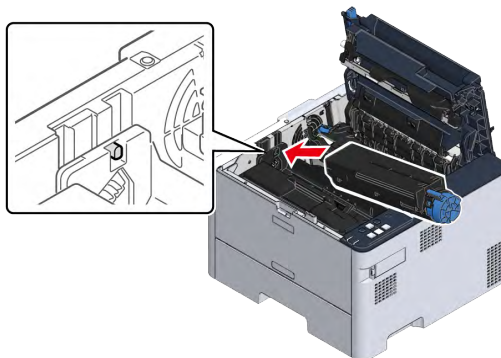
- 11** Remove the protective tape on the bottom while keeping the toner cartridge level.



- 12** Hold the toner cartridge with the flat part facing up and the blue lever on the right side.



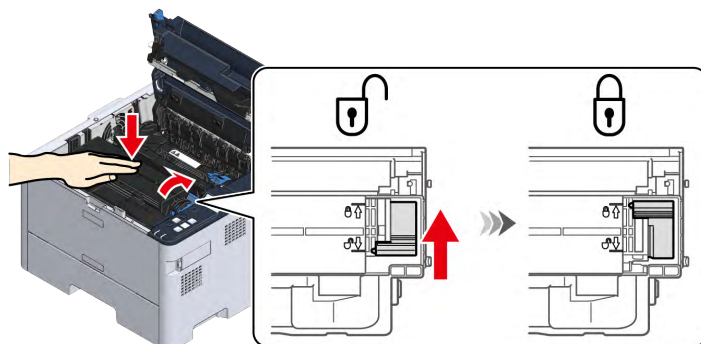
- 13** Tilt the left side of the toner cartridge downward, insert the toner cartridge so that it is pressed against the protrusion on the image drum, and then lower its right side.



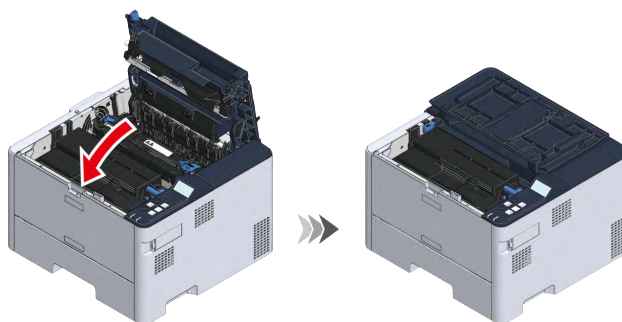
- 14** Press the toner cartridge from the top, and then rotate the blue lever on the right side in the direction of the lock mark until it stops.

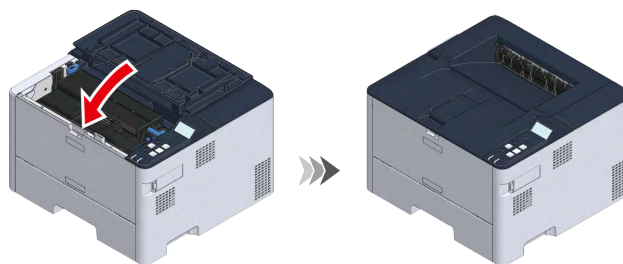


- If the toner cartridge is not installed correctly, the toner cartridge lever will not rotate.



- 15** Close the top cover from the rear side.



16 Close the top cover (front).

- Please recycle the used image drum and toner cartridge.

Service life and replacement cycle of maintenance parts

Maintenance kit

The maintenance kit is a set of a fuser unit and a transfer roller.

Service life of the maintenance kit

The fuser unit and the transfer roller can print approximately 200,000 sheets of A4-sized paper (for simplex printing), but the actual printable number of sheets may vary with the usage condition.

The above number is based on the general usage condition (three sheets at a time). If you print a single sheet at a time, the life may be reduced by half.

A message appears indicating preparation for replacement when the end of life is approaching.

To check the life of the fuser unit, select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Information] - [Supplies Life] - [Fuser] on the operator panel.

For Windows, when you are using the Monitoring Tool, the Monitoring Tool will pop up a message to notify you that it is time to replace the maintenance kit.

 [Monitoring Tool \(Windows\)\(P.247\)](#)

Replacement cycle of the maintenance kit

When the time for replacement is approaching or has arrived, the following message appears on the display.

	When the time for replacement is approaching	→	When the time for replacement has arrived
Displayed message	Fuser Near Life.	→	Fuser Life. Change Fuser.
Response to the message	Prepare a new fuser unit.	→	Replace the fuser unit with a new one.
State of this machine	Printing is possible, but the fuser unit is approaching the end of its service life.	→	Printing is possible, but the print quality cannot be guaranteed.

About 1,500 pages can be printed from when the time for replacement is approaching to when the time for replacement has arrived. (When printing under general usage conditions with factory default settings)



- If [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Panel Setup] - [Near Life Status] is set to [Disable], a message indicating the time for replacement will not be displayed.



- You can change the timing for displaying a message indicating the time for replacement of the fuser. The factory default setting is [1500].
This timing is set from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Near Life Setup] - [Fuser Near Life Timing] on the operator panel.
The setting range is from 500 to 5,000 (in increments of 500).

 [Replacing the maintenance kit\(P.312\)](#)

Paper feed roller

Replace the paper feed roller of each tray by referring to the following number of printable sheets.

- Approx. 100,000 for Tray 1/2/3/4
- Approx. 80,000 for the MP Tray

The display does not show the replacement time of the paper feed roller or a message indicating that it is time to replace the paper feed roller.

Check the roller usage of each tray in [Menus] - [Information] - [Paper Feed Roller Counter] on the operator panel, and replace the paper feed roller if it has reached the designed number of sheets. Or, replace the paper feed roller if paper jams occur frequently even after you have cleaned it.

For Windows, you can check the replacement time from the usage status of each paper feed roller in the Monitoring Tool. However, the pop-up screen for the replacement time will not be displayed.

The paper feed roller of Tray 1/2/3/4 differs in shape from that of the MP tray. Check the tray of which the paper feed roller is to be replaced, and prepare a new paper feed roller accordingly.

 [Replacing the paper feed roller \(Tray 1\)](#)(P.319)

 [Replacing the paper feed roller \(MP Tray\)](#)(P.329)

Replacing the maintenance kit

The maintenance kit is a set of a fuser unit and a transfer roller. Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser unit and the transfer roller at the same time.

- 1 Prepare a new maintenance kit and check that you have all the parts.

	Fuser unit
	Transfer roller

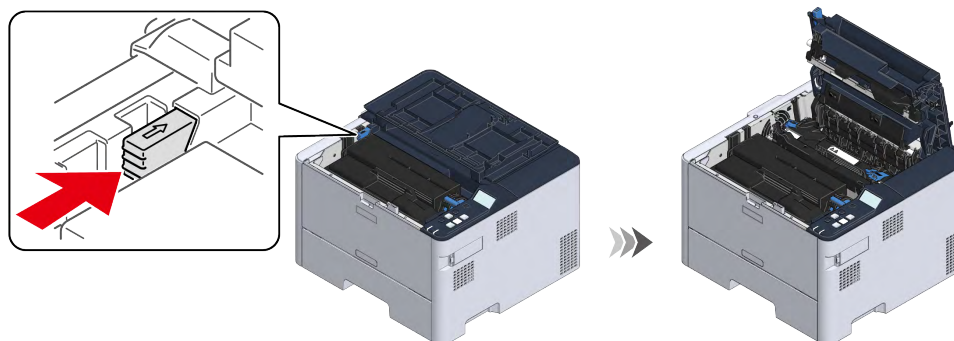
- 2 Open the top cover (front).



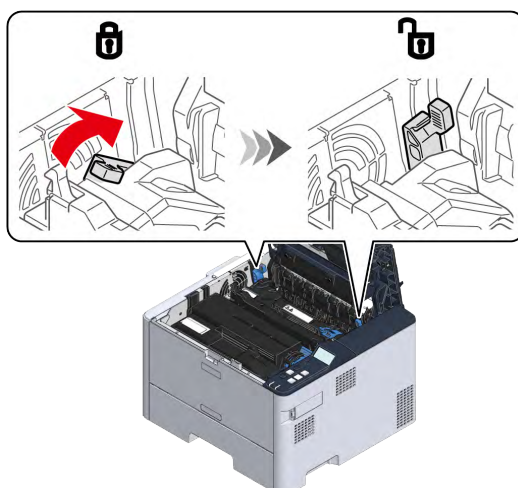
- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



- 3 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).

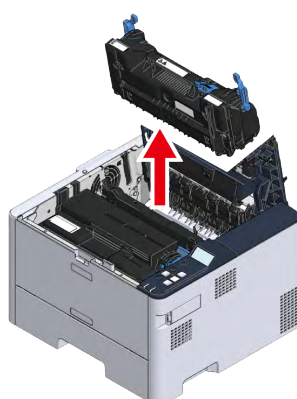


- 4 Unlock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the back side until it reaches the unlock mark position.

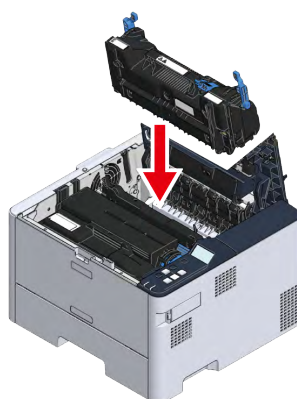


- 5 Remove the fuser unit from this machine by holding its central handle.

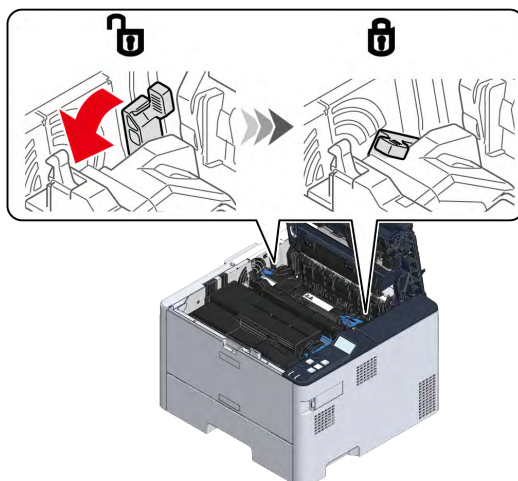
 CAUTION	Burns may be caused.	
As the fuser unit may be hot, be cautious during operation and always hold the handle to lift it. When it is hot, wait until it cools down before any operation.		



- 6 Install the new fuser unit into this machine.



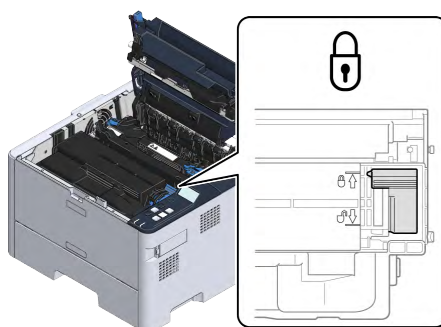
- 7 Lock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the front side until it reaches the lock mark position.



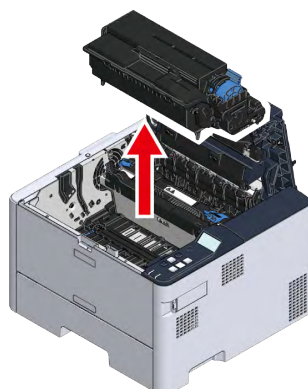
- 8 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



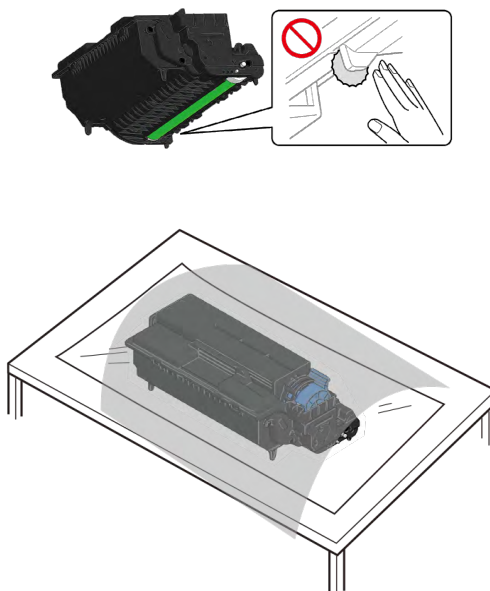
- 9 Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



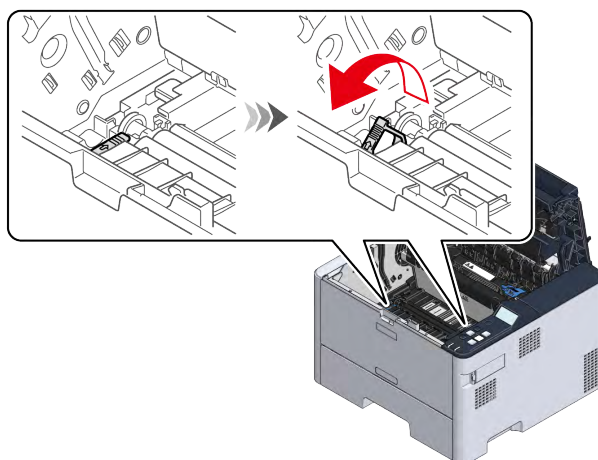
- 10** Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.

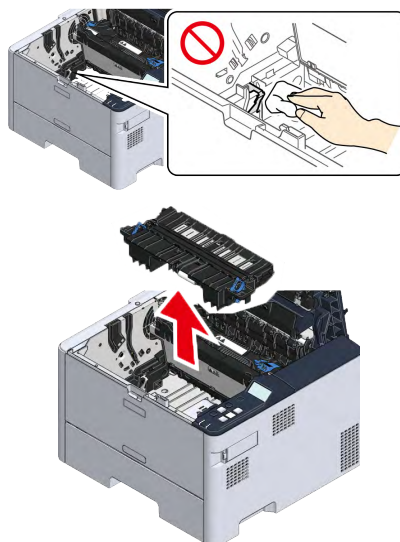


- 11** Unlock the transfer unit by rotating the blue handles on its both sides towards the front side.

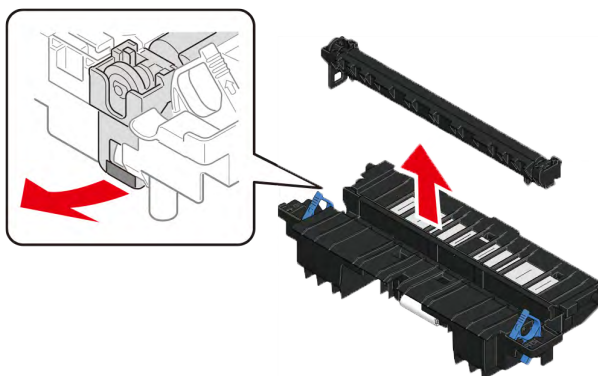


12 Remove the transfer unit.

- Do not wipe off any grease applied to the metal part inside the main unit.

**13** Remove the transfer roller by pressing the blue label on the lower left side of the transfer unit outwards.

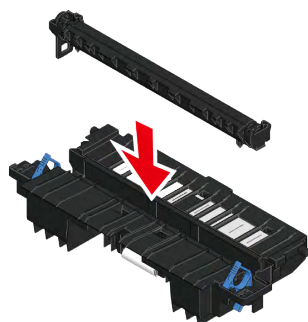
- Be careful not to touch the sponge section in the center.

**14** Take the new transfer roller out of its packing box.

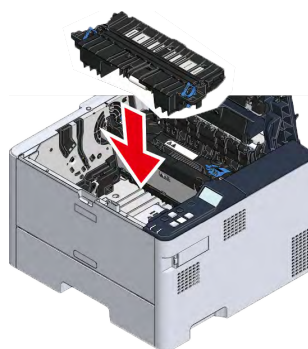
- 15** Install the transfer roller to the transfer unit with the blue handle of the transfer unit on the front side and the blue label of the transfer roller on the left side.



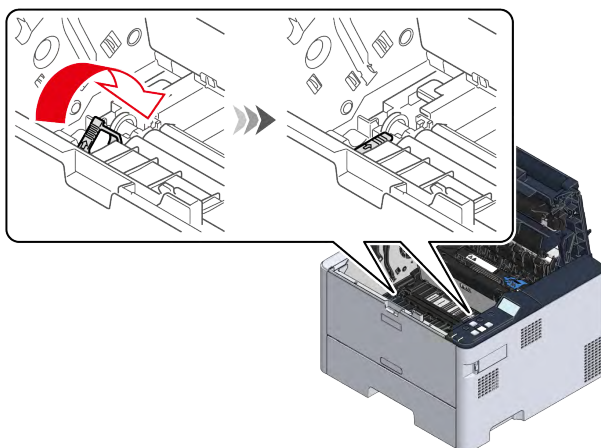
- Be careful not to touch the sponge section in the center.



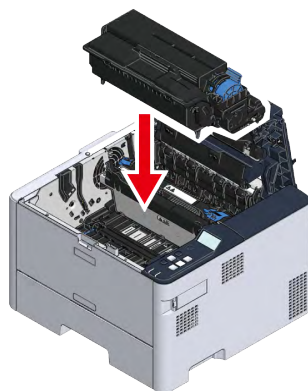
- 16** Install the transfer unit into this machine.



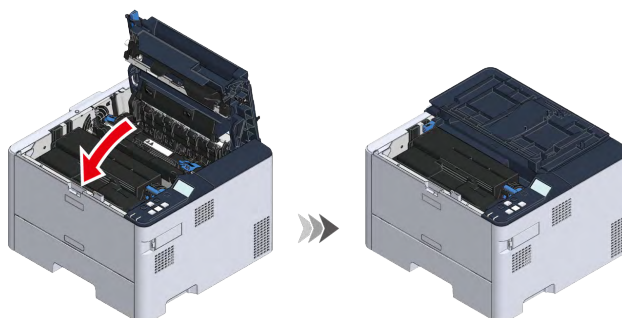
- 17** Lock the transfer unit by tilting its left and right blue levers toward the back.



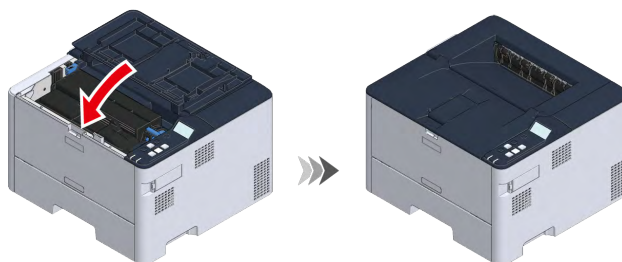
- 18** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 19** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 20** Close the top cover (front).



- Please recycle the used maintenance kit.

Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 1)

For the replacement cycle, please refer to "[Paper feed roller\(P.311\)](#)".

This section takes for example the procedure of replacing the paper feed roller of Tray 1. You can replace the paper feed roller of Tray 2/3/4 by following the same procedure.



- Please replace the paper feed roller with clean hands. If hand oil or hand cream gets on the rubber part, the paper feed function may deteriorate.

1 Prepare a new feed roller assembly (for Tray 1) and check that you have all the parts.

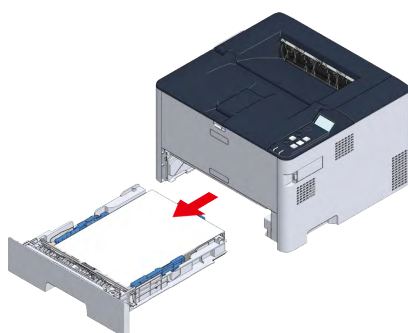
	Paper feed roller (without gears)
	Paper feed roller (with gears)
	Separation roller
	Spring

2 Press the power button to power off this machine.

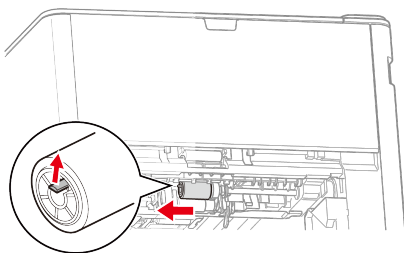
3 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 1 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



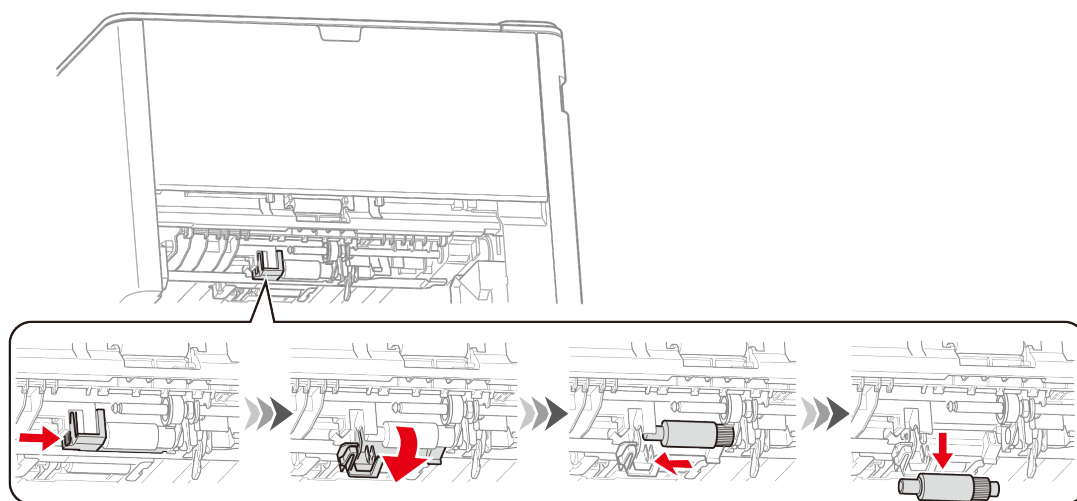
- If you pull out the paper cassette with the power on, "Change settings?" may appear on the display. This message will disappear automatically in about 10 seconds after the paper cassette is returned to the main unit.



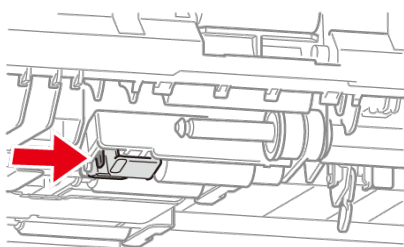
- 4 While pushing the claws of the front paper feed roller (without gears) outward (as shown in the following figure) in the evacuated paper cassette slot, slide the paper feed roller (without gears) to the left and remove it.



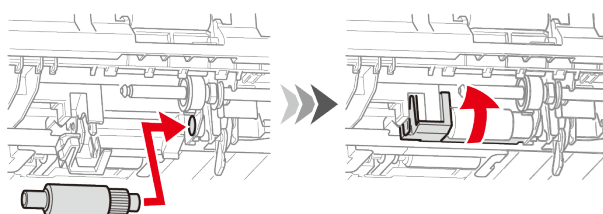
- 5 For B433, open the black cover downward by pressing the claw on its left side, and remove the internal paper feed roller (with gears).



For B513, press the tab, and remove the internal paper feed roller (with gears).



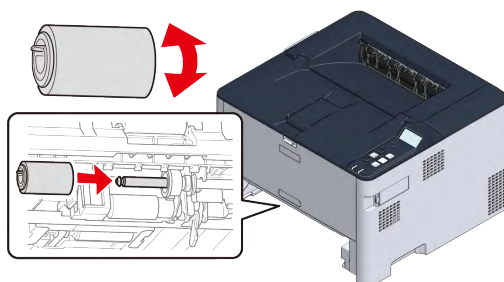
- 6 Attach it to the machine from the right side of the new paper feed roller (with gears), and close the black cover until you hear a click.



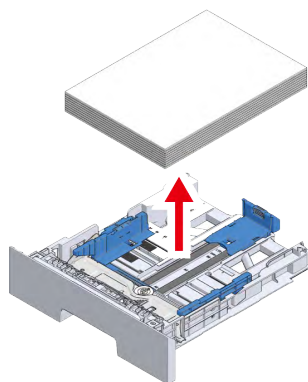
- 7** Hold the new paper feed roller (without gears) with the blue claw on the left, insert it onto the front shaft, and push the paper feed roller in until you hear a click.



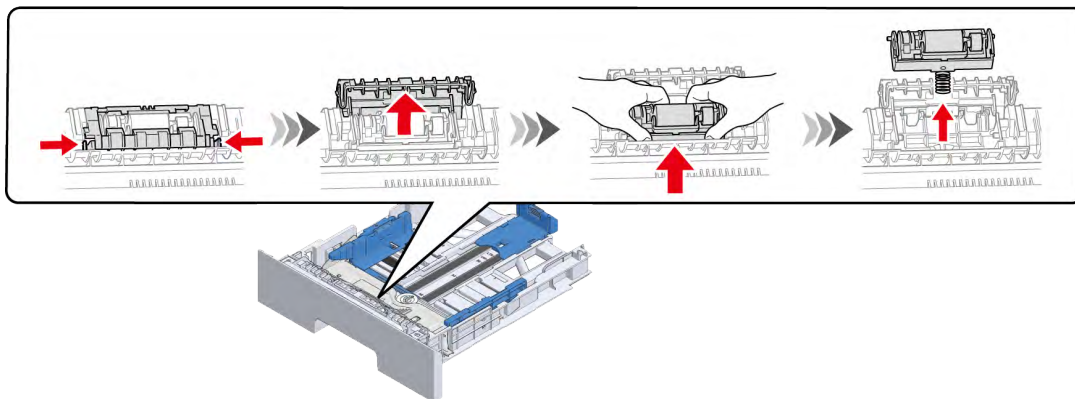
- If it is hard to mount it, rotate the roller slightly left and right, and then mount it again.



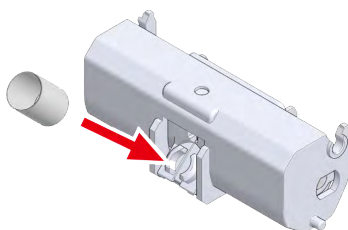
- 8** Remove the paper from the paper cassette.



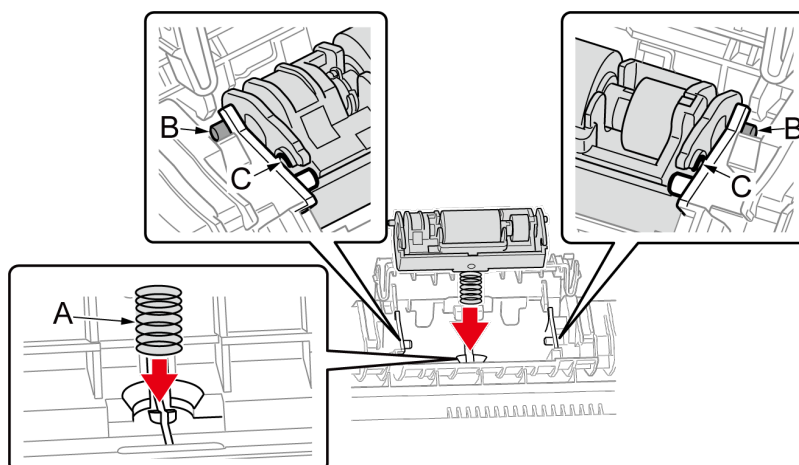
- 9** Open the roller cover by pressing the claws on its both sides, and remove the separation roller.



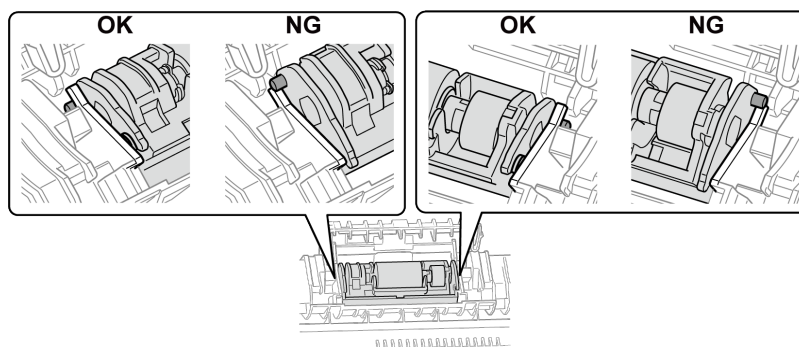
- 10** Attach the spring to the new separation roller.



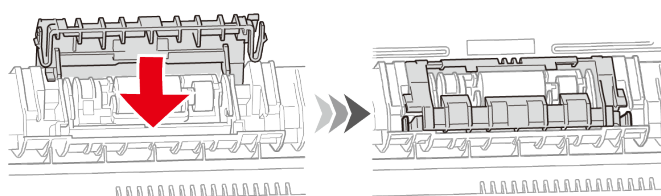
- 11** Align the spring (A) of the new separation roller with the tray, insert the shaft (B), and snap the notch (C) into the tray shaft.



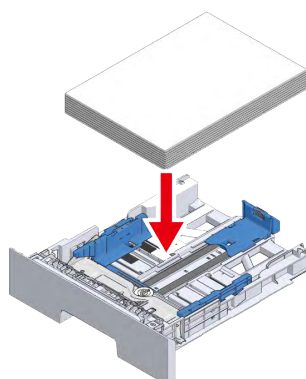
- 12** Check that the separation roller is properly installed.



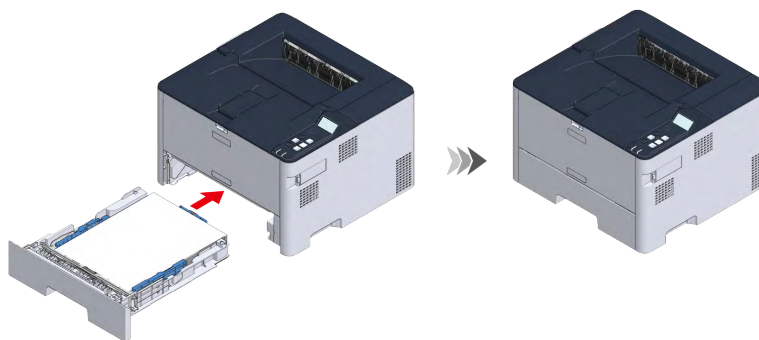
- 13** Close the roller cover.



- 14** Load paper in the paper cassette.



- 15** Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- 16** Clear the paper feed roller counter of the replaced tray.

On the operator panel, select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Paper Feed Roller Counter Clear] - [Tray1 Clear] - [Execute] - [Yes], and then press «OK».



- Please recycle the used paper feed roller.

Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 2/3/4 (Optional))

For the replacement cycle, please refer to "Paper feed roller(P.311)".

This section takes for example the procedure of replacing the paper feed roller of Tray 2. You can replace the paper feed roller of Tray 3/4 by following the same procedure.



- Please replace the paper feed roller with clean hands. If hand oil or hand cream gets on the rubber part, the paper feed function may deteriorate.

1 Prepare a new feed roller assembly (for Tray 2/3/4) and check that you have all the parts.

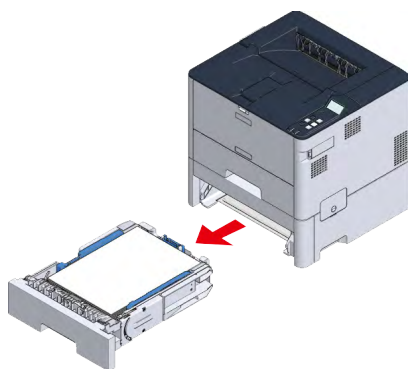
	Paper feed roller (without gears)
	Paper feed roller (with gears)
	Separation roller
	Spring

2 Press the power button to power off this machine.

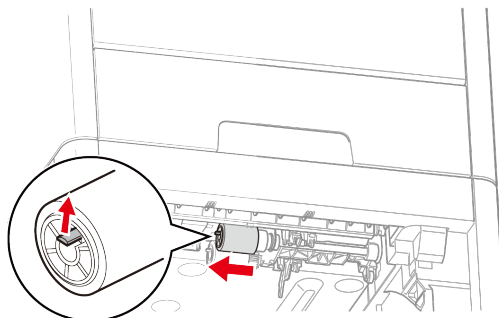
3 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 2 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



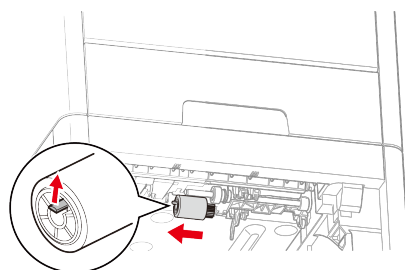
- If you pull out the paper cassette with the power on, "Change settings?" may appear on the display. This message will disappear automatically in 10 seconds after the paper cassette is returned to the main unit.



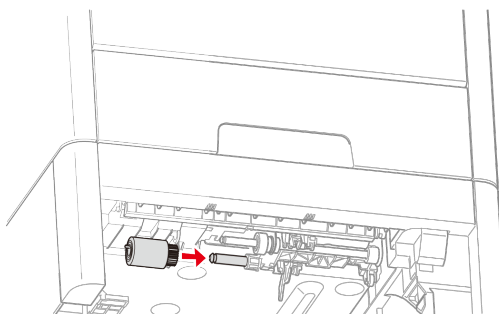
- 4 While pushing the claws of the front paper feed roller (without gears) outward (as shown in the following figure) in the evacuated paper cassette slot, slide the paper feed roller (without gears) to the left and remove it.



- 5 While pushing the claws of the rear paper feed roller (with gears) outward (as shown in the following figure), slide the paper feed roller (with gears) to the left and remove it.



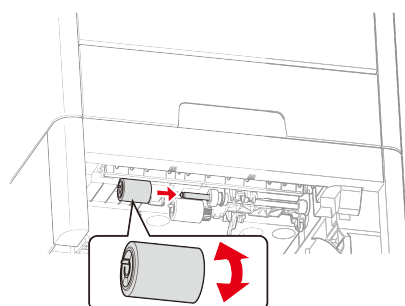
- 6 Mount the new paper feed roller (with gears). Hold the paper feed roller (with gears) with the blue claw on the left, insert it onto the rear shaft, and push the paper feed roller in until you hear a click.



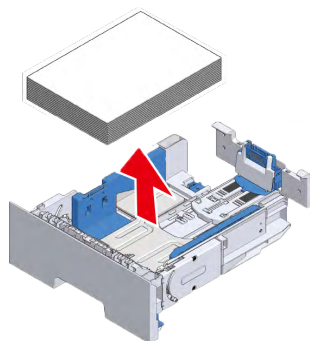
- 7 Mount the new paper feed roller (without gears). Hold the paper feed roller (without gears) with the blue claw on the left, insert it onto the front shaft, and push the paper feed roller in until you hear a click.



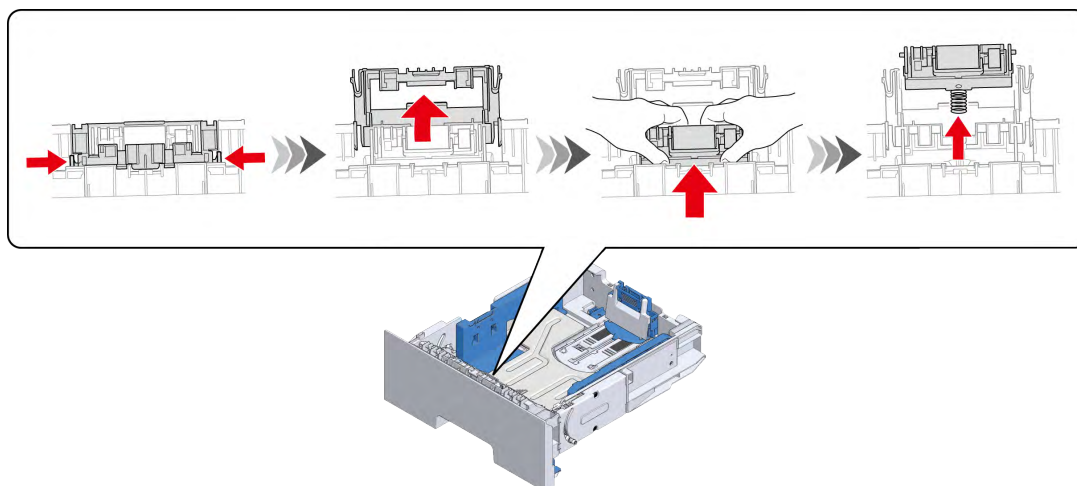
- If it is hard to mount it, rotate the roller slightly left and right, and then mount it again.



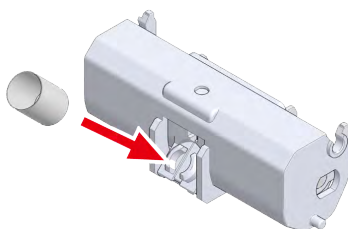
- 8 Remove the paper from the paper cassette.



- 9 Open the roller cover by pressing the claws on its both sides, and remove the separation roller.



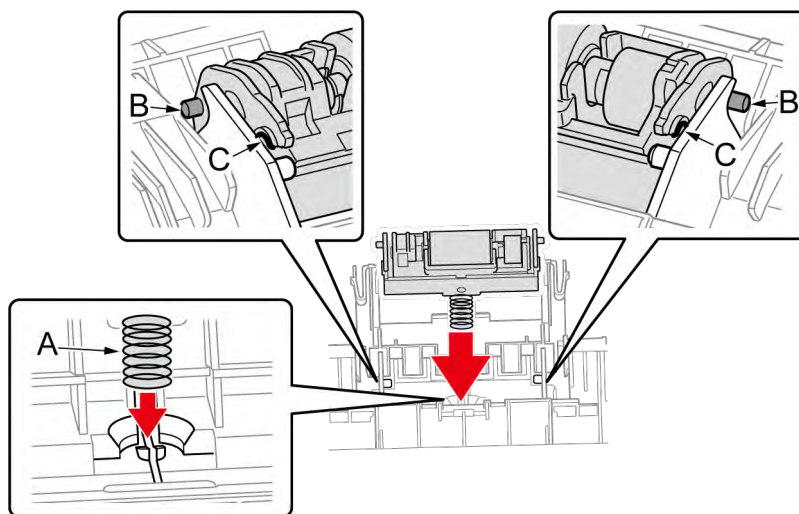
- 10 Attach the spring to the new separation roller.



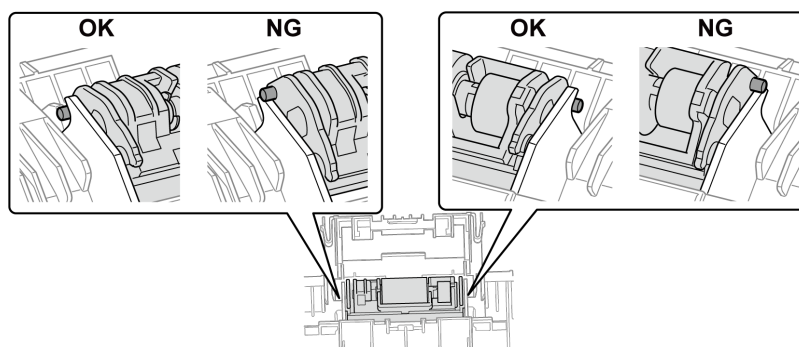
- 11** Align the spring (A) of the new separation roller with the tray, insert the shaft (B), and snap the notch (C) into the tray shaft.



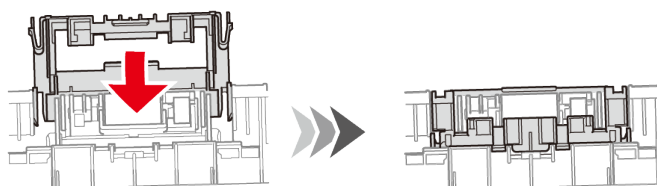
- Do not touch the rubber portion of the roller.



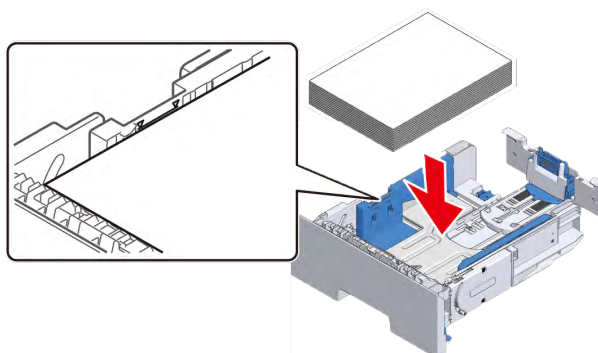
- 12** Check that the separation roller is properly installed.



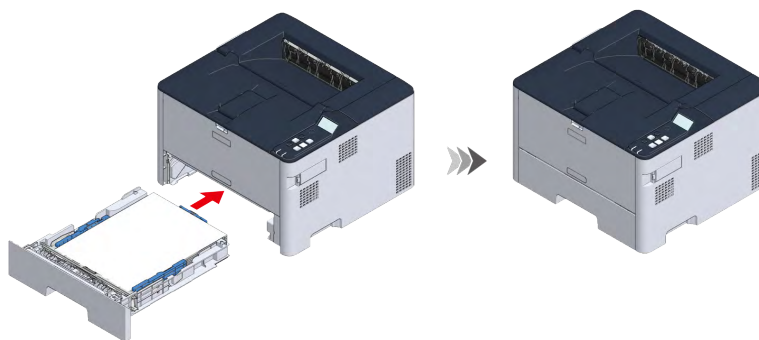
- 13** Close the roller cover.



- 14** Load paper in the paper cassette.



- 15** Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- 16** Clear the paper feed roller counter of the replaced tray.

On the operator panel, select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Paper Feed Roller Counter Clear] - [**Name of the replaced tray** Clear] - [Execute] - [Yes], and then press «OK».



- Please recycle the used paper feed roller.

Replacing the paper feed roller (MP Tray)

For the replacement cycle, please refer to "Paper feed roller(P.311)".



- Please replace the paper feed roller with clean hands. If hand oil or hand cream gets on the rubber part, the paper feed function may deteriorate.

1 Prepare a new feed roller assembly (for the MP tray) and check that you have all the parts.

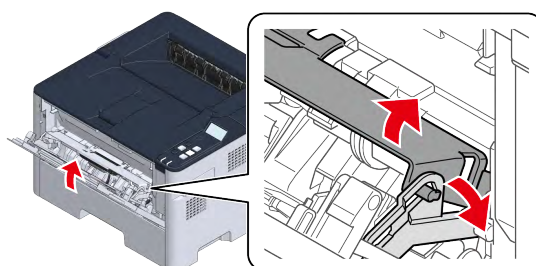
	Paper feed roller (with gears)
	Paper feed roller (without gears)

2 Press the power button to power off this machine.

3 Place your finger in the front recess, and pull to open the MP tray towards you.

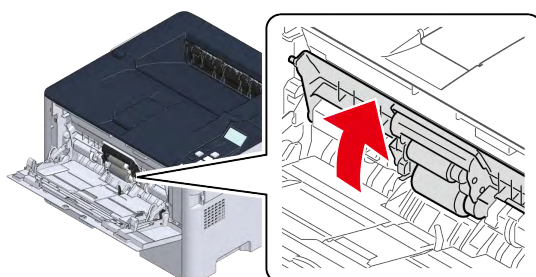


4 While lifting the MP tray gently, swing the right arm outward to unlock the roller guide.

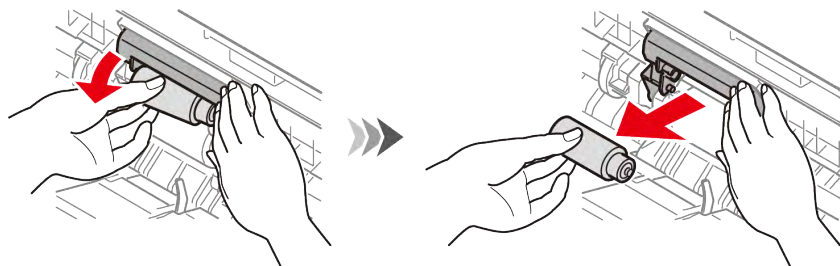


5 Follow the same procedure to unlock the arm on the left side.

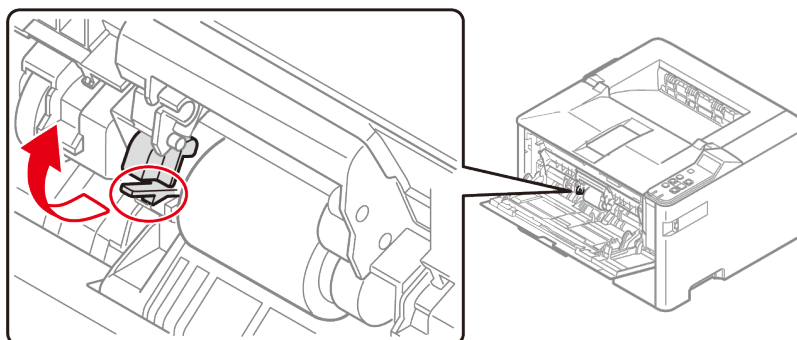
6 Open the roller guide until it attaches to the main unit.



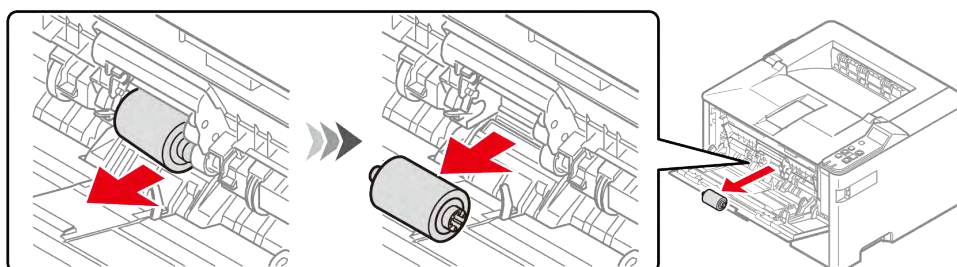
- 7** While holding the black cover down, grasp the left side of the upper paper feed roller (with gears), and pull the roller along a forward-right diagonal to remove it.



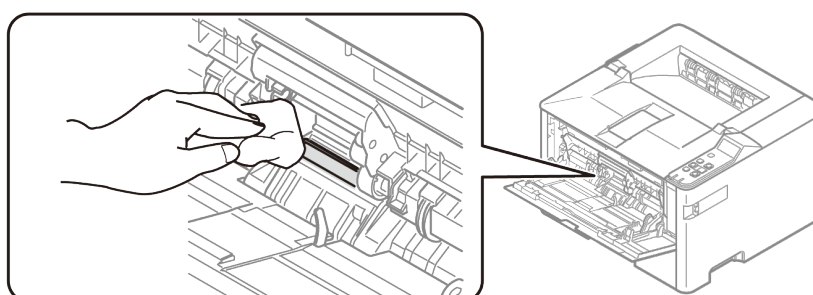
- 8** Open the cover guide in the arrow direction.



- 9** Remove the lower paper feed roller (without gears).



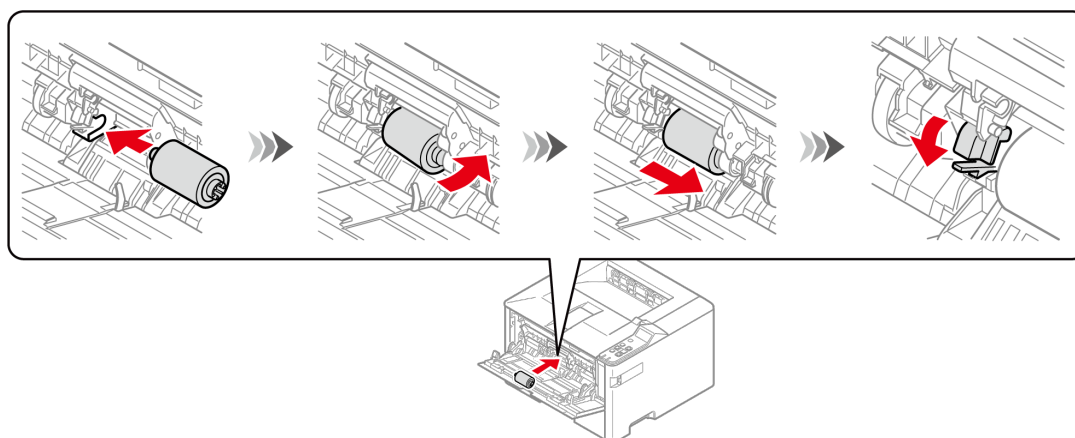
- 10** Wipe the separation pad with a cloth slightly moistened with water.



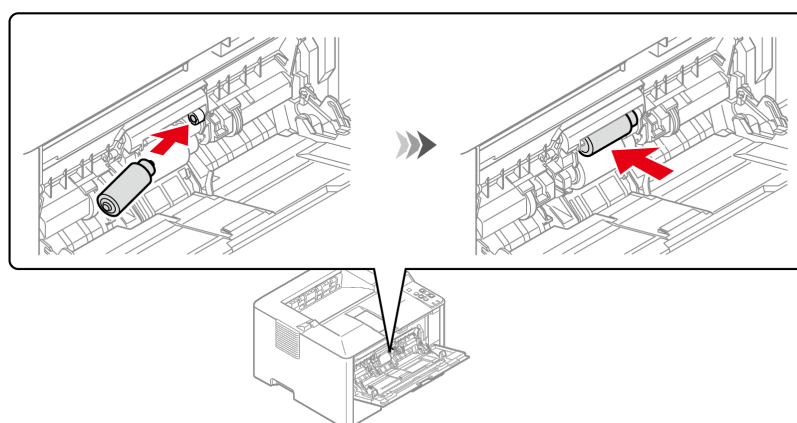
- 11** Prepare a new paper feed roller (without gears). Install the slender shaft on the left side, and slide it rightward to lock the cover guide.



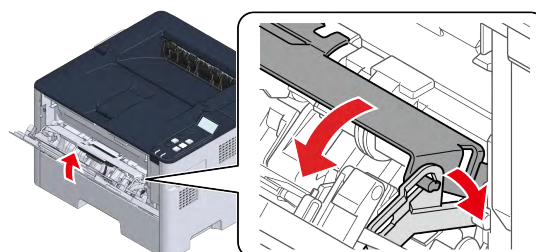
- Do not touch the rubber portion of the roller.



- 12** Prepare a new paper feed roller (with gears). With its gears on the right side, insert the paper feed roller (with gears) into the upper hole and push it in until you hear a click.

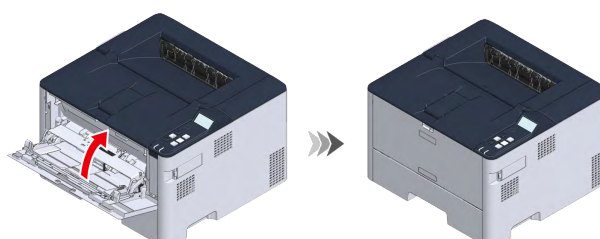


- 13** While lifting the MP tray gently, swing the right arm outward to lock the roller guide.



- 14** Follow the same procedure to lock the left arm.

- 15** Close the MP tray.



16 Press the power button to power on this machine.

17 Clear the counter of the paper feed roller on the MP tray.

On the operator panel, select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [Paper Feed Roller Counter Clear] - [MP Tray Clear] - [Execute] - [Yes], and then press «OK».



- Please recycle the used paper feed roller.

Cleaning the main unit and the parts

Cleaning the LED head

If there are black or white vertical stripes on the output paper, the image is faded or the text is blurred, clean the LED head.



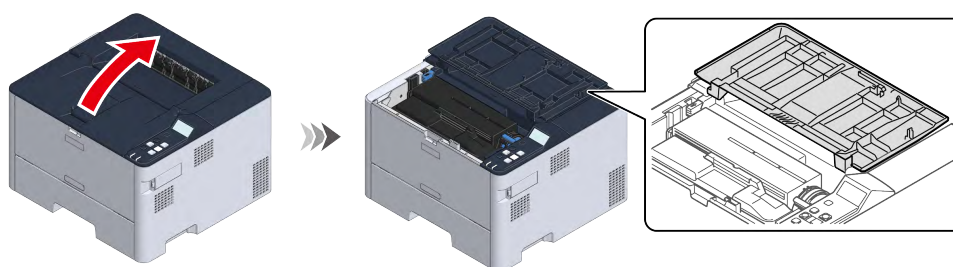
- Do not use methyl alcohol or thinner. Doing so may damage the LED head.

1 Press the power button to power off this machine.

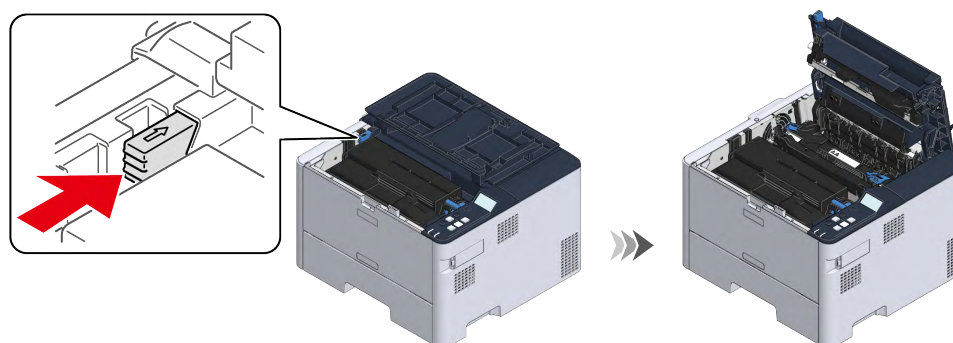
2 Open the top cover (front).



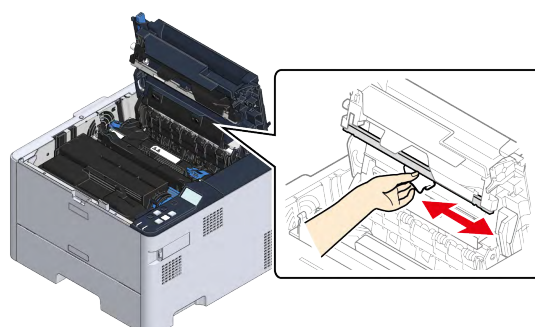
- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



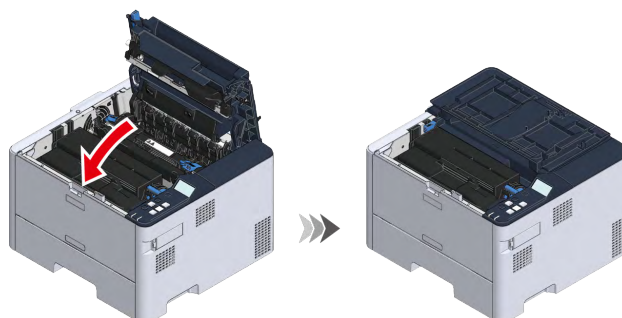
3 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



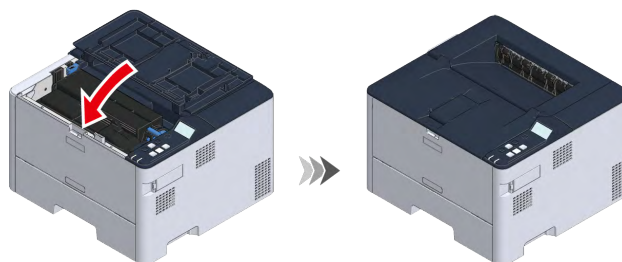
4 Gently wipe the lens surface of the LED head with a soft tissue paper.



- 5 Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 6 Close the top cover (front).



Cleaning the surface of the main unit

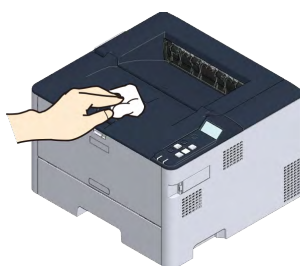


- Do not use benzene, paint thinner or alcohol as it may damage plastic parts and coating of this machine.
- It is not necessary to lubricate the parts of this machine. Do not lubricate.

- 1 Press the power button to power off this machine.
- 2 Clean the surface of this machine with a cloth slightly moistened with water or a neutral detergent.



- Only use water or a neutral washing agent.



- 3 Wipe the surface of this machine with a soft dry cloth.

Cleaning the paper feed roller (Tray 1/2/3/4)

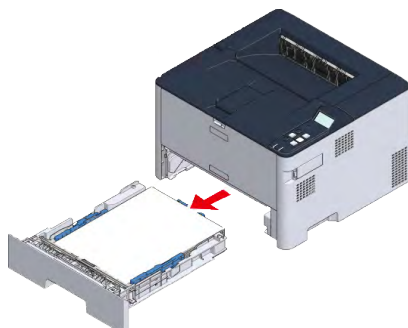
If paper jams occur frequently, clean the paper feed roller. Clean the separation roller of the paper cassette and the paper feed roller inside this machine.



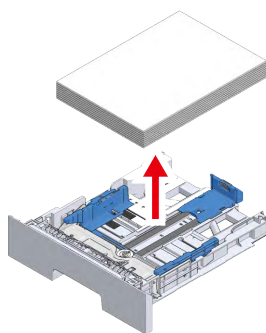
- If paper jams persist even after the paper feed roller is cleaned, it is recommended to replace the paper feed roller.

This section takes for example the procedure of cleaning the paper feed roller of Tray 1. Clean the paper feed roller of Tray 2/3/4 by following the same procedure.

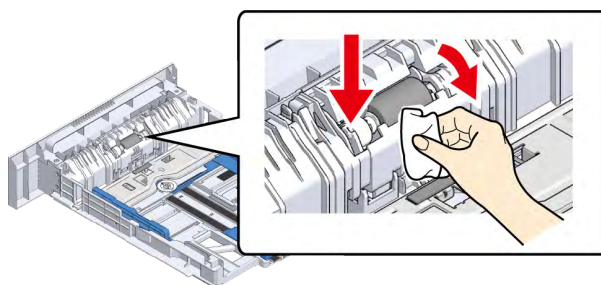
- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 1 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



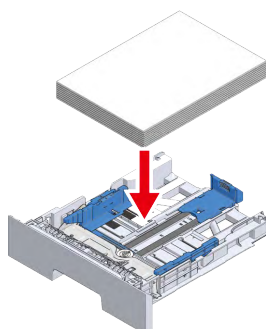
- 2 Remove the paper from the paper cassette.



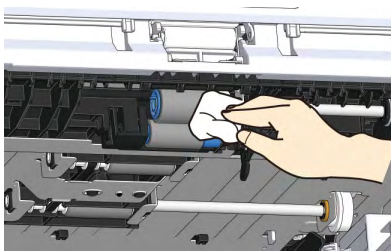
- 3 Press the recess of the separation roller on the paper cassette, and wipe it with a cloth slightly moistened with water while rotating the separation roller.



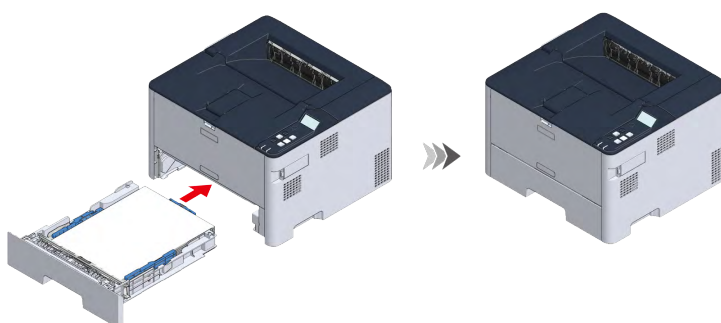
- 4 Load paper in the paper cassette.



- 5 Wipe the paper feed roller with a cloth slightly moistened with water while rotating the white gear inside this machine to the far side. Wipe the paper feed roller with a blue gear as well.



- 6 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



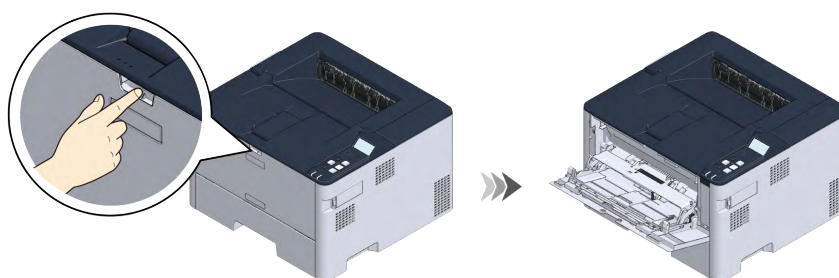
Cleaning the paper feed roller (MP tray)

If paper jams occur frequently, clean the paper feed roller and the separation pad.

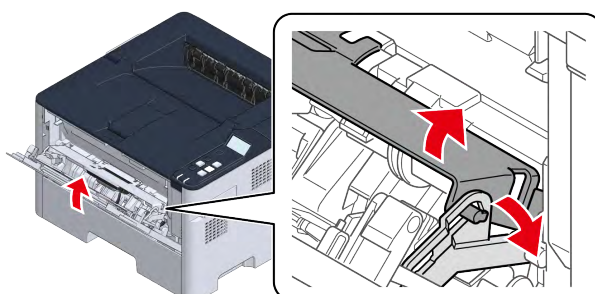


- If paper jams persist even after the paper feed roller and the separation pad are cleaned, it is recommended to replace the paper feed roller.

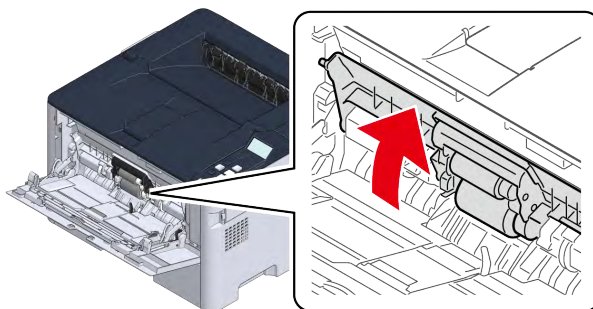
- 1 Place your fingers in the front recess and pull to open the MP tray towards you.



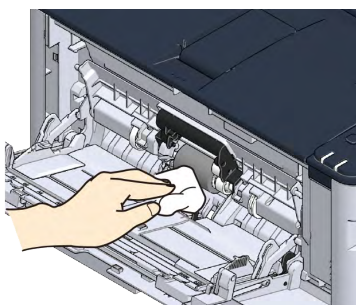
- 2 While lifting the MP tray gently, swing the right arm outward to unlock the roller guide.



- 3 Follow the same procedure to unlock the roller guide on the left side.
- 4 Open the roller guide until it attaches to the main unit.



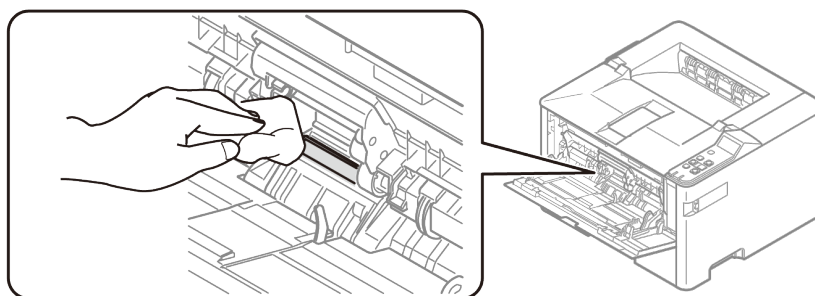
- 5 Wipe the paper feed roller with a cloth slightly moistened with water while rotating it.



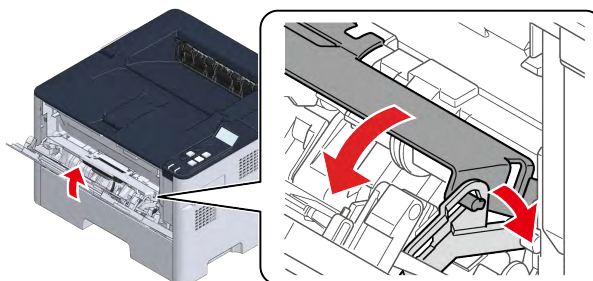
- 6 Remove the paper feed roller (without gears), and wipe the separation pad with a cloth slightly moistened with water.



- For the method of removing the paper feed roller, please refer to "[Replacing the paper feed roller \(MP Tray\)](#)(P.329)".

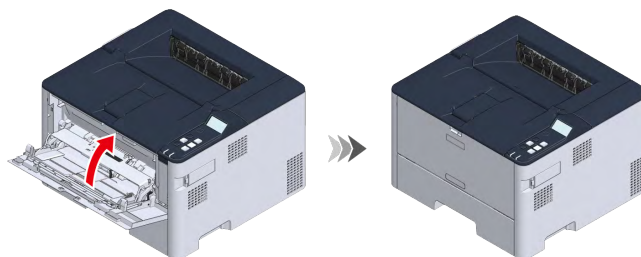


- 7 While lifting the MP tray gently, press the right arm outward to lock the roller guide.



- 8 Follow the same procedure to lock the roller guide on the left side.

- 9 Close the MP tray.



Cleaning the light-shielding film

When streaks appear on the printing result, clean the light-shielding film of the image drum to improve the printing.

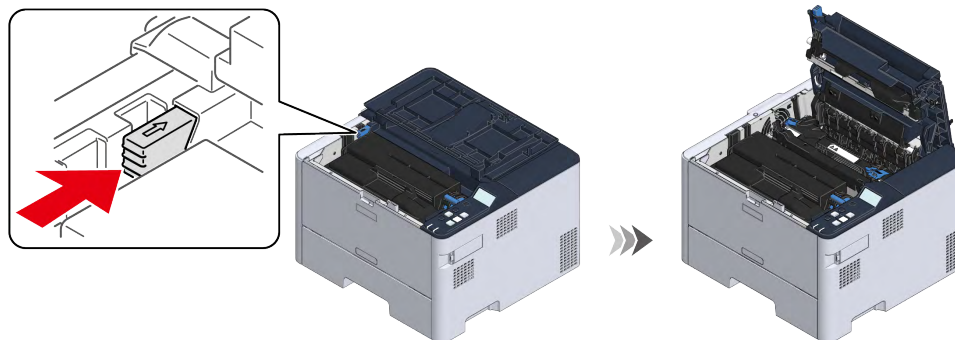
- 1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



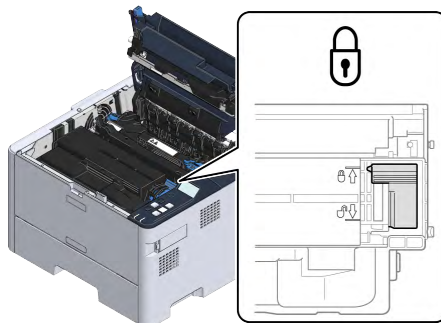
- 2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



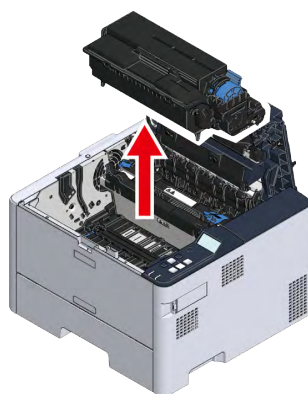
- 3** Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



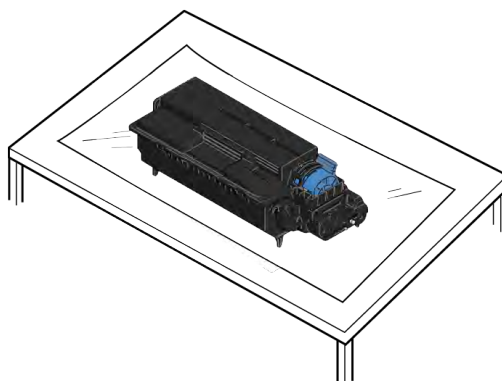
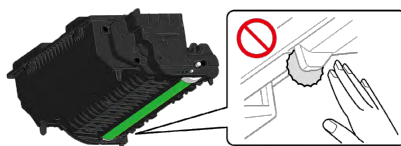
- 4** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



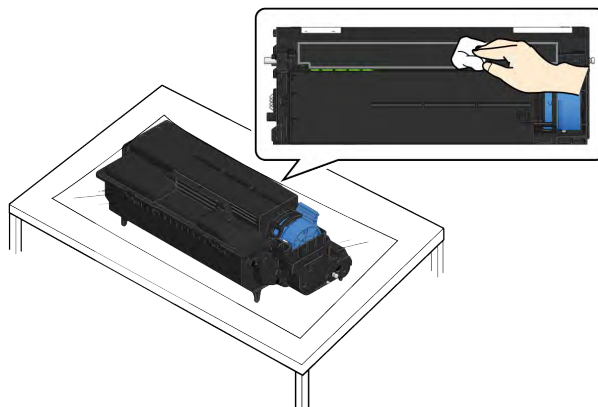
- 5** Place the image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface covered with newspaper or the like.



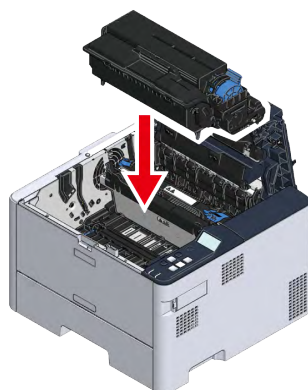
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



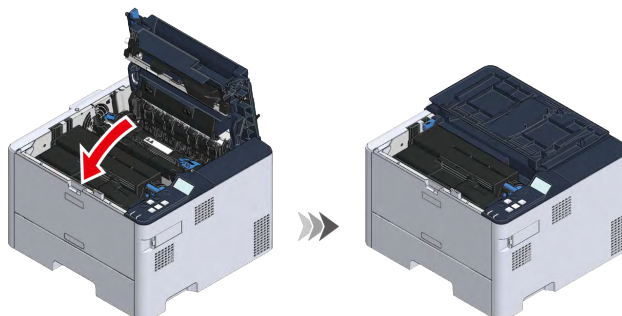
- 6 Wipe the light-shielding film with soft tissue paper.



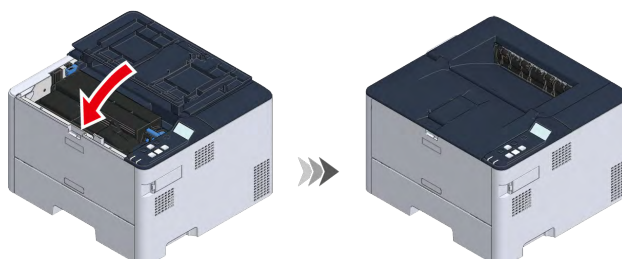
- 7 Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 8 Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 9 Close the top cover (front).



Cleaning the resist roller

When horizontal streaks appear on the printing result, clean the metal part of the resist roller to improve the printing.

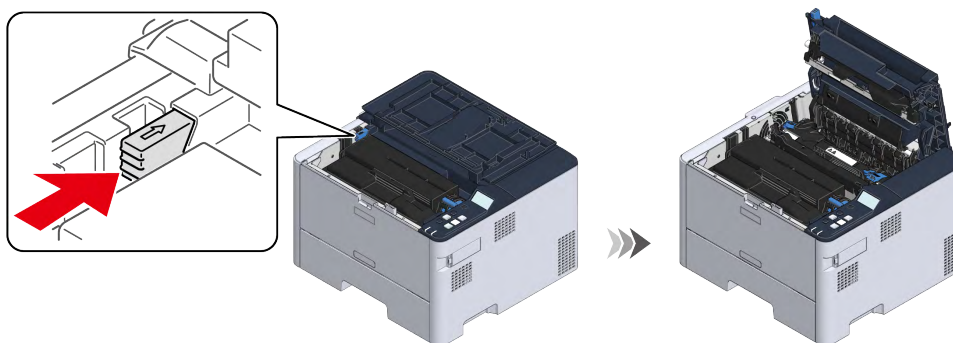
1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



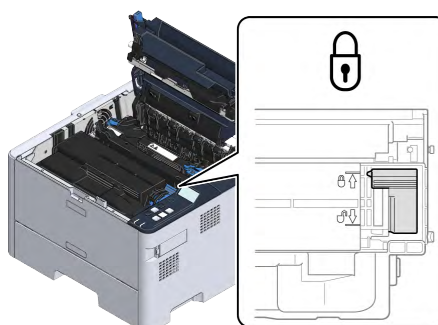
2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



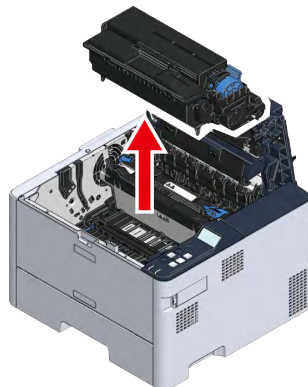
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



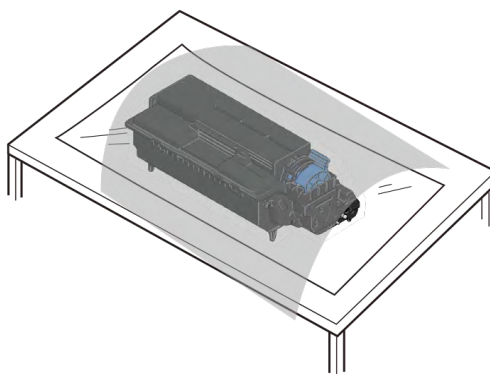
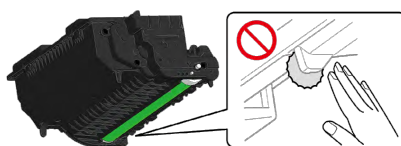
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



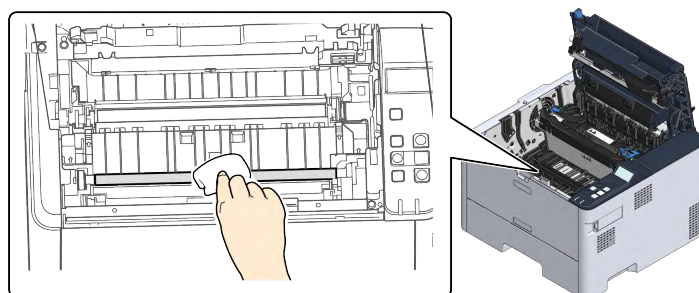
- 5** Place the toner cartridge and image drum on a flat surface covered with newspaper or the like, and cover them with a piece of paper to avoid direct light.



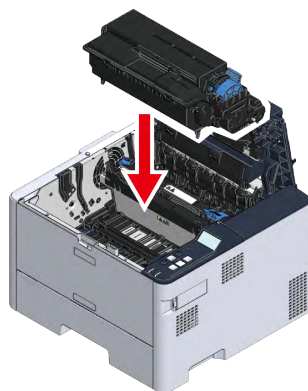
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



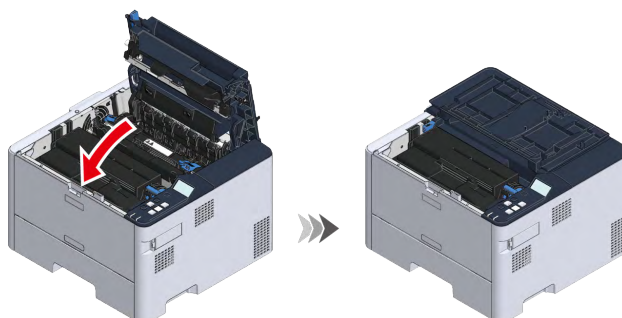
- 6** Wipe the metal part of the resist roller with a soft tissue paper while rotating the resist roller.



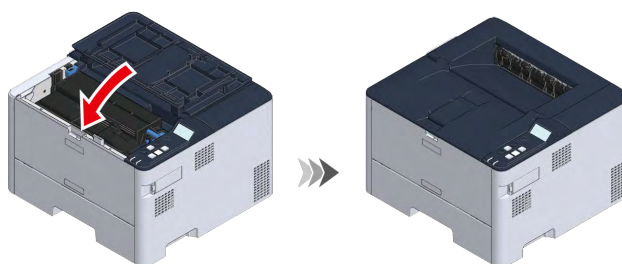
- 7** Install the toner cartridge and the image drum by holding the toner cartridge.



- 8** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 9** Close the top cover (front).



Updating software

You can update the printer driver and other software to the latest version.
A PC connected to the Internet is required for the update.

For Windows

For Windows, use the Monitoring Tool.

 [Monitoring Tool \(Windows\)](#)(P.247)

For macOS

For macOS, please refer to our official website.

Deleting software

This section explains how to delete a printer driver from your PC.



- The specific method may differ for different printer drivers and versions of Windows or macOS.

Uninstalling the Windows printer driver



- To perform this procedure, you will have to login to the PC as a user with administrator privileges.
- Restart the PC before uninstalling a printer driver.

1 Open [Devices and Printers].

[How to open \[Devices and Printers\]](#)(P.141)

2 Right-click on the icon of the printer to be deleted, and select [Remove device].

3 When a confirmation message is displayed, click [Yes].



- If a message indicating that the device is being used is displayed, restart the PC and repeat Steps 1 and 2.

4 Select one of the icons displayed in [Printer], and click [Print server properties] in the menu bar.

5 Select the [Drivers] tab.

6 Click [Change Driver Settings] if displayed.

7 Select the printer driver to be deleted, and click [Delete].

8 When a message asking whether to delete the printer driver only or both the printer driver and its package from the system, select [Remove driver and driver package], and click [OK].

9 When a confirmation message is displayed, click [Yes].

10 When the [Remove Driver Package] screen is displayed, click [Delete] - [OK].



- If deletion is rejected, restart the PC and repeat Steps 4 to 10.

11 Click [Close] in the [Print server properties] screen.

12 Restart the PC.

Uninstalling the macOS printer driver



- To perform this procedure, you will have to login to the PC as a user with administrator privileges.

1 Select [System Preferences] from the Apple menu.

2 Select [Printers & Scanners].

3 Select the device to be deleted, and click [Delete Printer].

4 When a confirmation message is displayed, click [Delete Printer].

5 Close the [Printers & Scanners] screen.

- 6** Open the driver software file downloaded from our website, or insert the included DVD into the PC.
- 7** Double-click on [OKI] - [Drivers] - [PS] - [Uninstaller].
- 8** Confirm the model to be deleted displayed in the dialog box, and click [OK].
- 9** Follow the on-screen instructions to delete the printer driver.
- 10** Once the deletion is complete, remove the mounted drive or the included DVD from your computer.

Firmware update

You can update the printer firmware to the latest version.
A PC connected to the Internet is required for the update.

For Windows

For Windows, use the Monitoring Tool.

 [Monitoring Tool \(Windows\)](#)(P.247)

For macOS

For macOS, please refer to our official website.

10 Troubleshooting

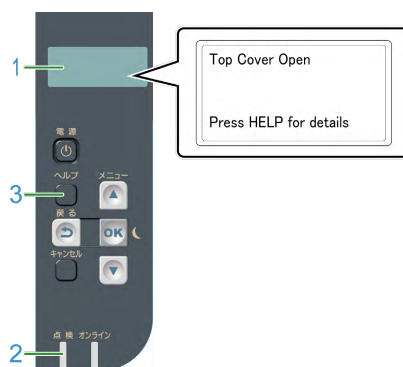
When an error message appears on the display	349
When a paper jam occurs	359
Trouble with printing	389
Troubleshooting for printing results	396
Software troubleshooting	406
Troubleshooting for this machine and paper	407

When an error message appears on the display

If a problem occurs to this machine, the ATTENTION lamp will light on or flash, and a message will appear on the display.

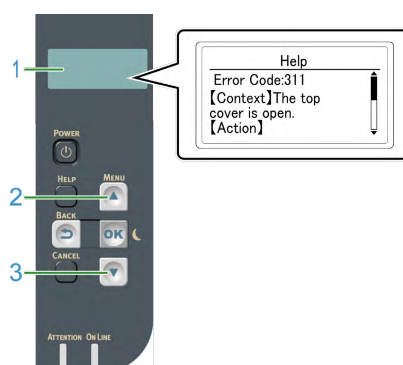
Check the message on the display and take action based on the corresponding message.

If [Press HELP For Details] appears at the bottom of the display, press «HELP» on the operator panel to show the solution. (If there is no indication, pressing «HELP» will not change the indication on the display.)



1	On-screen message
2	ATTENTION lamp
3	«HELP» button

Display when «HELP» is pressed



1	Error code
2	Scroll up
3	Scroll down

[Error message list\(P.350\)](#)

Error message list

Clear the error by referring to the description of the corresponding message.

Meanings of symbols used in the error message are as follows.

- **Tray Name:** One of the following: Tray 1, Tray 2, Tray 3, Tray 4 and MP Tray
- **Cover Name:** Top cover or Rear cover
- **Code:** The error code number of 1 to 3 digits. The displayed number changes with the specific error.
- **Pages:** Number of pages to print
- **Paper Size:** The size of paper
- **Media Type:** The type of paper
- **Number:** Number of all places where paper jams have occurred

For "---", different messages are displayed depending on the state of this machine.

When "Please see HELP for details" is displayed at the bottom of the display, if you press «HELP» on the operator panel, the error code and solution will be displayed.

Message	Error code	Description
Storage Error: 250 To Storage format, press [OK] To shut down, press [Cancel]	-	While the machine is being initialized, storage to be formatted is detected. If «OK» is pressed, the machine will be restarted and restored after the storage is formatted.
Detected an abnormality of internal database The data must be deleted After pressing [OK], the data will be deleted, and then reboot	-	An error is detected in the built-in database. Press «OK» to delete the database and restart this machine.
Detected an abnormality of access log database The data must be deleted After pressing [OK], the data will be deleted, and then reboot	-	An error is detected in the built-in database that records the access log. Press «OK» to delete the database and restart this machine.
Damage in settings detected Settings have been restored Settings may be damaged Press OK Button	-	A error in the setup information of this machine was detected due to an unexpected power interruption. A recovery process was executed, but some settings may have been reset. Check that the settings you just configured have been applied correctly.
--- PU Flash Error	-	Firmware update has failed. Please update the firmware again. If the error persists, contact your dealer.
Communication Error	-	An error has occurred in this machine. Restart this machine. If the error persists, contact your dealer.
The program is being updated Do not turn off the power It takes about 5 minutes The machine will not be available until it is completed	-	FW Updating. If the power is turned off halfway, this machine may not be able to start. When update is completed, the machine restarts automatically.
--- Toner Low.	-	The toner is low. Please prepare a new toner cartridge. After the message of replacement is displayed, please replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
--- The optimal toner cartridge for this printer is not installed	-	The toner cartridge is not optimal for this machine. It is recommended to use the toner cartridge that is optimal for this machine.

Message	Error code	Description
--- Image Drum Near Life.	-	The image drum is approaching its service life. Please prepare a new image drum. After the message of replacement is displayed, please replace the image drum with a new one.
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life Press HELP for details	353	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Please prepare a new image drum. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum(P.300) " or " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life Press HELP for details	347	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Please prepare a new image drum. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum(P.300) " or " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life Press HELP for details	563	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Please prepare a new image drum. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
--- Fuser Near Life.	-	The fuser unit is approaching the end of its service life. Please prepare a new fuser unit. After the message of replacement is displayed, please replace the fuser unit with a new one.
--- Fuser Life. Change Fuser.	-	The fuser unit has reached the end of its service life. Please replace the fuser unit with a new one. To replace the fuser unit, please refer to " Replacing the maintenance kit(P.312) ".
--- Toner Empty.	-	The toner cartridge is empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
--- Install Toner.	-	The toner cartridge is empty. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
--- Image Drum Life.	-	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Replace the image drum with a new one. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
--- Image Drum Life. nnn Pages Left.	-	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. The printing is impossible with the displayed number of sheets. Please replace the image drum with a new one as soon as possible. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
--- Image Drum Life. Print Quality Not Guaranteed.	-	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Print quality cannot be guaranteed. Please replace the image drum with a new one as soon as possible. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life Press HELP for details	683	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Printing cannot be continued. Please prepare a new image drum. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305) ".
--- Tray Name Empty	-	There is no paper in the indicated tray. Please load paper.
--- Tray Name Cassette Missing	-	The displayed tray is not properly installed. Please install the tray.

Message	Error code	Description
--- Wait Timeout Is Disabled	-	Wait Timeout is set to [Off]. When the USB cable is connected, you may not be able to print from the network.
--- No Communication With The SNTP Server	-	Failed to retrieve the time from the SNTP server. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to check that the setting of [SNTP Server] is correct in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Time Setting].
--- Getting Target IP Failed. Check DHCP Settings	-	The DHCP server was not detected. Check that the DHCP server is connected to the same network of this machine.
--- Error Postscript Press OK Button	-	An error has occurred to Postscript data. Please check the print result. If there is a problem with the print result, execute the print job again. The problem may be solved if you select [Optimize to reduce error] in [PostScript Output Options] of the PS printer driver.
--- PDL Error Occurred Press OK Button	-	A PDL error has occurred. Press «OK» to clear the error display.
--- NFC Unit Error. NFC Function Not Available Press OK Button	-	 Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function. An error has occurred to the NFC unit. NFC-specific functions are not available. Turn off this machine and then turn it back on. If the same error message is displayed, contact your dealer. You can hide this message by selecting [Disable] for [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Others Setup] - [NFC Setup].
--- Collate Fail:Too Many Pages Press OK Button	-	The memory is full with the collation data. Reduce the number of pages of the print data.
--- Duplex Print Failed Press OK Button	-	Printed on one side because the paper setting is not applicable to duplex printing. To print on both sides, print it again from the tray with paper suitable for duplex printing. For paper settings applicable to duplex printing, please refer to " Applicable paper(P.74) ".
--- Print Restricted. Job Rejected Press OK Button	-	The print data from an user unauthorized to print was deleted. To print, contact the administrator of this machine.
--- Expired saved files have been deleted Press OK Button	-	The private print document whose retention date has passed was deleted.
--- E-mail receiving has been cancelled Press OK Button	-	The e-mail printing is canceled. Check the format and size of the file attached to the e-mail. Printing will be canceled in any of the following cases. - The format is not PDF, JPEG, or TIFF - No file is attached - The size exceeds 8 MB
--- File System Operation Failed Press OK Button	-	A file system error has occurred. Press «OK» on the operator panel to hide the message. If the same error occurs, contact your dealer.

Message	Error code	Description
--- Invalid Print Data Received Press OK Button	-	Received data was deleted because it cannot be handled by the machine in one of the following cases: The data contains commands that are not supported by the machine · The private print data is not complete Check the printer driver you are using, and then print it again.
--- Job Log Database Error Contact The Device Administrator Press OK Button	-	A database access error has occurred to writing or reading of print data logs. Turn off this machine and then turn it back on. If the same error message is displayed, contact your dealer.
--- IPv4 Address is Conflicted Change IPv4 Address	-	The IPv4 address conflicts with that of another machine. Please change the IPv4 address.
--- Error PDF Press OK Button	-	Printing is not possible because an error has occurred to the PDF file you tried to print. Print it again by using the printer driver from the application.
--- Invalid Password Press OK Button	-	Printing is not possible because the password set in the PDF file does not match the password you input. Please input the correct password.
--- Password required to print Press OK Button	-	Printing restrictions have been imposed on the PDF file. Please input the password required to print.
--- PDF Cache Write Error Press OK Button	-	Failed to cache the PDF file. Reduce the file size, split the PDF file and print it again.
--- Decode error occurred Press OK Button	-	Printing has failed because there was a problem with the specified file for Direct Print or the file attached to the e-mail. Confirm the specified file.
--- Can not read the file Press OK Button	-	An error occurred when the file is read from the USB memory. Re-insert the USB memory, and repeat the procedure from the beginning.
--- Failed to decrypt incoming data Please update the "Printer's Encryption Key" in the printer driver Press OK Button	-	An error has occurred when the machine decrypts the incoming data. Input the "Printer's Encryption Key" for encryption in the printer driver and print it again. For details, please refer to " Printing with print data encrypted (P.187)".
--- The account is locked. Data Deleted Contact The Device Administrator Press OK Button	-	Since the user specified in the Print Secure Job is locked out, the print data was deleted without printing. Wait until the lockout is lifted, and then print it again.
--- Received Data Type restricted Job rejected Press OK To Hide This Message	-	When [PJL Security Enhancement] is set to [Mode 1], the received job was rejected because unencrypted data containing confidential data was received over the network. Open the dedicated printer driver and utilities for this machine, and set [Print Data Encryption] to [On] in the printer driver settings. Alternatively, if necessary, temporarily set [PJL Security Enhancement] to [Off], and then either print the job again, or run the operation from your utilities.

Message	Error code	Description
--- Job Type restricted Job rejected Press OK Button	-	The print data was canceled because only Private Print is enabled with restrictions. Select [Private Print] from [Job Type] in the printer driver. Refer to " Printing with print data encrypted and password set (Private Print) (P.190)".
Install Paper Paper Size %MEDIA_SIZE_PANEL%	-	The print mode has been specified in which paper is loaded in the MP tray and fed one by one. Load proper paper in the MP tray, and press «OK» on the operator panel. If you are printing a multi-page document, the same message appears each time after one page is printed. Press «OK» each time.
Recovered from error nnn Print again if the printing result does not come as expected Press OK Button	-	An error has occurred inside this machine, and the machine has restarted. Check that the printing goes as expected, since the machine may have restarted during printing. Print it again if the printing does not work as expected.
Change Paper in Tray Name Paper Size Media Type Press OK Button Press HELP for details	660, 661, 662, 663, 664	The media type of the paper loaded in the displayed tray did not match that of the paper you are trying to print on. Check the paper settings of the application you are trying to print from and the paper tray setup, and match the media type of the paper. 660: MP tray; 661: Tray 1; 662: Tray 2; 663: Tray 3; 664: Tray 4
Change Paper in Tray Name Paper Size Media Type Press OK Button Press HELP for details	460, 461, 462, 463, 464	The paper size or both the paper size and media type of the paper loaded in the displayed tray did not match the settings of the paper you are trying to print on. Check the paper size settings of the application you are trying to print from and the paper size settings of the tray, and match the paper size settings. If the paper of the size can be loaded in either portrait or landscape, please note the orientation of the paper. If you print on the paper of a size different from the displayed paper size, a paper jam may occur. 460: MP tray; 461: Tray 1; 462: Tray 2; 463: Tray 3; 464: Tray 4
Memory Overflow Press OK Button Press HELP for details	420	The memory is insufficient. Print it again after lowering the printing quality in the printer driver.
Insufficient memory If using multiple functions, finish the function being used before attempting another If the problem does not improve, reduce the resolution Press OK Button	-	The memory is insufficient. Print it again after lowering the printing quality in the printer driver.
Error While Initializing Settings Press OK Button	751	 Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function. The initial value set with the NFC Setting Tool is not properly reflected in the device settings. You can check the reflection result from [Export NFC Setting Log] on the web page.

Message	Error code	Description
Wireless startup failed Press OK Button Press HELP for details	517	Restart this machine. If the problem still persists even after the reboot, power off this machine and check if the wireless LAN module is installed. If the wireless LAN module is not installed, set [Extended Network] to [Disable]. If the wireless LAN module is installed, check if the model name of the wireless LAN module is compatible with this machine. If the model name is incorrect, replace the wireless LAN module with the one suitable for this machine. If the model name is correct, consult your dealer.
Wireless settings are incomplete Press OK Button Press HELP for details	505	The wireless LAN settings are not correct. Please reset the wireless LAN from the beginning. Please refer to " Connection form via a wireless LAN(P.45) " for details. If the problem still persists, initialize the network settings and reset the wireless LAN settings. To initialize the network settings, please refer to " Initializing network settings(P.235) ".
Not connected to wireless access point Press OK Button Press HELP for details	506	It is not connected to the wireless LAN access point. Or, the wireless communication may be poor. Check that the power of the wireless LAN access point is turned on. Check that the wireless LAN settings are correct. Refer to " Connection form via a wireless LAN(P.45) " or " Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P.46) " for details.
Wired(LAN2) startup failed Press OK Button Press HELP for details	507	The wired LAN2 module is not installed properly. Or, the wired LAN2 module may be broken. Please reinstall the wired LAN2 module. Refer to " Installing the extended wired LAN module(P.37) " for details. If the error persists, contact your dealer.
Can not connect to the wireless access point Timeout Press OK Button Press HELP for details	526	Could not connect to the wireless LAN access point. Could not connect to the wireless access point within the specified time of WPS. Check that the wireless access point is turned on, and then run WPS again.
Can not connect to the wireless access point Overlap Press OK Button Press HELP for details	527	Could not connect to the wireless LAN access point. It is possible that you could not connect to the wireless access point because another handset is running WPS. Wait for a while and then run WPS again.
Can not connect to the wireless access point The security selected is not supported by WPS Press OK Button Press HELP for details	528	Could not connect to the wireless LAN access point. The wireless access point may not comply with the WPS standard. If you still cannot connect even after running WPS again, manually set and connect.
Can not connect to the wireless access point Communication error Press OK Button Press HELP for details	529	Could not connect to the wireless LAN access point. There may be something wrong with the wireless LAN module. If you still cannot connect even after restarting the machine and running WPS again, contact your dealer.
Receiving Data Timeout Press OK Button Press HELP for details	519	The data could not be received within the correct time. When the printing does not work as expected, set a longer time in [Menus] - [User Setup] - [System Adjust] - [Timeout Injob].

Message	Error code	Description
Firmware Update Error Please try again If network doesn't work, please try firmware update over USB	-	Firmware update has failed. Please update the firmware again. Please refer to " Firmware update(P.347) " for details.
Rear Output Tray Open Duplex Not Available Press HELP for details	581	The rear output tray is open. Close the rear output tray. For details of the rear output tray, please refer to " Rear output tray(P.88) ".
No Paper In Tray Name Load Paper of Paper Size Press HELP for details	490, 491, 492, 493, 494	There is no paper in the indicated tray. Please load paper. 490: MP tray; 491: Tray 1; 492: Tray 2; 493: Tray 3; 494: Tray 4
No cassette for Tray Name Reset it Press HELP for details	430, 431, 432, 433, 440, 441, 442	The printing has stopped because the displayed paper cassette is not properly installed. Pull the paper cassette out, and insert it back. 430, 440: Tray 1; 431, 441: Tray 2; 432, 442: Tray 3; 433: Tray4
Install Toner Waste Toner Full Press HELP for details	413	The toner cartridge is empty. You can continue using the machine for a while by opening and closing the top cover, but the image drum may be damaged. Therefore, please replace the toner cartridge with a new one promptly. To replace the toner cartridge, please refer to " Replacing toner cartridges(P.298) ".
The optimal toner cartridge for this printer is not installed Press HELP for details	553, 557, 617, 623	The toner cartridge is not optimal for this machine. It is recommended to use the toner cartridge that is optimal for this machine.
The toner cartridge is not installed Press HELP for details	613	The toner cartridge is not installed. Install the toner cartridge. To install the toner cartridge, please refer to " Replacing toner cartridges(P.298) ".
Used or non-genuine consumables/maintenance parts are installed Refer to "Troubleshooting" in the User's Manual	709	If you have installed an empty toner cartridge that was previously used in another machine, replace it with a new toner cartridge. You can use any consumables/maintenance parts, but the print quality may be lowered and the optimum performance may not be obtained. If the use of non-genuine consumables/maintenance parts causes damage to the product or results in your product not functioning to its full specification, such damage or effects on the product are not covered by warranty. When you understand the above points and use non-genuine consumables/maintenance parts, follow the procedure below. 1. Power off the main unit. 2. Power on this machine while pressing «CANCEL» on the operator panel. 3. When "Ready To Print" appears, release «CANCEL». The above operation will be recorded inside this machine.
A toner sensor error has occurred Press HELP for details	543	A toner sensor error has occurred. Rotate the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge towards the front until it stops, and then rotate the blue lever again all the way in until it stops. If the error persists, contact your dealer.

Message	Error code	Description
Check Paper Reset Paper in Tray Name Press HELP for details	400	Multiple sheets of paper are fed at a time from the displayed tray. Or, the paper of a size different from the paper size setting of the tray is fed. Remove the jammed paper. Remove the paper temporarily from the tray when multiple sheets of paper are fed at a time. Shuffle the paper well, horizontally align the edge of paper, and load the paper in the tray again. If there are still multiple sheets of paper fed at a time, it may be improved by reversing the surface and back of the paper and loading it again. Otherwise, check that the size of the paper to print on matches the paper size setting of the tray.
Install New Image Drum Image Drum Life To Exceed the Life, Press OK Button Press HELP for details	567	The image drum has reached the end of its service life. Replace the image drum with a new one. You can continue printing for a while by pressing «OK» on the operator panel, but the print quality is not guaranteed. To replace the image drum, please refer to " Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge (P.305)".
The toner cartridge is not installed properly Please reinstall the toner cartridge Press HELP for details	547	The toner cartridge is not installed properly. Check that the protective tape on the toner cartridge has been peeled off. If the error persists, contact your dealer.
The fuser unit is not installed properly Reinstall it Press HELP for details	320	The fuser unit is not properly installed. Please reinstall the fuser unit. To install the fuser unit, please refer to " Replacing the maintenance kit (P.312)". If the error persists, contact your dealer.
Close Cover Name Press HELP for details	310, 311, 752	The indicated cover is open. Close the cover. 310: Top Cover (Front); 311: Top Cover; 752: Top Cover (Rear)
Paper jam occurred Paper jam in number place(s) Remove the paper Press ▼ to locate jam Press HELP for details	632, 633, 634, 638, 639	A paper jam has occurred. Multiple sheets of paper remain inside this machine. When the scroll button on the operator panel is pressed, the lamp for the place where paper is jammed blinks. Remove all the paper from where the lamp blinks.
Paper jam occurred Paper jam in number place(s) Remove the paper Press ▼ to locate jam Press HELP for details	390, 391, 392, 393, 394	A paper jam has occurred in the paper feed path from the displayed tray. Remove the jammed paper. If no paper is jammed, feeding has failed. Reduce the number of paper loaded in the tray. Also, make sure that the paper stopper position matches the paper size. Cleaning the paper feed roller may improve the situation. 390: MP tray; 391: Tray 1; 392: Tray 2; 393: Tray 3; 394: Tray 4
Paper jam occurred Paper jam in number place(s) Remove the paper Press ▼ to locate jam Press HELP for details	372, 380, 381, 382, 389	A paper jam has occurred. Multiple sheets of paper remain inside this machine. When the scroll button on the operator panel is pressed, the lamp for the place where paper is jammed blinks. Remove all the paper from where the lamp blinks.
The printing was stopped because the rear output tray was opened Remove the paper Press HELP for details	409	The printing was stopped because the rear output tray was opened during printing. Close the rear output tray, open the top cover (front), and remove the paper.

Message	Error code	Description
Language Change Failed Error num: Code	-	Failed to change the display language on the display. Restart this machine, and reset the language setting.
Power off and wait for a while %FATAL1%:Condensing Error %FATAL1%:Thermal Error	-	Condensation has occurred inside this machine. Turn off the power, and then turn the power back on after a while. If the same error message is displayed, contact your dealer.
Service call nnn:Error	-	An error has occurred inside this machine. Please contact your dealer.
nnn:Error %FATAL1%:Error	-	An error has occurred inside this machine. Please contact your dealer.
nnn:Error nnn %FATAL1%:Error	-	An error has occurred inside this machine. Please contact your dealer.
nnn:Error Restart Printer Service Call	-	An error has occurred inside this machine. Please contact your dealer.
nnn:Error nnn Restart Printer Service Call	-	An error has occurred inside this machine. Please contact your dealer.
Power Off and Wait for a While %FATAL1%:Thermal Error Service Call	-	The temperature is high inside this machine. Turn off the power, and then turn the power back on after a while. If the same error message is displayed, contact your dealer.

When a paper jam occurs

For the error code 372

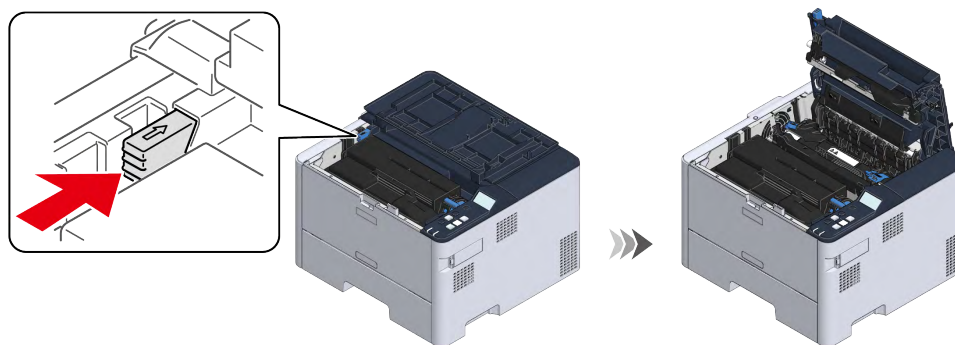
1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



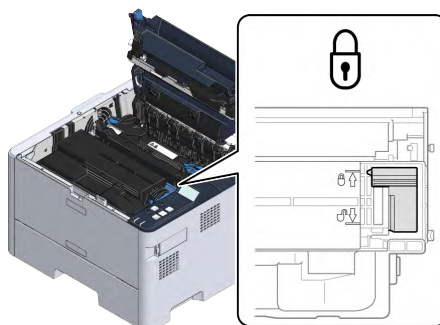
2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



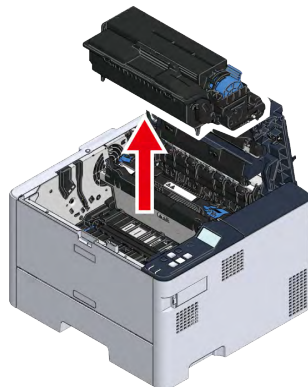
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4** Take out the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



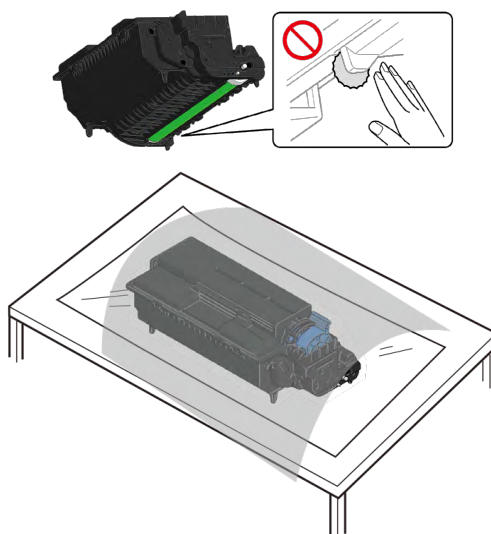
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



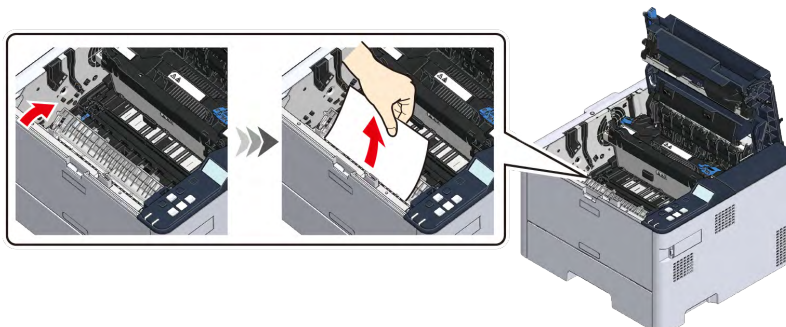
- 5** Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



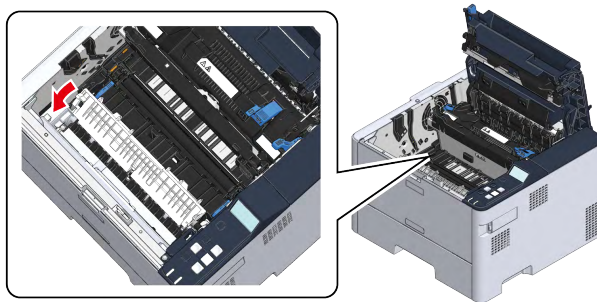
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



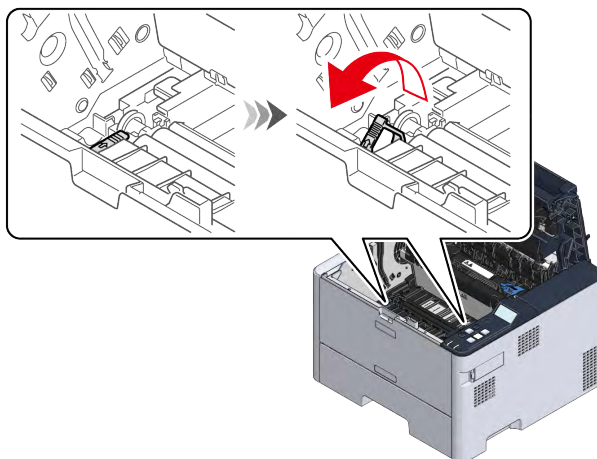
- 6** Lift the transparent guide, and slowly pull the paper upwards to remove it.



- 7** Return the transparent guide back to its original position.



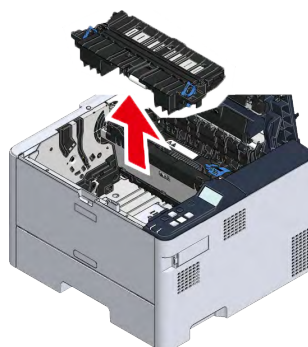
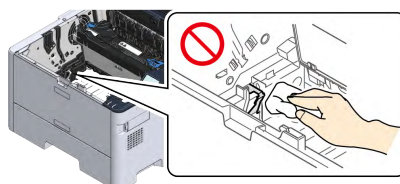
- 8** Unlock the transfer unit by rotating the blue handles on its both sides towards the front side.



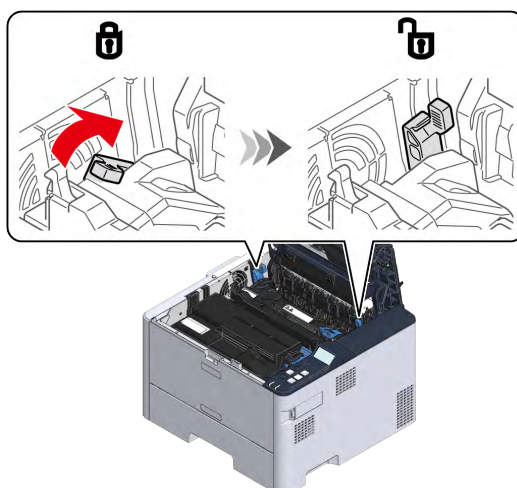
- 9** Remove the transfer roller unit.



- Do not wipe off any grease applied to the metal part inside the main unit.

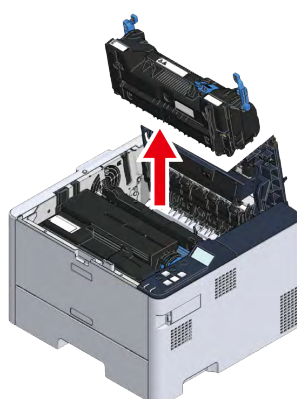


- 10** Unlock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the back side until it reaches the unlock mark position.

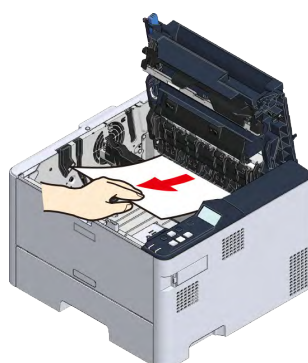


- 11** Remove the fuser unit from this machine by holding its central handle.

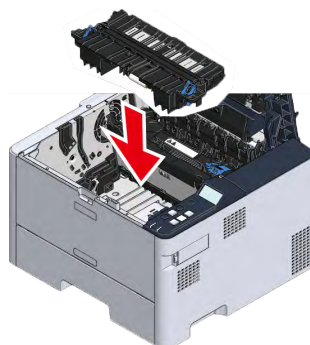
 CAUTION	Burns may be caused.	
As the fuser unit may be hot, be cautious during operation and always hold the handle to lift it. When it is hot, wait until it cools down before any operation.		



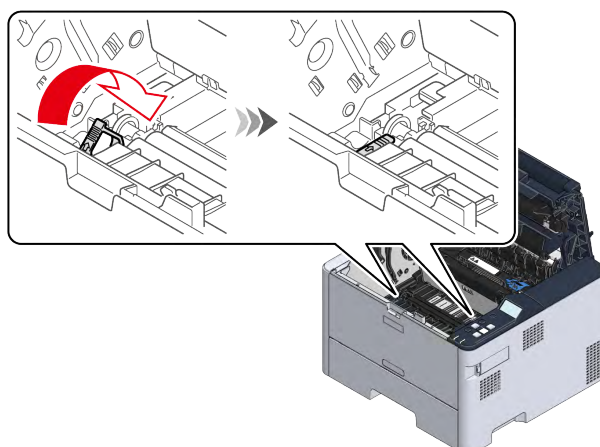
- 12** Remove the paper if it is visible.



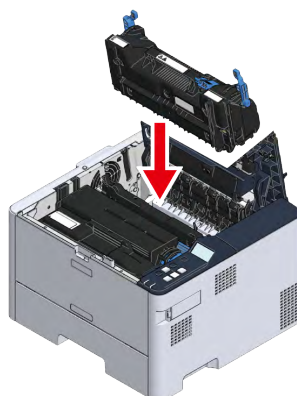
- 13** Install the transfer roller unit back into this machine.



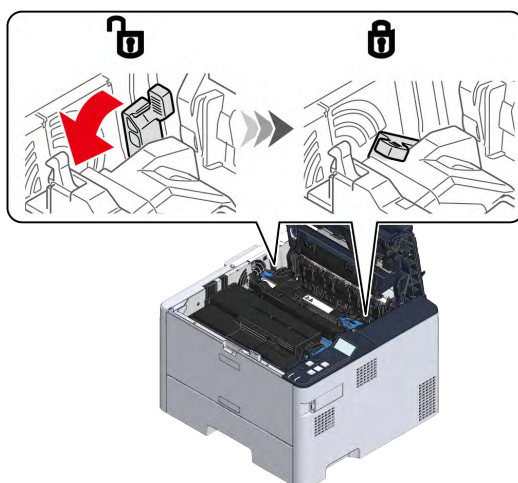
- 14** Lock the transfer unit by tilting its left and right blue levers toward the back.



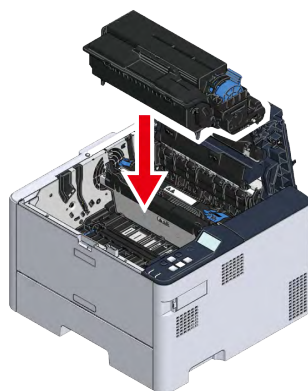
- 15** Install the fuser unit into this machine by holding its central handle.



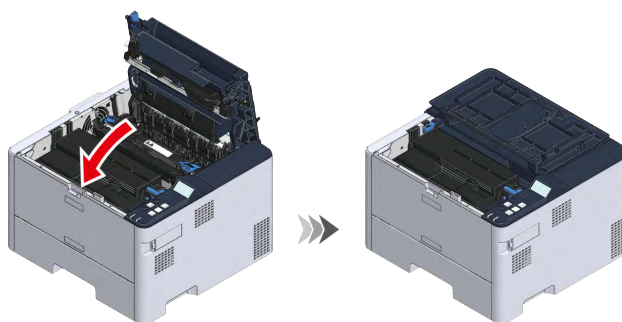
- 16** Lock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the front side until it reaches the lock mark position.



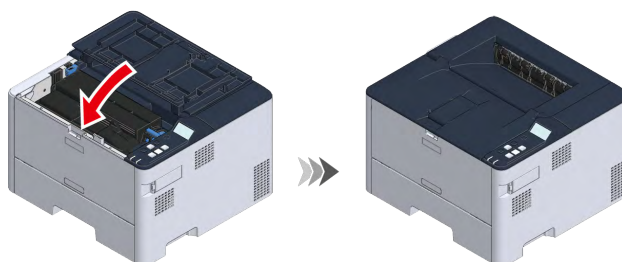
- 17** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 18** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 19** Close the top cover (front).



For the error code 380

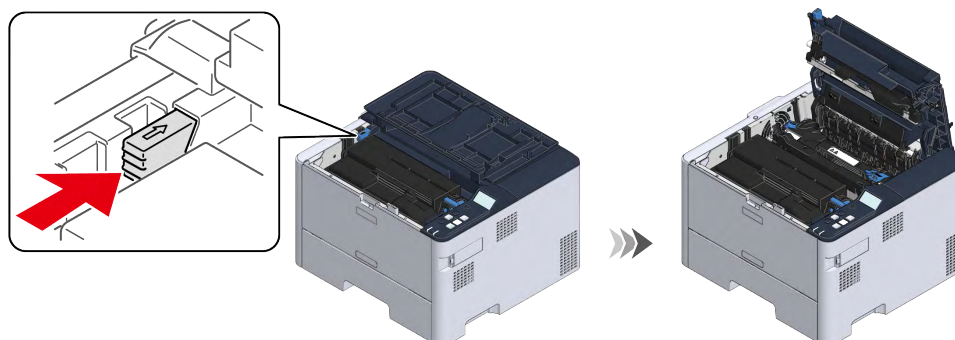
1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



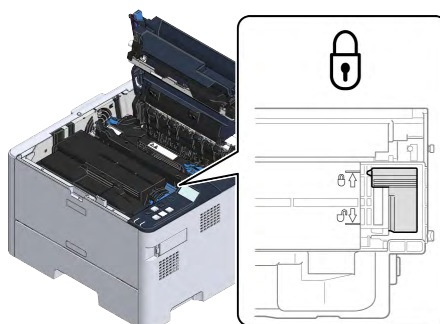
2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



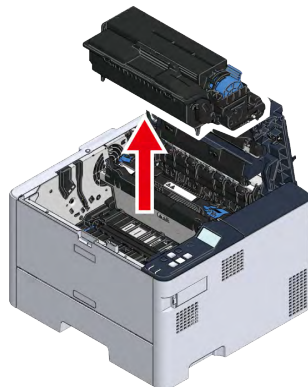
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



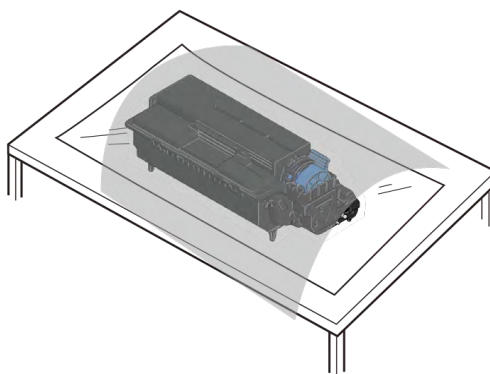
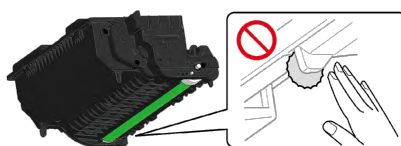
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



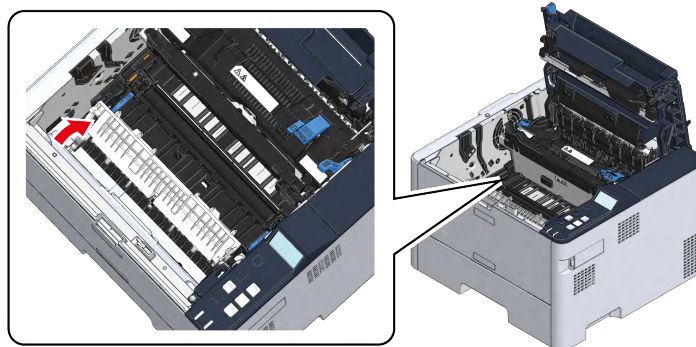
- 5** Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



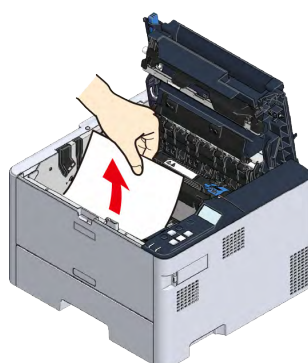
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



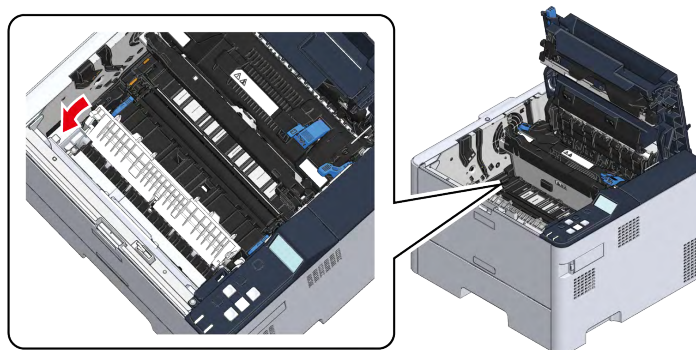
- 6 Lift the transparent guide.



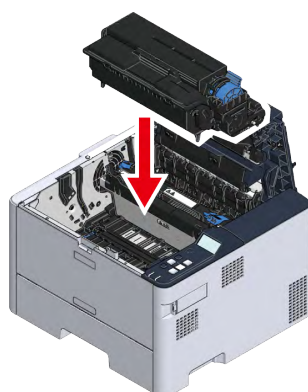
- 7 Slowly pull the paper upwards to remove it.



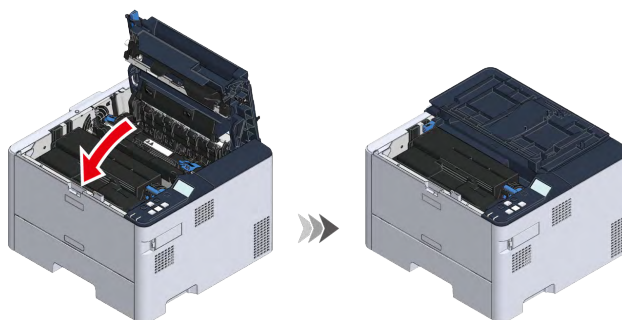
- 8 Return the transparent guide back to its original position.



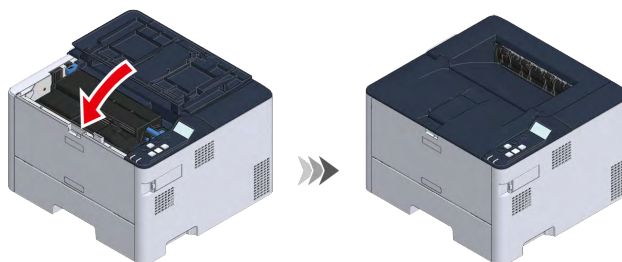
- 9 Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 10** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 11** Close the top cover (front).



For the error code 381 or 382

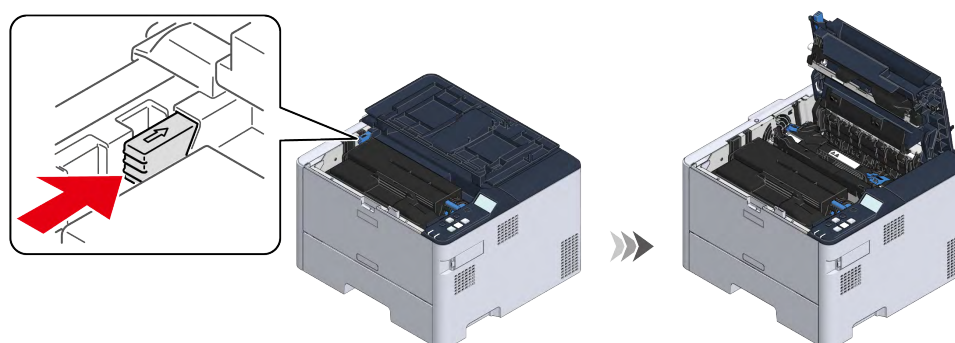
- 1** Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



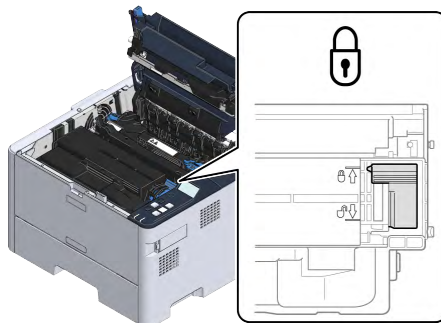
- 2** Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



- 3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



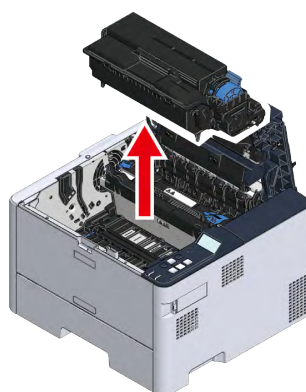
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4 Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



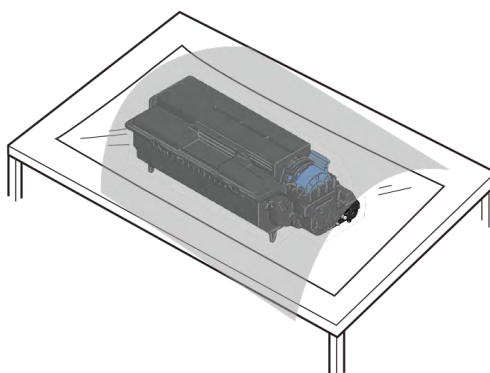
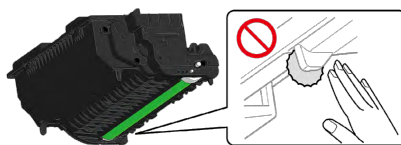
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



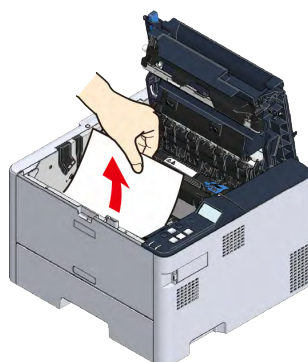
- 5 Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



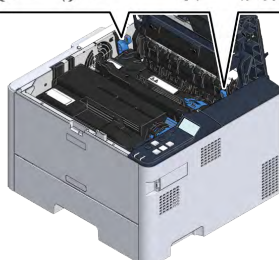
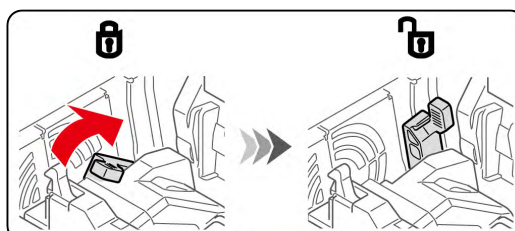
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



- 6 Remove the paper if it is visible.

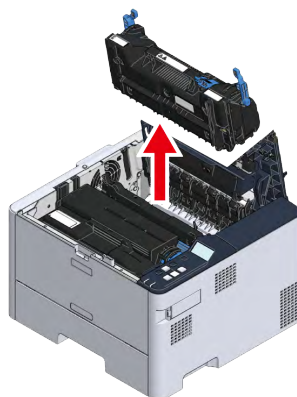


- 7 Unlock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the back side until it reaches the unlock mark position.



8 Remove the fuser unit from this machine by holding its central handle.

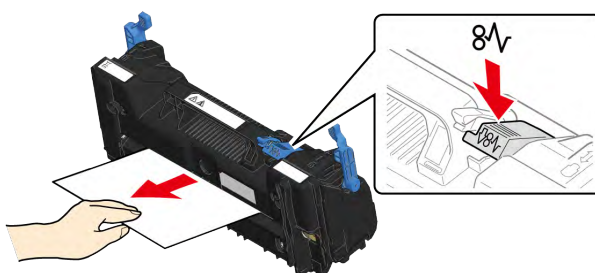
 CAUTION	Burns may be caused.	
As the fuser unit may be hot, be cautious during operation and always hold the handle to lift it. When it is hot, wait until it cools down before any operation.		



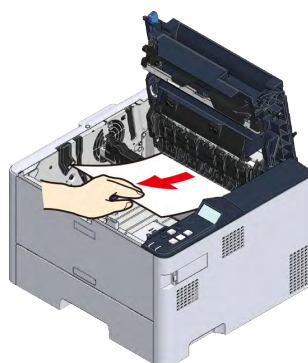
9 If there is still paper stuck in the fuser unit, place the fuser unit on a flat surface, and pull out the paper towards the front while pressing the jam release lever on the top of the fuser unit.



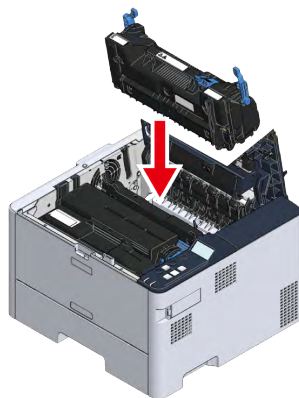
- Do not press the envelope lever (blue, small). Otherwise, poor fixing may be caused.



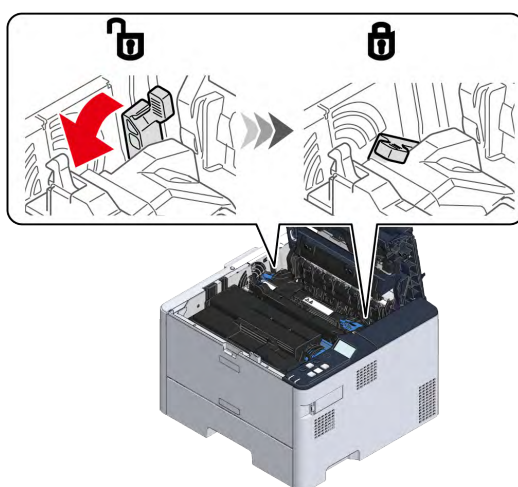
10 Remove any paper left in the main unit of this machine.



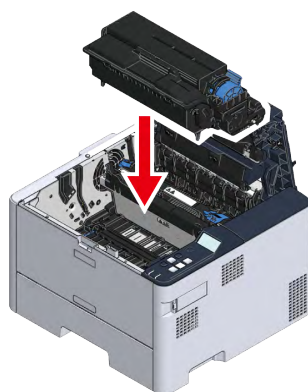
- 11** Install the fuser unit into this machine.



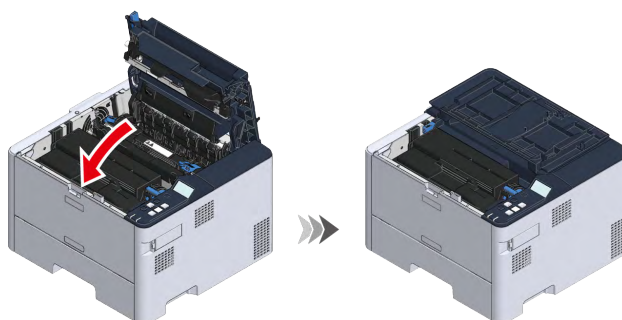
- 12** Lock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the front side until it reaches the lock mark position.



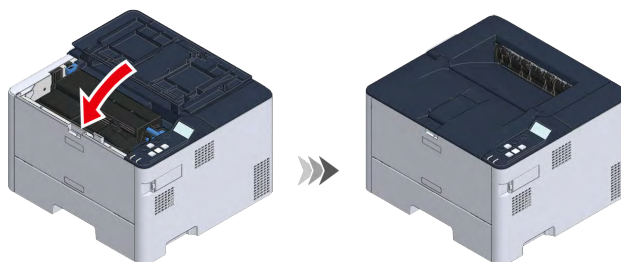
- 13** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 14** Close the top cover from the rear side.

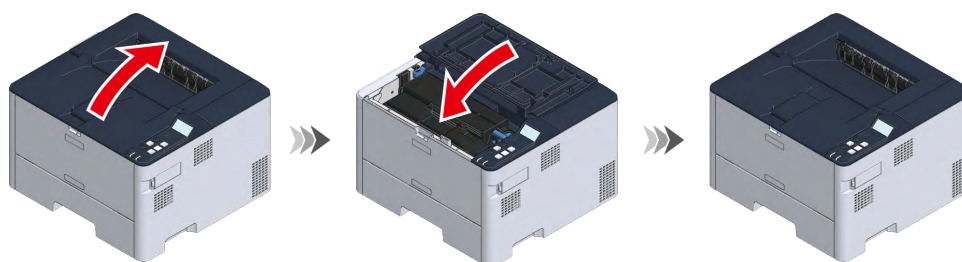


- 15 Close the top cover (front).



For the error code 389

- 1 Open and close the top cover (front).



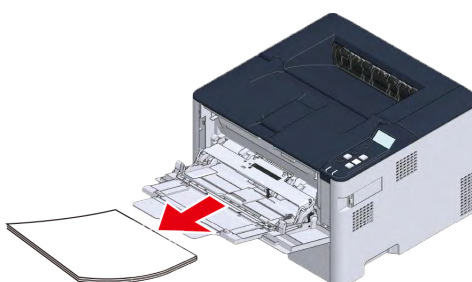
- 2 Remove the jammed paper by following the error message displayed.

For the error code 390

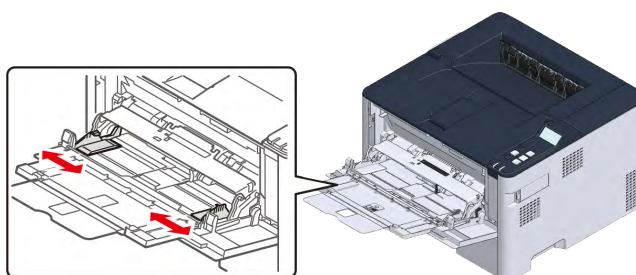


- If the paper jam persists, it may help to clean or replace the feed roller or reduce the loaded number of sheets of paper.

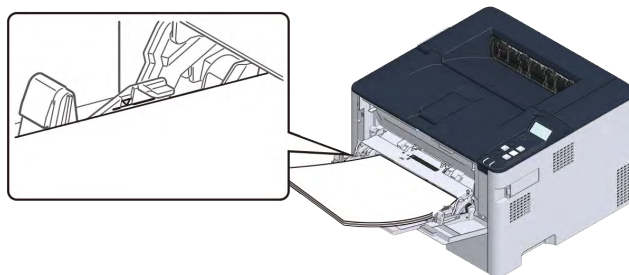
- 1 Remove the paper from the MP tray.



- 2 Adjust the paper guide.



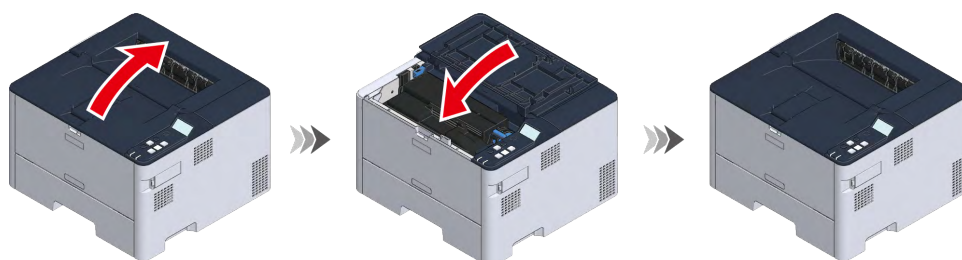
- 3 Load the paper with the print side facing up.



- 4 Open and close the top cover (front).

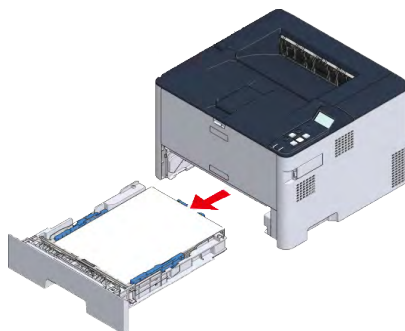


- The error will not be cleared without opening and closing the top cover (front).

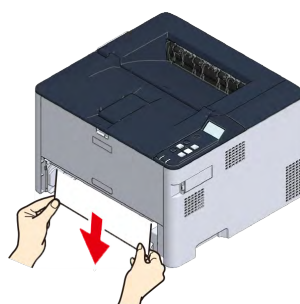


For the error code 391

- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 1 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



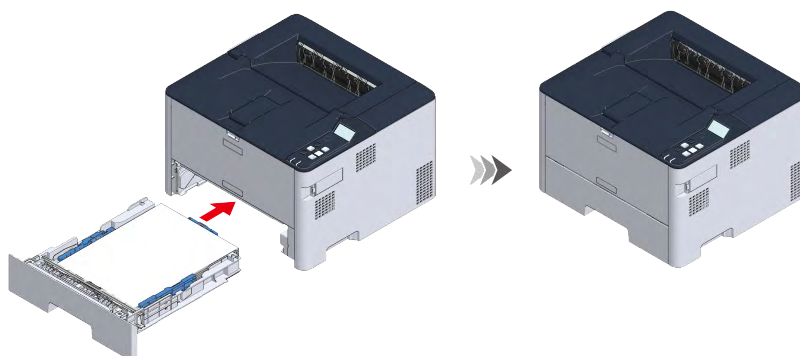
- 2 Remove the jammed paper.



- 3 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



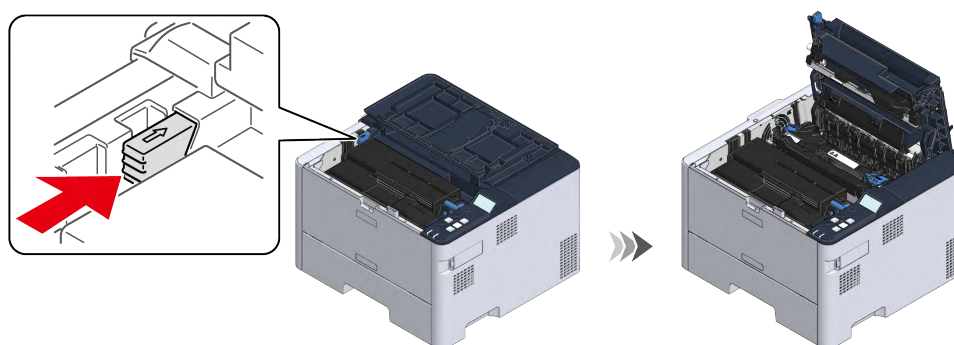
- 4 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



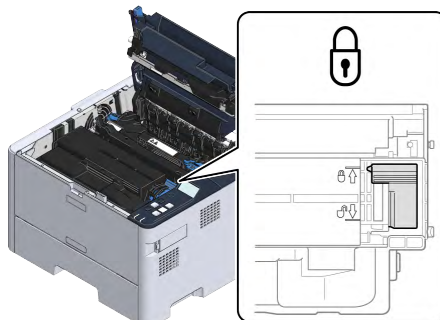
- 5 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



- 6** Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



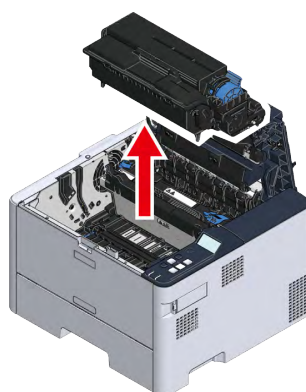
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 7** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



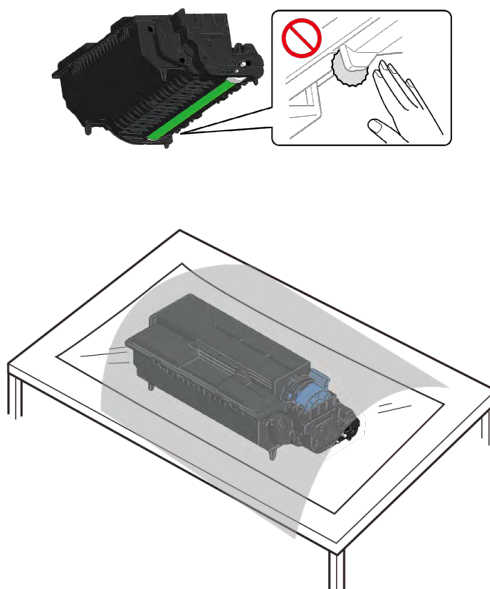
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



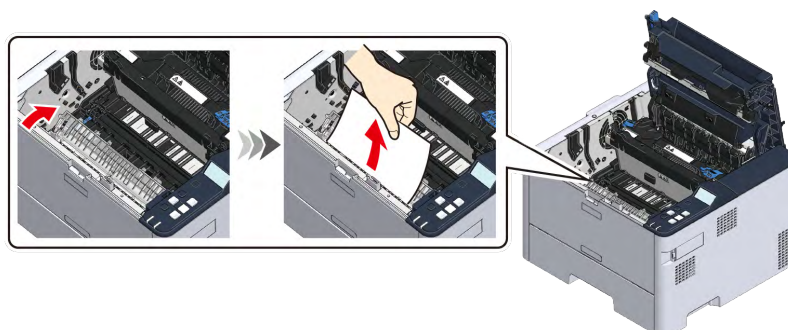
- 8 Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



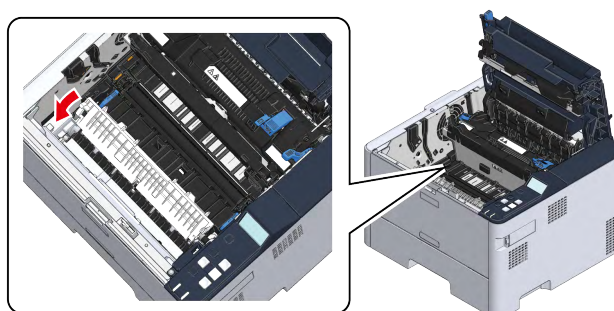
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



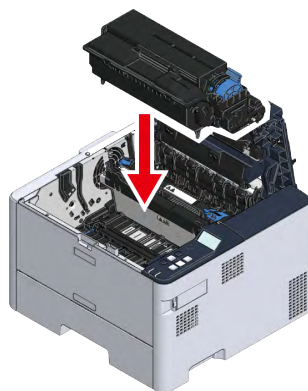
- 9 Lift the transparent guide, and slowly pull the paper upwards to remove it.



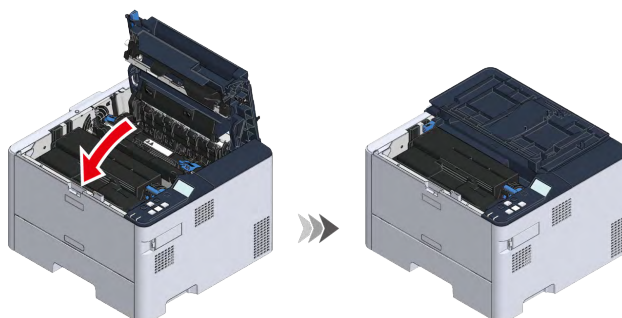
- 10 Return the transparent guide back to its original position.



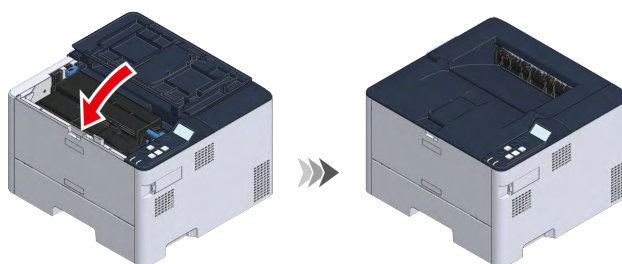
- 11** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 12** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 13** Close the top cover (front).



For the error code 392, 393 or 394

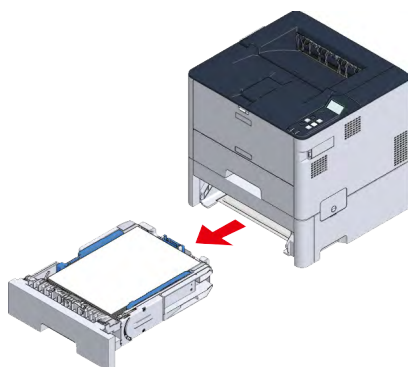
This section takes the error code 392 for example indicating that a paper jam occurs when paper is feeding from Tray 2.

Pull out the paper cassette of Tray 3 (for the error code 393) or Tray 4 (for 394), and remove the jammed paper.

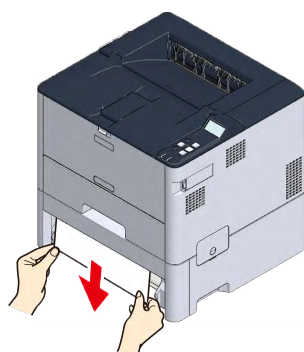


- If the same error occurs repeatedly even after the jammed paper is removed, please refer to "[Troubleshooting for the paper](#)(P.410)".

- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 2 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



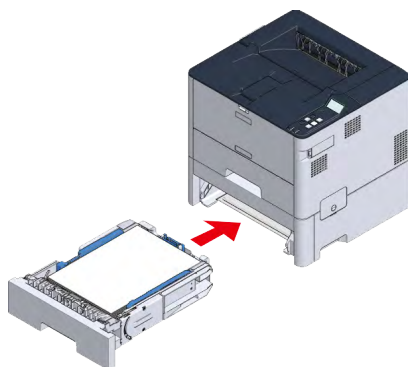
- 2 Remove the jammed paper.



- 3 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



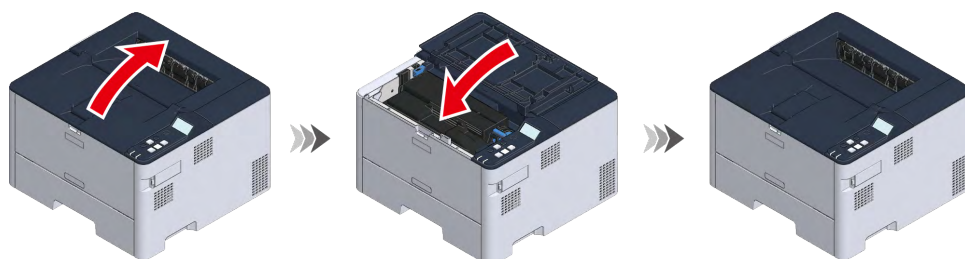
- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



- 4 Open and close the top cover (front).



- The error will not be cleared without opening and closing the top cover (front).

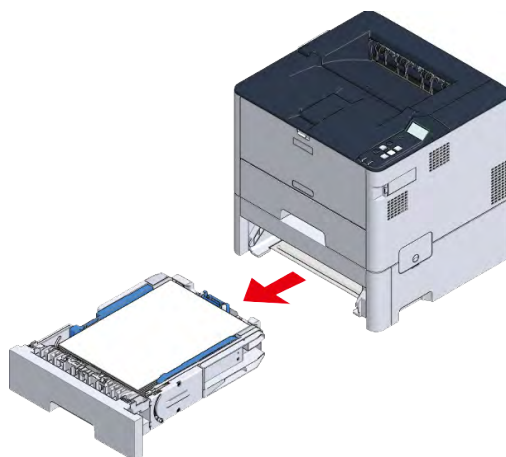


For the error code 632, 633 or 634

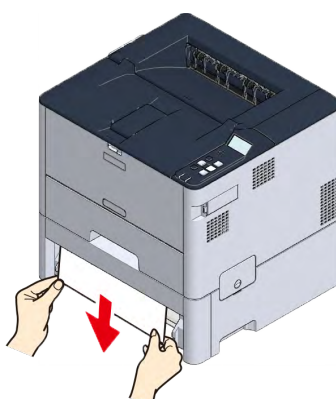
This section takes the error code 632 for example indicating that a paper jam occurs to Tray 2.

Pull out the paper cassette of Tray 3 (for the error code 633) or Tray 4 (for 634), and remove the jammed paper.

- 1 Pull out the lower paper cassette of Tray 2 until it stops, and then lift it slightly upward to remove it.



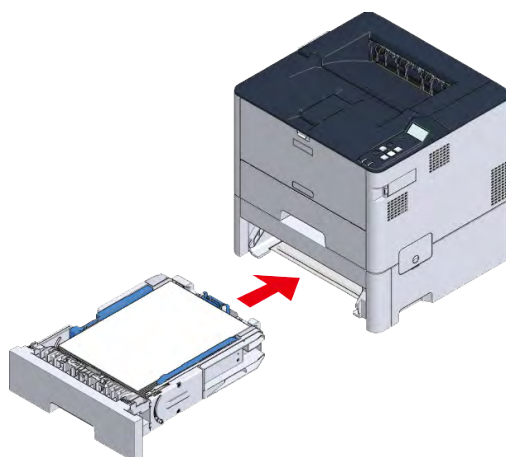
- 2 Remove the jammed paper.



- 3 Insert the paper cassette into the main unit from slightly above and install it back to its original position.



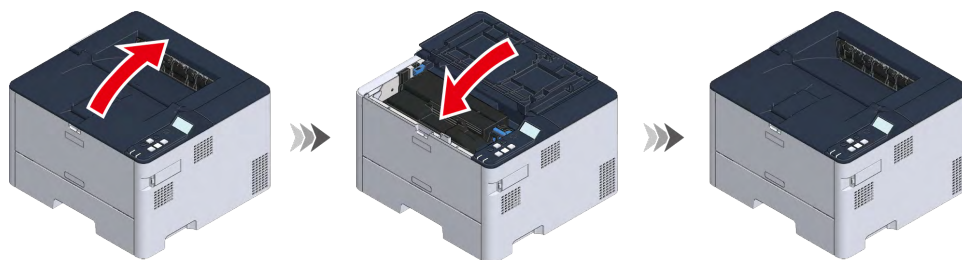
- If you return the paper cassette to the main unit by force, the paper stopper may shift.



4 Open and close the top cover (front).



- The error will not be cleared without opening and closing the top cover (front).



For the error code 638

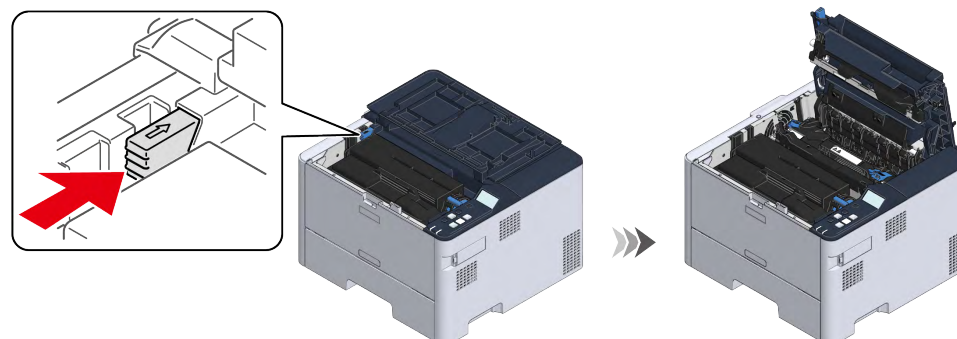
1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



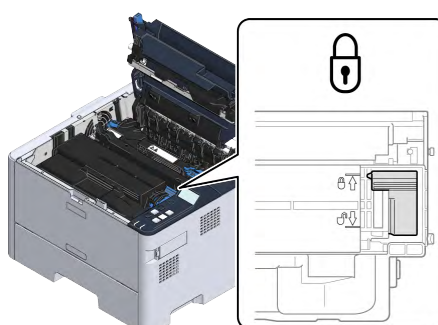
2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



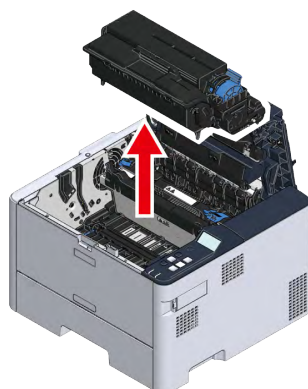
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4 Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



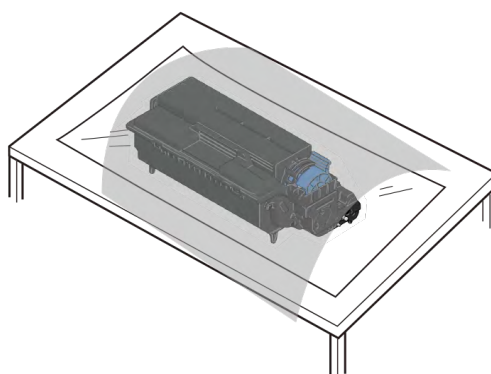
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



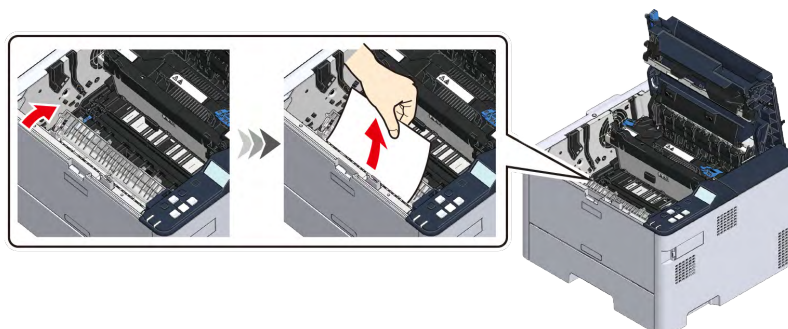
- 5 Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



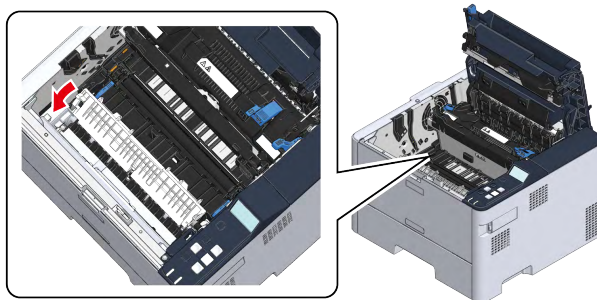
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



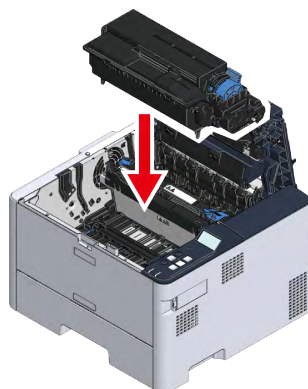
- 6 Lift the transparent guide, and slowly pull the paper upwards to remove it.



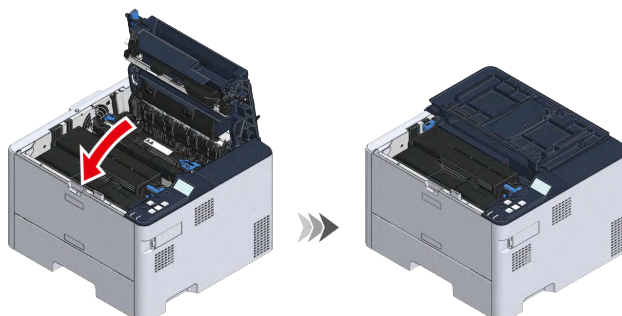
- 7** Return the transparent guide back to its original position.



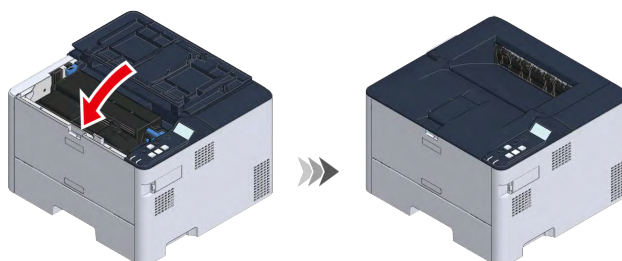
- 8** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 9** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 10** Close the top cover (front).



For the error code 639

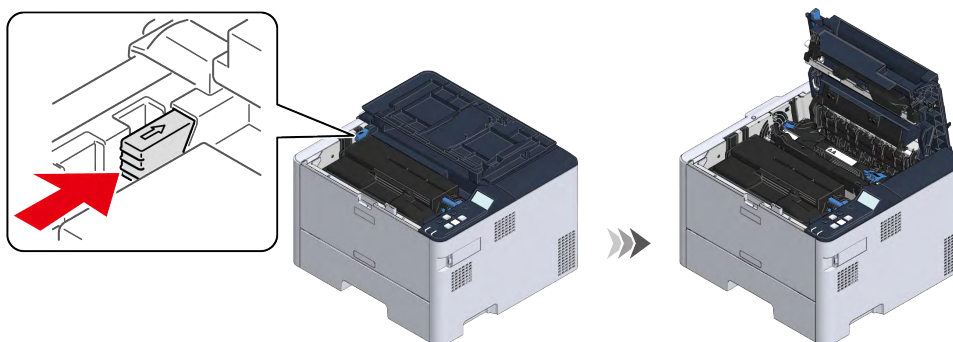
1 Open the top cover (front).



- Do not place any objects on the opened cover.



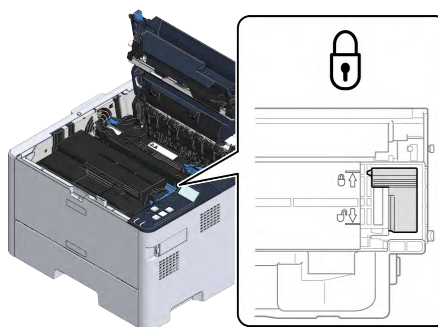
2 Press the blue part of the left side in the machine to open the top cover (whole).



3 Make sure that the blue lever on the right side of the toner cartridge is aligned with the lock mark.



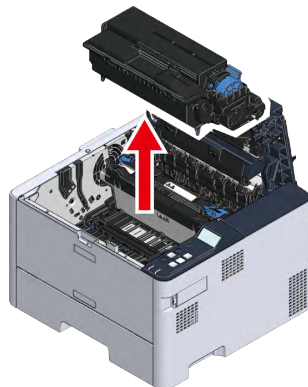
- Do not touch the blue lever. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off when the image drum is removed, thus causing the toner to scatter.



- 4** Remove the image drum. Remove the image drum together with the toner cartridge attached to it.



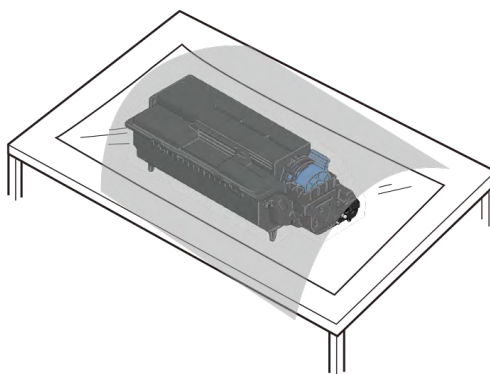
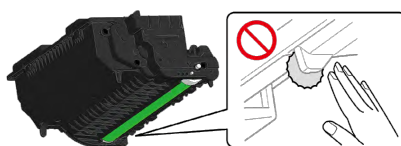
- Do not touch the blue lever on the toner cartridge. If the lever is moved, the toner cartridge may come off, thus causing the toner to scatter.



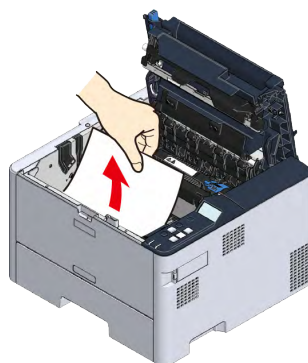
- 5** Place the removed image drum and toner cartridge on a flat surface and cover it with a piece of paper or the like to avoid direct light.



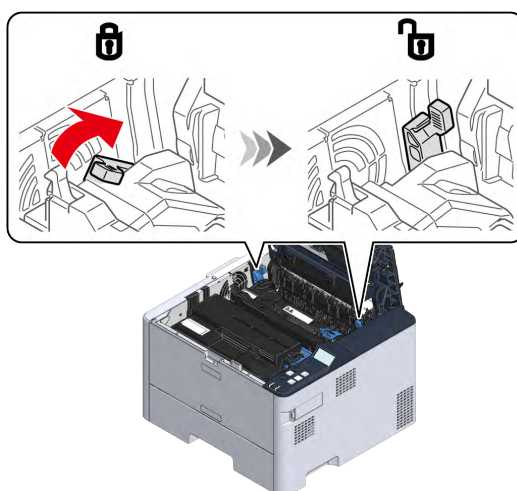
- Handle with adequate care since (the green tube of) the image drum is very easy to be damaged.
- Do not expose the image drum to direct sunlight or strong light (about 1,500 lux or above). Do not leave it uncovered for more than 5 minutes even under room lighting.
- Do not touch the gears on the bottom of the image drum.



- 6 Remove the paper if it is visible.



- 7 Unlock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the back side until it reaches the unlock mark position.



- 8 Remove the fuser unit from this machine by holding its central handle.

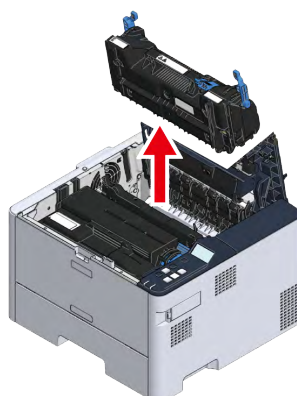


CAUTION

Burns may be caused.



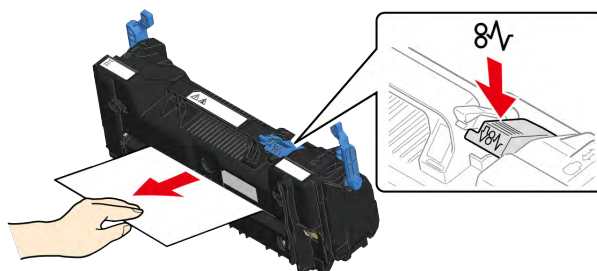
As the fuser unit may be hot, be cautious during operation and always hold the handle to lift it. When it is hot, wait until it cools down before any operation.



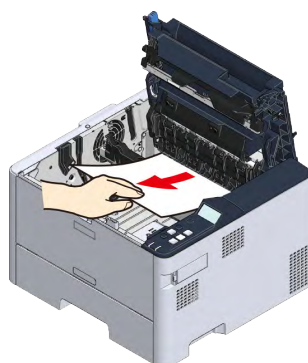
- 9 Place the fuser unit on a flat surface, and pull out the paper towards the front while pressing the jam release lever on the top of the fuser unit.



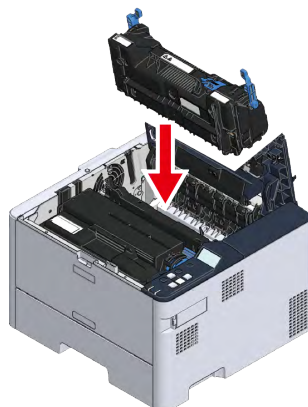
- Do not press the envelope lever (blue, small). Otherwise, poor fixing may be caused.



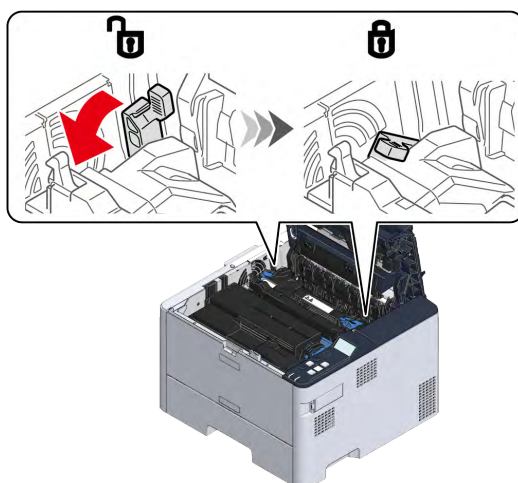
- 10 Remove the paper left inside the machine if any.



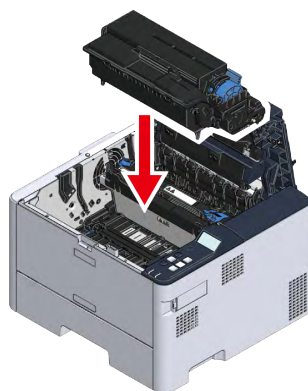
- 11 Install the fuser unit into this machine by holding its central handle.



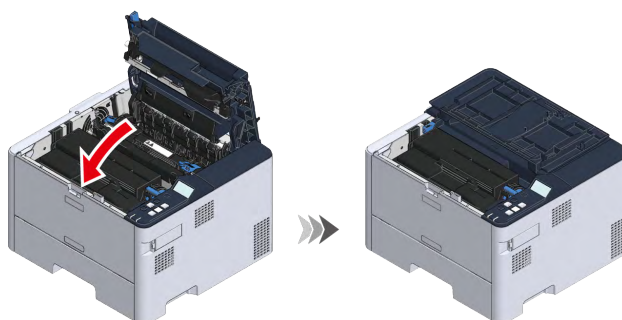
- 12** Lock the fuser unit by rotating the blue lock lever on its both sides towards the front side until it reaches the lock mark position.



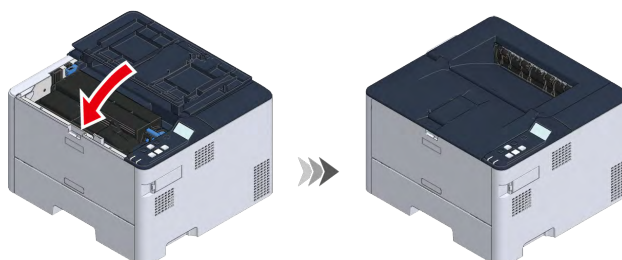
- 13** Install the image drum together with the toner cartridge into this machine.



- 14** Close the top cover from the rear side.



- 15** Close the top cover (front).



Trouble with printing

This section describes problems with printing from a PC.



- If the problem is not solved using the following explanation, contact your dealer.
- For problems arising from the application, contact the application development company.

I cannot print

For Windows/macOS

Cause	Solution	Reference
This machine powered is off.	Please turn the power on.	Turning the power on(P.73)
The LAN cable/USB cable is disconnected.	Please check that the cable is correctly connected to this machine and the PC.	Connecting via a wired LAN(P.37) Connecting via USB(P.62)
There is a problem with the cable.	Please replace the cable with a new one.	-
An error has occurred to this machine.	Please check the error message displayed on the display. Or, press «HELP» on the operator panel to check and clear the error.	Error message list(P.350)
The interface settings are disabled.	Please check the interface settings you are using on the operator panel.	Connecting via a wired LAN(P.37) Connection form via a wireless LAN(P.45) Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P.46) Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)

For Windows

Cause	Solution	Reference
This machine is not set as the default printer.	Set this machine as the default printer. Open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon of the device name (*), and select [Set as Default Printer]. The asterisk (*) represents the type of printer driver. (e.g. PCL6/PS) Uncheck [Let Windows manage my default printer].	-
The printout port of the printer driver is wrong.	Please select the output port to which the LAN cable/USB cable is connected.	-

Cause	Solution	Reference
The printer is set offline on the PC.	Open [Devices and Printers], right-click on the icon of the device name (*), and select [See what's printing]. When the icons are grouped, select the device name (*) from [See what's printing]. The asterisk (*) represents the type of printer driver. (e.g. PCL6/PS) In the displayed screen, select the [Printer] menu, and uncheck [Use Printer Offline].	-

Troubleshooting for Wired LAN connection

For Windows/macOS

Cause	Solution	Reference
A crossover cable is used.	Use a straight cable.	-
There is a compatibility problem with the hub.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the proper connection from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [Wired(LAN1) Setup] - [Hub Link Setting]. See the Instruction Manual supplied with the hub.	-
The settings of wired LAN (LAN1) are not appropriate.	Check the wired LAN (LAN1) settings.	Menus (Admin Setup)(P.112)
The settings related to extended wired LAN (LAN2) are not appropriate.	Check the wired LAN (LAN2) settings.	Menus (Admin Setup)(P.112)
Both wired LAN (LAN1) and extended wired LAN (LAN2) are connected to the same network segment.	Although this machine can use wired LAN (LAN1) and extended wired LAN (LAN2) at the same time, connecting wired LAN (LAN1) and extended wired LAN (LAN2) to the same subnet may cause unstable communication. To stabilize the communication, set the IP address of a different segment and connect it to a different network.	Menus (Admin Setup)(P.112)
The settings of wired LAN are not appropriate.	Only one of the following gateway addresses can be enabled: standard wired LAN (LAN1), extended wired LAN (LAN2) and wireless LAN. Select the standard wired LAN (LAN1) or extended wired LAN (LAN2) from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [General Setup] - [Enabling Default Gateway].	Menus (Admin Setup)(P.112)
Depending on the network device you are using, the connection may become unstable if Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE) of the wired network (LAN1) of this machine is enabled.	Check if the switching hub supports Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE). If supported, change [Network Setup] - [Network Connection] - [Wired(LAN1) Setup] - [Energy Efficient Ethernet] to [Disable] from the web page of this machine and check if it improves.	Managing the machine from the web page(P.200)
When the extended wired LAN (LAN2) is used, the wired LAN2 module is not enabled. * LAN2 does not support some specifications.	Set [Extended Network] to [Wired(LAN2)]. The extended wired LAN module and the wireless LAN module cannot be enabled at the same time.	1-2. Installing the extended wired LAN module (For wired LAN2)(P.37)

For Windows

Cause	Solution	Reference
The IP address is incorrect.	- Check that the IP address of this machine matches the one set on the PC. - Make sure the IP address does not overlap with that of other devices. - If [IP Address Set] is set to [Auto], the address may change dynamically. If the setting changes frequently, change [IP Address Set] of this machine to [Manual], and match the IP address of this machine with the one set on the PC. - Make sure the configured IP address, subnet mask and gateway address are all correct. - Make sure that the print port of the printer driver is correct. - For the OKI LPR utility, check the IP address settings with the OKI LPR utility.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89) OKI LPR utility(P.264)
The WSD port is in use.	When the print port does not function well with [WSD], specify the IP address or short printer name of this machine in the standard TCP/IP port, and add the print port.	-

Troubleshooting for wireless LAN connection

Unable to connect to wireless LAN

For Windows/macOS

Cause	Solution	Reference
The wireless LAN module is not enabled.	To connect to a wireless LAN, set [Extended Network] to [Wireless]. Wireless LAN and extended wired LAN (LAN2) cannot be used simultaneously.	Connection form via a wireless LAN(P.45) Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46) Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)
Proper settings are required for the connection.	To connect via a wireless LAN access point or a wireless LAN router, set the wireless LAN (Infrastructure) accordingly. To connect a mobile device directly to this machine, set the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) accordingly.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46) Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)

Cause	Solution	Reference
Network connection settings are incorrect.	- Wireless LAN (Infrastructure) and wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) cannot be enabled simultaneously. - To connect via a wireless LAN (Infrastructure), set [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] to [Disable] and [Wireless(Infrastructure)] to [Enable]. - To connect via a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct), set [Wireless(Infrastructure)] to [Disable] and [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] to [Enable].	Connection form via a wireless LAN(P.45) Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46) Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)
The settings of wireless LAN (Infrastructure) are incorrect.	If you are connected via a wireless LAN (Infrastructure), check the infrastructure settings.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)
The settings of wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) are incorrect.	To connect via a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct), check the Wi-Fi Direct settings.	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)
A timeout occurs during connection.	Connect by specifying the wireless LAN access point you want to use from the wireless LAN access points detected by this machine.	4-1. Connecting by selecting a wireless LAN access point(P.50)

For Windows

Cause	Solution	Reference
The IP address is incorrect.	- Check that the IP address of this machine matches the one set on the PC. - Make sure the IP address does not overlap with that of another machine. - If [IP Address Set] is set to [Auto], the address may change dynamically. If the setting changes frequently, change [IP Address Set] of this machine to [Manual], and match the IP address of this machine with the one set on the PC. - Make sure the configured IP address, subnet mask and gateway address are all correct. - If you are using the OKI LPR utility, check the IP address settings in the OKI LPR utility.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89) OKI LPR utility(P.264)
The WSD port is in use.	When the print port does not function well with [WSD], specify the IP address or short printer name of this machine in the Standard TCP/IP port, and add the print port.	-

Unable to connect to wireless LAN (Infrastructure)

First, print out the Network Information, and then check the following explanation while having a look at items numbered ① to ⑥ in the following figure in Wireless(Infrastructure) Information.

Network Information can be printed from [Print Information] - [Network].

Wireless(Infrastructure) Information			
Network FW Version	03.00	MAC Address	00:0C:29:00:00:00
① Wireless(Infrastructure)	Enable		
② SSID	AccessPoint1		
③ Security	WPA2-PSK	④ State	Connected
WEP Key Length	64bit	⑤ Band	2.4 GHz (B/G/N)
WEP Key Format	ASCII	BSSID	00:0C:29:00:00:00
WPA Encryption Type	AES	Channel	1
WPA Pre-shared Key Format	PASSPHRASE	⑥ RSSI	88 %
		Tx Rate	72.0 Mbps

Unable to connect to the access point (State of ④ is not set to "Connected")

Cause	Solution	Reference
[Wireless] is not selected in the [Extended Network] settings.	Select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [General Setup] - [Extended Network] - [Wireless].	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)
The wireless LAN access point does not function properly.	Check that the power of the wireless LAN access point is turned on and it functions properly.	-
[Wireless(Infrastructure)] is set to [Disable].* Above ①	Set [Wireless(Infrastructure)] to [Enable]. * Wireless LAN (Infrastructure) and wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) cannot be enabled simultaneously.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)
[SSID] is incorrect. Or it is blank.* Above ②	Check the SSID of the wireless LAN access point you want to connect is correct, and connect with the correct SSID. If it is blank, the settings for the wireless LAN connection of this machine are insufficient. Set [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting].	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)
The encryption key is incorrect.	Check the encryption key of the wireless LAN access point you want to connect is correct, and set the correct encryption key.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)
The setting of [Security] does not match the security of the wireless LAN access point.* Above ③	Check the security (encryption method) of the wireless LAN access point that you want to connect, and set it to keep consistent.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure)(P. 46)

Communication is not stable

Cause	Solution	Reference
The RSSI value is too small.* Above ⑥	The signal strength is insufficient. Put this machine in an unobstructed view position near the wireless LAN access point. (The recommended distance is 30 m or less.) Do not place an electric appliance (especially microwave oven or digital cordless telephone) that emits weak electronic waves near this machine. It may be difficult to connect if there is a metal, aluminum sash or reinforced concrete wall between this machine and the wireless LAN access point.	-

Cause	Solution	Reference
The current frequency band is congested.* Above ⑤	[Band] displays the current frequency band to which this machine is connected. This machine is compatible with the 2.4 GHz/5.0 GHz band. If the wireless LAN access point is compatible with the 2.4 GHz/5.0 GHz band, try changing the connecting frequency band of the machine (or changing the SSID settings).	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure) (P. 46)

Able to connect to the access point but unable to communicate

Cause	Solution	Reference
The IP address is in the same segment as the one on the wired side.	Since the communication may be unstable if the wired LAN and wireless LAN are connected to the same subnet, please connect them to different subnets.	-
The setting of the enabled default gateway is wired LAN instead of wireless LAN.	To communicate with a mobile device outside the segment via a wireless LAN, press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [General Setup] - [Enabling Default Gateway], and then set it to [Wireless(Infrastructure)]. In that case, the wired LAN cannot communicate with a mobile device outside the segment. * You can check from [General Information] - [Enabling Default Gateway] in Network Information.	Connecting via an access point (Infrastructure) (P. 46)

Unable to connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct)

First, print out the Network Information, and then check the following explanation while having a look at items numbered ① to ④ in the following figure in Wireless (Wi-Fi Direct) Information.

Network Information can be printed from [Print Information] - [Network].

Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Information

① Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)	Enable
② SSID	DIRECT-xp-OKI-B433-123456
③ Security	WPA2-PSK
WPA Encryption Type	AES
Channel	11
Auto Approval Setting	Disable
④ Number Of Connected	1

The mobile device cannot connect

Cause	Solution	Reference
[Wireless] is not selected in the [Extended Network] settings.	Select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [General Setup] - [Extended Network] - [Wireless].	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct) (P.58)
[Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)] is set to [Disable]. *Above ①	Select [Enable] in [Wireless Setting] - [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] - [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)]. * Wireless LAN (Infrastructure) and wireless LAN (Wi-Fi Direct) cannot be enabled simultaneously.	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct) (P.58)
[SSID] is not consistent with the SSID selected by the wireless terminal. *Above ②	Check that the SSID of this machine matches the SSID selected by the wireless terminal you want to connect.	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct) (P.58)
The setting of [Security] is not consistent with that of the wireless terminal. *Above ③	Check that the security of this machine matches the security set for the wireless terminal you want to connect.	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct) (P.58)

Cause	Solution	Reference
The encryption key is not consistent with that of the wireless terminal.	Check that the encryption key of this machine matches the encryption key set for the wireless terminal you want to connect. You can check from [Wireless Setting] - [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] -[Manual Setup].	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)
[Number Of Connected] is set to 4.* Above ④	A maximum of 4 terminals can be connected to this machine via a wireless LAN (AP mode). Terminals exceeding the maximum number cannot be connected. Disconnect other terminals and try to connect again.	Connecting directly with this machine (Wi-Fi Direct)(P.58)

Troubleshooting for USB connection

USB does not connect

Items to check	Solution	Reference
Does the cable meet the specifications?	Please use a USB 2.0 cable. The connector type on the main unit is Type B.	-
Are you using a USB hub, repeater, switch, or extension cable?	If you are using a USB hub, repeater, switch or extension cable, disconnect it first. Connect the PC and the printer with a separate USB cable and check if the situation has improved. If it has improved, check the connection to and the power supply of the USB hub or any other similar intermediary device. If you are using an extension cable, please use a separate USB cable or insert a repeater in between.	Connecting via USB(P.62)
Isn't the USB connection feature on the printer disabled?	If [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [USB] is set to [Disable], change the setting to [Enable].	Security-related menu settings(P.418)
Are the USB port and the printer name correct?	If your PC comes with multiple USB ports, the printer name will be different for each USB port. Please select the printer name that matches the connection port, or reconnect it to the USB port that matches the printer name.	-
Is the printer driver properly installed?	Please re-install the printer driver.	Installing software on your PC(P.63)
Is there another printer driver installed that operates via USB connection?	Delete any other printer drivers from the PC.	-

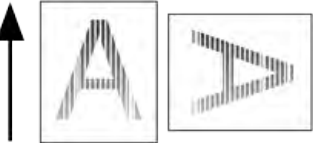
Troubleshooting for printing results

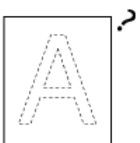
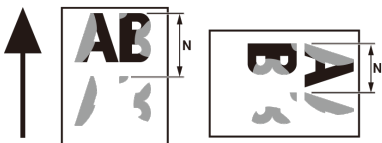


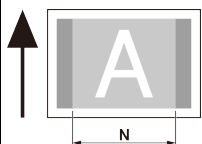
- Please check the following explanation and "FAQ" on your smartphone app or our website.
- If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

List of troubles with printing results

Click the corresponding symptom to see the solution.

 Paper feed direction	White streaks appear in the vertical direction(P.398)
 Paper feed direction	Printing is faint in the vertical direction(P.398)
	Printing is light(P.399)
	White dots or lines appear(P.399)
	Condensation occurs on printed paper(P.400)
 Paper feed direction	Streaks appear in the vertical direction(P.400)
 Paper feed direction	Dots and horizontal streaks appear in the paper feeding direction periodically(P.400)
	White area is lightly stained(P.401)

	Edges of text are blurred(P.401)
	When envelopes or coated paper is printed, the whole area is thinly stained(P.402)
	Toner comes off when rubbed(P.402)
	Specks appear on glossy paper(P.402)
	Point stains appear(P.403)
	Stains are printed(P.403)
	The entire paper is printed in black(P.403)
	Nothing is printed(P.404)
	White streaks occur(P.404)
	The peripheral area is dirty(P.404)
 Paper feed direction	An afterimage printed on the front edge of the paper is printed(P.405)

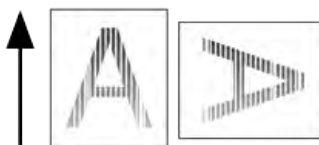
 Paper feed direction	The density differs at two ends of the paper(P.405)
---	--

White streaks appear in the vertical direction



Cause	Solution	Reference
The LED head is dirty.	Clean the LED head.	Cleaning the LED head(P.333)
The toner is low.	When "Toner Low." or "Toner Empty. Replace with new Toner Cartridge." is displayed, replace the toner cartridge.	Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)
The window film of the image drum is dirty.	Wipe the window film with soft tissue paper.	Cleaning the light-shielding film(P.338)
The image drum has not been installed correctly.	Please install the image drum correctly.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305)
A foreign object is stuck in the image drum.	Please replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305)

Printing is faint in the vertical direction



Cause	Solution	Reference
The LED head is dirty.	Clean the LED head.	Cleaning the LED head(P.333)
The toner is low.	When "Toner Low." or "Toner Empty. Waste Toner Full." is displayed, replace the toner cartridge.	Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper.	Applicable paper(P.74)

Printing is light



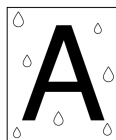
Cause	Solution	Reference
The toner is low.	When "Toner Low." or "Toner Empty. Waste Toner Full." is displayed, replace the toner cartridge.	Replacing toner cartridges (P.298)
The print density may become lighter depending on the operating conditions.	You can increase the print density by changing the settings of this machine as follows. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Density Setting], and change the setting value to the plus side. If no effect is observed after [Density Setting] is adjusted, please change the settings of this machine as follows. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Quiet Mode], and change the setting to [On].  By changing [Density Setting] or [Quiet Mode] to increase the density, the toner consumption will increase.	Menus (User Setup) (P.107)
The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper (P.86)
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper.	Applicable paper (P.74)
The paper is not supported. The media weight is set incorrectly.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set an appropriate value for [Media Weight]. Or, change [Media Weight] to a thicker value than the present value.	Setting paper information on the operator panel (P.84)
Recycled paper is used.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set a thicker value for [Media Weight].	Setting paper information on the operator panel (P.84)
It is used under an environment where combustion is emitted.	Do not install this machine under an environment where combustion is emitted. If this machine is used under an environment where combustion is emitted indoors such as near an electric or gas stove, the image drum may be degraded.	Installation environment (P.18)

White dots or lines appear



Cause	Solution	Reference
Dry the paper as it is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper (P.86)

Condensation occurs on printed paper



Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper (P.86)
This machine is used in a place with high humidity or sudden changes in temperature and humidity.	Use this machine in an environment with an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Installation environment (P.18)
The edge of the paper is wet.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Moisture Control], and change the setting. This setting may delay the completion of printing the first page.	-

Streaks appear in the vertical direction



Cause	Solution	Reference
The LED head is dirty.	Clean the LED head.	Cleaning the LED head (P.333)
The toner is low.	When "Toner Low." or "Toner Empty. Replace with new Toner Cartridge." is displayed, replace the toner cartridge.	Replacing toner cartridges (P.298)
The image drum is scratched.	Please replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge (P.305)
Paper guide is misaligned.	Check the position of the paper guide in the paper cassette.	Loading paper (P.74)

Dots and horizontal streaks appear in the paper feeding direction periodically



Cause	Solution	Reference
If dots or streaks of a specific color appear at intervals of about 94mm, the green tube of the image drum is scratched or dirty.	Please replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge (P.305)

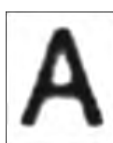
Cause	Solution	Reference
If dots or streaks appear at intervals of about 93 mm or about 107 mm, the fuser unit is scratched or dirty.	Replace the maintenance kit.	Replacing the maintenance kit(P.312)
If the intervals are about 40 mm or 58 mm, parts in the image drum are damaged.	Please replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305)
If the intervals are about 38 mm, there are foreign objects in the image drum.	Open and close the top cover and print again. If the problem persists, replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305)
If the intervals are about 47 mm, the resist roller is dirty.	Open the top cover and wipe the resist roller with soft tissue paper.	Cleaning the resist roller(P.341)
The image drum has been exposed to light.	Install the image drum back to the printer, and leave the printer idle for a few hours. If the problem persists, replace the image drum.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge(P.305)
Dirt has deposited on the paper transfer path.	Test print a few pages.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89)

White area is lightly stained



Cause	Solution	Reference
Static electricity occurs to the paper.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)
Thick paper is used.	Use thinner paper.	Loading paper(P.74)
The toner is low.	When "Toner Low." or "Toner Empty. Replace with new Toner Cartridge." is displayed, replace the toner cartridge.	Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)

Edges of text are blurred



Cause	Solution	Reference
The LED head is dirty.	Clean the LED head.	Cleaning the LED head(P.333)
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper.	Applicable paper(P.74)
The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)

When envelopes or coated paper is printed, the whole area is thinly stained



Cause	Solution	Reference
When envelopes or coated paper is printed, toner may adhere to (cover) the whole area.	This is not a malfunction. Do not use coated paper as much as possible.	Applicable paper(P.74) Inapplicable paper(P.75)

Toner comes off when rubbed



Cause	Solution	Reference
The media weight is set incorrectly.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set an appropriate value for [Media Weight]. Or, change [Media Weight] to a thicker value than the present value.	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)
Recycled paper is used.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set a thicker value for [Media Weight].	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)
The envelope lever (blue, small) on the fuser unit is stuck.	When printing on any other paper than envelopes, press the jam release lever (blue, large) on the top of the fuser unit, and return the paper envelope lever (blue, small) to its original position.	Printing on envelopes(P.142)

Specks appear on glossy paper



Cause	Solution	Reference
The media weight is set incorrectly.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set an appropriate value for [Media Weight]. Or, change [Media Weight] to a thicker value than the present value.	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)

Point stains appear



Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper. If there is a lot of paper dust, load the paper after shuffling it well.	Applicable paper (P.74)
If the intervals are approx. 94 mm, the green tube of the image drum is scratched or dirty.	Replace the image drum with a new one if it is scratched.	Replacing the image drum and the toner cartridge (P.305)

Stains are printed



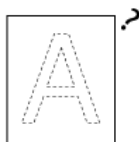
Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper (P.86)
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper.	Applicable paper (P.74)

The entire paper is printed in black



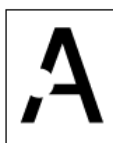
Cause	Solution	Reference
The machine may have broken down.	Please contact your dealer.	-

Nothing is printed



Cause	Solution	Reference
Multiple pages were fed at a time.	Load the paper again after shuffling it well. Clean the paper feed roller.	Loading paper(P.74) Cleaning the paper feed roller (Tray 1/2/3/4)(P.334) Cleaning the paper feed roller (MP tray)(P.336)
The machine may have broken down.	Print the configuration and check if the machine can print independently. If the configuration cannot be printed correctly, contact your dealer.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89)

White streaks occur



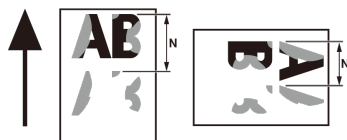
Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)
The paper is not supported.	Use the recommended paper.	Applicable paper(P.74)

The peripheral area is dirty



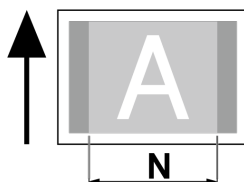
Cause	Solution	Reference
The size is not reduced by scale according to the paper size.	Reduce the size by scale according to the paper size.	Enlarging/Reducing to fit the specified paper size(P.157)

An afterimage printed on the front edge of the paper is printed



Cause	Solution	Reference
If N is about 94 mm and an afterimage is printed underneath, the media weight may not be set incorrectly.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select the paper tray you are using from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration], and set an appropriate value for [Media Weight]. Or, change [Media Weight] to a thicker value than the present value.	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)
If N is about 93 mm or at an interval of 107 mm and an afterimage is printed, the fuser unit may be scratched or dirty.	Change the maintenance kit.	Replacing the maintenance kit(P.312)

The density differs at two ends of the paper



Cause	Solution	Reference
After printing on narrow paper (i.e. width N in the figure) repeatedly, the machine printed on wide paper.	If this occurs when you load the paper in landscape, try printing with the paper loaded in portrait.	Loading paper(P.74)
	You can reduce the occurrence of a difference in density by changing the settings of this machine as follows. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Transfer Setting], and set the value to [-1]. It may take some time to improve the problem. If the problem does not improve even after the setting is changed, leave this machine idle for a while.	Menus (User Setup)(P.107)

Software troubleshooting

- Monitoring Tool
[🔗 Troubleshooting \(Monitoring Tool\)\(P.252\)](#)

Troubleshooting for this machine and paper

Troubleshooting for the machine



- Please check the following explanation and "FAQ" on our website or your smartphone application.
- If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
Nothing is displayed even after the power is turned on.	The power cord is disconnected.	Firmly insert the power cord.	-
	There is a power failure.	Check the power transmission status to the outlet.	-
It does not work.	The power cord is not inserted firmly.	Firmly insert the power cord.	-
	The power is not turned on.	Please turn the power on.	Turning the power on(P.73)
	The power was turned off by the Auto Power Off function.	Please turn the power on. Or, disable the Auto Power Off function.	Turning off the power automatically (Auto Power Off)(P.100)
	This machine is frozen.	Press and hold the power button for more than 5 seconds to force a shutdown.	-
The top cover does not close.	The toner cartridge is not installed properly.	Install the toner cartridge properly.	Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)
	The blue lever on the toner cartridge is incorrectly positioned.	Rotate the blue lever on the toner cartridge until it reaches the lock mark.	Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)
	The image drum is not installed properly.	Install the image drum properly.	Replacing the image drum(P.300)
	The fuser unit is not installed properly.	Install the fuser unit properly.	Replacing the maintenance kit(P.312)
The error is not cleared even after the toner or drum is replaced.	The replaced consumables are not correct.	Check the error message on the display for the name of the consumables to be replaced. Replace the corresponding consumables.	Error message list(P.350) Replacing toner cartridges(P.298)
	The toner cartridge is not installed properly.	Check that the toner cartridge is installed firmly.	
	The replaced consumables are not applicable to this machine.	Use the consumables suitable for this machine.	-
"Used or non-genuine consumables/maintenance parts are installed. Check User's Manual "Trouble Shooting" to restore machine operation" appears on the display.	Used toner cartridges or non-genuine consumables/maintenance parts are installed.	Clear the error according to the description of Error Code 709 in the Error Message List.	Error message list(P.350)
Printing process does not start.	An error is displayed.	Check the error code and follow the on-screen instructions.	Error message list(P.350)

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
	The LAN/USB cable is not plugged in.	Firmly insert the LAN/USB cable.	Connecting via a wired LAN(P.37)
	There is a problem with the LAN/USB cable.	Use another LAN/USB cable.	-
	The LAN cable does not meet the specifications.	Please use the cable of Ethernet 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000Base specifications.	-
	The USB cable does not meet the specifications.	Please use the USB cable enclosed with this machine.	-
	There may be a problem with the print function.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [Print Information] - [Configuration], and print the configuration to check the printing performance.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89)
	The communication protocol is disabled.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup], and then enable the communication protocol in use.	-
	The printer driver is not selected.	Open [Devices and Printers]. Right-click on the icon of this machine, and select [Set as Default Printer].	How to open [Devices and Printers](P.141)
	The output port of printer driver is incorrect.	Specify the output port to connect the LAN/USB cable.	-
Nothing is displayed.	This machine is in the sleep mode.	Check that the POWER SAVE lamp is blinking, and then press «OK» to start this machine.	-
The print data is not sent.	The LAN/USB cable is broken.	Connect with a new cable.	-
	The PC has timed out.	Increase the length of timeout in port settings of the PC.	-
An abnormal sound is heard.	This machine is tilted.	Install it on a stable and flat surface.	-
	Paper dust or foreign objects are left inside this machine.	Check the inside of this machine and remove the object if any.	-
	The top cover is open.	Close the top cover.	-
A resonant sound is heard.	While the temperature inside this machine is rising, printing is done on narrow or thick paper.	This is not a fault with this machine. Use it as it is.	-
	Printing is being performed from the expansion tray unit (optional).		
Printing does not start immediately.	This machine is warming up for recovering from the power save mode or sleep mode.	Extend the time that will elapse before the power save mode or sleep mode is entered by the following procedure. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Power Save Time] or [Sleep Time] from [Menus] - [User Setup] - [System Adjust].	Setting the power save function(P.98)

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
Printing stops in between.	The temperature is adjusted because the temperature inside this machine has risen due to long-time continuous printing.	Please wait. The printing will automatically start again once the temperature of this machine returns appropriate.	-
The memory is insufficient.	The memory of this machine is insufficient as the print data is too big.	Print again after reducing the resolution in the printer driver.	-
All pages are not printed.	The WSD port is used.	Change the print destination port to the standard TCP/IP port.	-
Printing, printer search or setup is not available in the sleep mode.	The NBT/WINS protocol is suppressed in the sleep mode.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Specific] from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [Connected Host].	-
Periodic email alerts are not notified in the sleep mode.	Periodic email alerts notification is suppressed in the sleep mode.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Specific] from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [Connected Host].	-
The time and date settings of this machine may be shifted if acquired from the server.	The time update function with the SNTP server is suppressed in the sleep mode.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Specific] from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [Connected Host].	-
Printing is slow.	Printing is also performed on the PC side.	Use a PC with a fast processing speed.	-
	In the [Job Options] tab of the printer driver, [Fine (1200x1200dpi)] is selected.	Select [Normal (600x600dpi)] in the [Advanced] or [Job Options] tab of the printer driver.	-
	The print data is complicated.	Select simple print data.	-
	Narrow paper (less than 200 mm) is used.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Narrow Paper Speed], and change the setting.	-
	The temperature is adjusted because the temperature inside this machine has risen due to long-time continuous printing.	Please wait. The printing will automatically resume once the temperature of this machine returns appropriate.	-
	[Quiet Mode] is in use.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Quiet Mode], and change the setting.	-
Display of the printer driver is abnormal.	The printer driver may not work correctly.	Delete and reinstall the printer driver.	Deleting software(P.345) Installing software(P.245)

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
The power turns off automatically.	If this machine has not been used for a certain period of time (whose factory default setting is 4 hours*), the power will turn off automatically. This function is called Auto Power Off. *: Factory default settings may vary by region.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Disable] in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Power Setup] - [Auto Power Off].	Turning off the power automatically (Auto Power Off)(P.100)
The web page does not open.	[Web] is set to [Disable] in the menu of this machine.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Enable] in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Network Setup] - [Setup] - [Web].	-
	The IP address is incorrect.	Check the IP address of this machine and correct it if needed.	Printing the menu map (configuration)(P. 89)
	The LAN cable is disconnected.	Check connection of the LAN cable.	1. Connecting the LAN cable(P.37)

Troubleshooting for the paper



- Please check the following explanation and "FAQ" on your smartphone app or our website.
- If the problem persists, contact your dealer.

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
Paper jams occur frequently. Multiple sheets of paper are pulled in simultaneously. The paper is pulled in an inclined direction.	This machine is tilted.	Install it on a stable and flat surface.	-
	The paper is either too thin or too thick.	The paper is either too thin or too thick. Use the paper applicable to this machine.	Applicable paper(P.74)
	The paper is moist or charged with static electricity.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)
	The paper is wrinkled, folded or curled.	Use the paper applicable to this machine. Straighten the paper if it is curled.	Applicable paper(P.74)
	The paper has had its reverse side printed.	Already printed paper cannot be printed again from Tray 1/2/3/4. Print from the MP tray.	-
	The paper is not aligned yet.	Shuffle the paper well, and load the paper with the top, bottom, left and right aligned.	Loading paper(P.74)
	Load only one sheet of paper.	Load multiple sheets of paper.	-
	Additional paper is loaded in the paper cassette while the existing paper is kept as it is.	Remove the existing paper in the tray, and load the paper again together with the new one with the top, bottom, left and right aligned.	Loading paper(P.74)
	The paper is not loaded straight.	Fit the paper guide and paper stopper of the paper cassette of Tray 1/2/3/4 to the paper. Align the paper with the manual feeder guide of the MP tray.	Loading paper(P.74)

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
	Burrs (i.e. a thin ridge of roughness produced in cutting paper) occur on the edge of the paper.	Load the paper again after shuffling it well. Load the paper again after turning it upside down.	-
	The envelope is loaded in a wrong orientation.	Load the envelope again correctly.	Loading paper(P.74)
	Envelopes are stuck together.	Shuffle the envelopes well, or stack them one by one.	-
Paper jams occur frequently.	Paper dust is attached to the paper feed roller.	Clean the paper feed roller of the tray where the paper jam occurred.	Cleaning the paper feed roller (Tray 1/2/3/4)(P.334) Cleaning the paper feed roller (MP tray)(P.336)
	The paper feed roller has reached the end of its service life.	As a guide, the paper feed roller reaches its service life after printing about 100,000 sheets for Tray 1/2/3/4 and about 80,000 sheets for the MP tray. Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel several times to select [Menus] - [Information] - [Paper Feed Roller Counter], check the roller usage of each tray, and replace the paper feed roller if its service life has reached.	Replacing the paper feed roller (Tray 1/2/3/4)(P.319) Replacing the paper feed roller (MP Tray)(P.329)
For B513, paper jams occur frequently to feeding A5 paper in landscape.	You have loaded paper with a weight of 105 g/m ² or above.	To print on A5-sized paper with a weight of 105 g/ m ² or above, please load the paper in portrait.	Paper applicable to each tray(P.78)
	Disable [Media Check] in the printer driver, and then try printing again.	To print on A5-sized paper in landscape, enable [Media Check] in the printer driver. Or, print on A5-sized paper in portrait.	
The paper jam with error codes 392, 393 and 394 occurs repeatedly.	The paper size set in the file to be printed is different from the paper size loaded in the expansion tray. Disable [Media Check] in the printer driver, and then try printing again.	Remove the jammed paper. Cancel the printing. Load paper of the same size as the paper size set in the file to be printed into the expansion tray to be used, and then print.	For the error code 392, 393 or 394(P.378) Canceling the printing(P.193) Loading paper in Tray 1 (for B433)(P.79)
Paper cannot be fed.	An incorrect setting is selected in [Paper Source] of the printer driver.	Check the paper tray, and select the correct tray from [Paper Source] of the printer driver.	-
	Manual feeding is specified in the printer driver.	Disable [Feed paper individually] in the printer driver.	Printing one sheet at a time manually(P.156)
Paper cannot be fed from Tray 2/3/4	Tray 2/3/4 is not set up in the printer driver.	Set up Tray 2/3/4 in the printer driver.	Setting the printer driver(P.67)
The machine is not restored even after the jammed paper is removed.	-	Open and close the top cover.	-

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper gets curled. The paper is waved. The paper is wrinkled.	The paper is moist or charged with static electricity.	Use the paper immediately after unpacking.	Storing paper(P.86)
		Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	
		When you set paper in the printer tray, sometimes the issue can be resolved by reversing the front and back sides of the paper.	
	Thin paper is used.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration] - [(Tray Name) Setup] - [Media Weight]. Then, change the current setting to a thinner value.	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)
		Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [High Humid Mode], and change the setting.	-
The front edge of paper curls and floats on the top cover.	Thin paper is used.	Remove the paper from the top cover each time you print one sheet.	-
The paper twines around the inside of the fuser.	The media weight is set incorrectly.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration] - [(Tray Name) Setup] - [Media Weight], and set an appropriate value. Or, change [Media Weight] to a thicker value than the present one.	Setting paper information on the operator panel(P.84)
	Thin paper is used.	Use thicker paper.	-
	There is near-solid filling at the top edge of the paper.	Try leaving a margin at the top edge of the paper. With duplex printing, try leaving a margin at the rear edge of the paper.	-
Corners of the paper are folded (the edge is folded).	The paper is curled. The paper is waved.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)
The envelope is wrinkled.	The paper is moist.	Use the paper stored at an appropriate temperature and humidity.	Storing paper(P.86)
	The paper settings are not correct.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select [Envelope] in [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Tray Configuration] - [(Tray Name) Setup] - [Media Type]. Set [Media Type] to [Envelope] in the printer driver.	Printing on envelopes(P.142)
	The envelope lever (blue, small) on the fuser unit is raised.	Please print by following the procedure in "If you are concerned about wrinkles" of " Printing on envelopes(P.142) ". Once printing is complete, return the envelope lever (blue, small) to the original position.	Printing on envelopes(P.142)
	It applies to other cases than the above.	Load the envelope with the flap facing the main unit. Next, from Print Setup, set the orientation to 180° reversion.	Screens and functions of the printer driver(P.131)
Misalignment occurs when paper is output from the expansion tray unit.	Misalignment occurs with each tray.	Press the scroll buttons on the operator panel to select the tray to adjust in [Menus] - [User Setup] - [Print Adjust] - [Print Position Adjust], and correct the value of [X Adjust] (Landscape) or [Y Adjust] (Portrait).	Correcting the print position of the tray(P.186)

Symptom	Cause	Solution	Reference
The paper is automatically fed from another paper tray when the paper tray runs out of paper during printing.	Tray Switch is set to Auto.	Change the Auto Tray Switch setting in the printer driver. For the Windows PCL printer driver, uncheck [Setup] - [Paper Feed Options] - [Paper feed options] - [Auto Tray Change]. For the Windows PS printer driver, select [Layout] - [Advanced] - [Printer Features] - [Tray Switch] - [Off]. For macOS, go to [Paper Feed] - [All Pages From], and select the tray to be used.	Screens and functions of the printer driver(P.131)

When a power failure occurs

If a power failure occurs while the power is on, the power will not turn on automatically even after the power failure is recovered.

If you want the power to turn on automatically after the power failure is recovered, select [Always On] or [Last State] in [Boot Menu] - [After AC power supply fails].

[Boot Menu\(P.126\)](#)



- The machine may not work properly if an uninterruptible. power supply (UPS) or inverter is used. Do not use any uninterruptible. power supply or inverter.

With the factory default settings, when a power failure occurs, this machine acts as follows.

State of this machine	Action
Receiving	Reception is interrupted halfway.
Printing a report	Report printing is interrupted halfway.
Standby	Printing cannot be started.

11 Taking security measures

Preventing disclosure of documents	415
Preventing unauthorized network access	416
Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine	417
Handling of Personal Information	421

Preventing disclosure of documents

Private Print

For private printing, to prevent others from seeing the printing results of personal and confidential documents, the print jobs are encrypted and saved in the machine's memory, and they can be authenticated and printed only from the operator panel.

In addition, because the print data is sent upon encryption from your PC, unauthorized access to confidential information can be prevented.

[Printing with print data encrypted and password set \(Private Print\)\(P.190\)](#)

Print Data Encryption

In order to protect its content against being read by a third party or printed on other machines before the print data reaches this machine, the print data is encrypted.

Because the print data is sent upon encryption, unauthorized access to confidential information can be prevented.

For the printing procedure, please refer to "[Printing with security enhanced\(P.187\)](#)".

Encrypting Network Communications

By encrypting the communication between the machine and the computer or mobile device, it is difficult for a third party to read the content, thus preventing eavesdropping.

[Communication encryption \(SSL/TLS\)\(P.203\)](#)

[Communication encryption \(IPSec\)\(P.207\)](#)

Preventing unauthorized network access

IP Filtering Setup

You can use the IP Address to control the access to this machine. You can set whether or not to authorize setup or printing from the specified IP address. Controls access from outside the company.

However, this function requires knowledge about the IP address. This machine may be denied from access to network due to serious problems depending on settings.

[Using the access control function \(IP filter\) with the IP address](#)(P.207)

MAC Filtering Setup

You can use the MAC Address to control the access to this machine. You can allow or deny the access from the specified MAC Address.

Controls access from outside the company.

However, this function requires knowledge about the MAC address. This machine may be denied from access to network due to serious problems depending on settings.

[Using the access control function with the MAC address](#)(P.208)

IPSec Setup

You can use IPSec to encrypt the communication between your PC or mobile device and this machine.

When IPSec is enabled, all applications are encrypted using IPSec, thus ensuring a high level of security.

[Communication encryption \(IPSec\)](#)(P.207)

TLS Setup

You can use TLS to encrypt the communication between your PC or mobile device and this machine.

[Communication encryption \(SSL/TLS\)](#)(P.203)

IEEE802.1X Settings

IEEE802.1X authentication is required to connect to a wired or wireless LAN network.

For network connection, the machine is authenticated to ensure that it is the correct user, and if it is the correct user, it can connect to the network.

[Using IEEE802.1X \(Wired LAN\)](#)(P.210)

[Setting IEEE802.1X \(Wireless LAN\)](#)(P.211)

Access Log

This machine records and stores the printer operations by the user and the contents and results of input/output with external machines.

Preventing disclosure of confidential information in the operation of this machine

Password Policy

The machine comes with the setting function of password policy. You can set the length and complexity of the admin password used for admin authentication and the password for personal authentication.

By setting a password policy, you can avoid using a string that is easy to guess when creating a password, thus improving the level of security.

The following settings are available for Password Policy.



- The password policy may differ from region to region.
- [Minimum Length]: Set the minimum length of the password. The factory default setting is 10 characters or 1 character.
- [Use Uppercase]: Specify whether or not to include upper-case letters in the password. The factory default setting is [On] or [Off].
- [Use Lowercase]: Specify whether or not to include lower-case letters in the password. The factory default setting is [On] or [Off].
- [Use Symbol]: Specify whether or not to include symbols in the password. The factory default setting is [Off].
- [Use digit]: Specify whether or not to include digits in the password. The factory default setting is [Off].

Account Lockout

With this function, you can temporarily lock a user account so that it is not available if authentication has failed for more than a certain number of times in a row.

The purpose is to protect the machine from attacks (brute force attacks) that attempt to guess passwords and log in illegally.

The following settings are available for Account Lockout.

- [Lockout]: Enable/Disable the lockout function. The factory default setting is [Enable].
- [Lockout Condition]: Set the maximum number of authentication failures until lockout. The factory default setting is [5 times]. The value range is 1 - 10 times.
- [Lockout Period]: Set the period of time until the account is unlocked. The factory default setting is [5 minutes]. The value range is 1 - 60 minutes.

There are two ways to unlock an account that has been locked out as follows.

- Wait until the lockout period has elapsed
- The machine's administrator resets the password of the account



- If you log in to the machine from an OS like Windows, or from an application that uses FTP, IPP, SNMPv3 or SMB, you may be locked out for fewer times than the number of times you set.

Admin password

An administrator password has been set for this machine to prevent unexpected changes to the settings. We recommend that you change it once you start using this machine.

[Administrator Password\(P.195\)](#)

User Authentication/Access Control

Access control is a function that a user authenticated by this machine can only perform permitted operations. Before a user operates this machine, personal authentication is required. The information required for personal authentication refers to either a user name and its password or a PIN (Personal Identification Number).

To use the access control function, the administrator of this machine registers the user information, sets the authentication method, and enables access control.

[User restriction \(Access control\)\(P.226\)](#)

Initializing the settings

This section explains how to initialize the memory and various settings of this machine.

When you forget the admin password, the settings cannot be initialized.

[Initializing the settings\(P.418\)](#)

For items to be initialized, please refer to "[Initialization specifications\(P.428\)](#)".

Erase Privacy Data

Once Erase Privacy Data is executed, the machine will be restarted, the memory and all the settings will be initialized, and the registered data will be deleted. When initialization is complete, the execution result is displayed on the machine.

If [Yes(Report print)] is selected during executing, the execution result will be printed.

In addition, if Erase Privacy Data is executed from the web page, the execution result will not be displayed on the web page. If it is necessary to check the result, select [Yes(Report print)] during executing.

For the procedure, please refer to "[Disposal\(P.241\)](#)".

For the items to be initialized, please refer to "[Initialization specifications\(P.428\)](#)".

MIB Get Control

If it is set to [Enable], you can restrict some of the information that is retrieved using SNMP.

If it is set to [Disable], you can retrieve all the information, including confidential data of MIB using SNMP.

Please understand the security risks before setting it to [Disable].

Security-related menu settings

The menu settings related to the security function of this machine are as follows.



- For menu items that can be set on this machine, please refer to "[Menu items\(P.105\)](#)".

[Interface]

Purpose	Settings
To prohibit wireless connections	Select [Disable] in [Wireless Setting] - [Wireless(Infrastructure) Setting] - [Wireless(Infrastructure)].
To prohibit Wi-Fi Direct connections	Select [Disable] in [Wireless Setting] - [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct) Setting] - [Wireless(Wi-Fi Direct)].
To prohibit USB connections	Select [Disable] in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [USB].
To prohibit the use of the USB memory	Select [Disable] in [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [USB Setup] - [USB Memory Interface].

[Authentication]

Purpose	Settings (Factory Defaults)
To discard print data that cannot be authenticated	In addition to user authentication/access control, you can prohibit the printing from users who cannot be authenticated by disabling or prohibiting guest user permissions for usage. Guest user permission settings • Guest user permissions for usage: Enable/Disable (Enable) • Guest user permissions for printing: Permit/Prohibit (Permit) • Guest user permissions for printing from a USB memory: Permit/Prohibit (Permit)
To continue operation with the printer's user authentication/access control enabled even after an error occurs to the communication with the authentication server	By enabling the user information cache settings, you can continue operation with user authentication and access control enabled even after an error occurs to the communication between this machine and the authentication server. User information cache settings • Cache authentication information: Enable/Disable (Disable)  • This setting is enabled when external authentication is used that delegates user authentication to the authentication server. • This machine comes with a function to cache the user's authentication information for a certain period of time. When an error occurs, it automatically switches to user authentication with the cached authentication information, so that user authentication and access control can be continued. • The cache validity period can be specified in days, ranging from 1 day to 2000 days. The factory default setting is 1 day.
To specify rules for the admin password and the password used for personal authentication, thus keeping the machine safe	Password policy  • The password policy may differ from region to region. • Minimum length: 1 - 32 (10 or 1) • Contains at least one upper-case letter: OFF/ON (ON or OFF) • Contains at least one lower-case letter: OFF/ON (ON or OFF) • Contains at least one digit: OFF/ON (OFF) • Contains at least one symbol: OFF/ON (OFF)
To protect this machine from brute force attacks	Account Lockout • Lockout: Enable/Disable (Enable) • Lockout Condition (Max. number of authentication failure times): 1 - 10 times (5 times) • Lockout Period (The period of time until the lockout is lifted automatically): 1 - 60 min (5 min)

[Job]

Purpose	Settings (Factory Defaults)
To prevent unattended printing	Private Print Setup - Verify job option: Enable/Disable (Disable) Specify whether to verify the print data before printing. If enabled, the printer prints after verifying that the print data has not been changed. The integrity of print data is guaranteed, but the time to start printing will be longer. - Erase job option: No overwrite/Zero out once (No overwrite) Set the method for erasing the print data. You can specify that the data cannot be restored by overwriting after it is erased. If you overwrite, it will take longer to erase. - Keep job for: 15 minutes - 7 days (2 hours) Set the retention period of the print data. After the print data is saved, if the print data is not printed after the set period, the print data is automatically deleted. - Job Limitation: Enable all print formats/Enable private job printing only (Enable all print formats) Set whether to save restricted print data. When [Enable private job printing only] is selected, any print data other than private print will not be accepted. - Verify job password: ON/OFF (OFF) Select whether to verify the job password when the access control is enabled. - Job Auto Search: ON/OFF (ON) Select whether to perform job search while unlocking the panel when the access control is enabled.
To prohibit using non-encrypted jobs	PJL Enhance Security: Off/Mode 1 (Mode 1) Set the behavior of the machine when it receives an unencrypted job that contains confidential data over the network. [Mode 1] accepts and discards any unencrypted job that contains confidential data.

Handling of Personal Information

When you log in to this product as an administrator, it is possible to set up the recording of the following personal information inside this machine. The recorded information will never be transferred to the server.

If you do not log in as an administrator, you may not be able to fully utilize this product in some cases.

- E-mail Address
- Host Name
- IP Address
- PIN
- User Name
- Password

The personal information is stored as follows.

Item	E-mail Address	Host Name	IP Address	PIN	User Name	Password (*1)
User List	○	×	×	○	○	○
Shared Job/Private Job	×	○	○	×	○	×
Job Log	×	○	○	×	○	×
Access Log	○	×	×	○	○	○
Email Alert	○	×	×	×	×	×

*1: Since only the hash information of the password is recorded, the password is not possible to be leaked.

Refer to the following part for the usage purpose and operation method of personal information.

User List

Usage purpose: It will be used for personal authentication of a user who wants to use this machine.

Operation	Authority	Operation method
Register	Admin	Register the information by using the web page, Configuration Tool or sPSV.
Edit	Admin	Edit the information by using the web page, Configuration Tool or sPSV.
Reference	Admin	Edit the information by using the web page, Configuration Tool or sPSV.
Delete	Admin	Edit the information by using the web page, Configuration Tool or sPSV.
Initialize	Admin	There is no function to initialize only the user list. With the Erase Privacy Data menu, all the data of the machine will be initialized.

Shared Job/Private Job

Usage purpose: It is used to identify jobs for each user.

Operation	Authority	Operation method
Print	Printing execution user	Select either Shared Job or Private Job as the Job Type in the printer driver, and then print the job.
Reference	Shared Job: All users Private Job: Printing execution user/Admin	Execute the Print menu for shared jobs or private jobs from the operator panel.
Print	Printing execution user	Select a job displayed on the operator panel and print it.

Operation	Authority	Operation method
Delete	Shared Job: All users Private Job: Printing execution user/Admin	For Shared Job, select a shared job on the operator panel and delete it. For Private Job, there are three operation methods as follows: • Select a private job on the operator panel and delete it. • After printing, the private job will be automatically deleted. • When its retention period has expired, the private job will be automatically deleted.

Job Log

Usage purpose: It is used to output the job history.

Operation	Authority	Operation method
Reference	Admin	There are two operation methods as follows: • It can be viewed from [State] - [Print Job] - [Job Log] on the web page. • It can be printed from [Menus] - [Admin Setup] - [Print Information] - [Job Log] on the operator panel.
Delete	Admin	There are two operation methods as follows: • Execute [Erase Privacy Data] on the web page or operator panel. • Execute [Clear Job Log] on the web page or operator panel.

Access Log

Usage purpose: It is used to output the access history.

Operation	Authority	Operation method
Reference	Admin	On the web page, select [Export Access Log] and download a CSV file in zip format. Unzip the downloaded file and reference it.
Delete	Admin	Execute [Erase Privacy Data] on the web page or operator panel.

Appendix

Specifications 424

Dimensions..... 431

Contact us 433

Menu tree 434

Specifications

Model	Model Number
B433	N22505B, N22505D B433dn
B513	N22506B, N22506D B513dn

General specifications

Item		B433	B513
CPU		Arm Processor (667MHz)	
Memory	Built-in	512 MB	
Weight (with consumables)		Approx. 14 kg	Approx. 16 kg
Dimensions (WxDxH)		387×364×245 mm	387×394×286 mm
Power		N22505B/N22506B: 220V - 240V AC +/-10% N22505D/N22506D: 110V AC +/-10%	
Power consumption	Operating	Max: 1,140W*/Average: 570W** * The value excluding the momentary peak value. ** The average power consumption during operation. The average power consumption of 15-minute printing after one page is printed. *This is the value when all optional accessories are installed. It may vary with the operating environment.	
	Standby	Without options :47W or below With all options installed: 48W or less	
	Sleep mode	0.6W or below* This is the default setting. It may vary with the specific settings and operating environment.	
	Off	0.2W or below	
TEC value (Metrics specified in the Version 3.0 ENERGY STAR Product Specification for Imaging Equipment)		0.41kWh (230V)	0.47kWh (230V)
Operating and environmental conditions	Operating	Temperature: 10°C - 32°C; Humidity: 20% - 80% RH	
	Pause	Temperature: 0°C ~ 43°C; Humidity: 10% ~ 90% RH	
Interface		USB 2.0 (Type B), Ethernet~1000BASE-T (Standard), Ethernet~100BASE-TX (Extended wired LAN, Recommended), IEEE802.11 a/b/g/n/ac (Wireless LAN, Optional)	
Display screen		1.82-inch monochrome graphic panel, 128 x 64 dots	
Compatible OS		Windows 11/Windows 10 Windows Server 2025/Windows Server 2022/Windows Server 2019/Windows Server 2016 macOS 12~15	
Service life of the machine		7 years or 600,000 sheets * The service life of the machine may vary with the specific usage. * In order to maintain the paper-passing performance for 7 years, it may be necessary for maintenance personnel to replace the parts specified by our company.	
Storage environment		Temperature: -10°C - 43°C Relative humidity: 10~90% (Max wet bulb temperature: 35°C)	

Printing section specifications

Item	B433	B513
Printing method	Dry electrode photo recording method using LED (light-emitting diodes) as the exposure light source	

Item		B433	B513
Page description language		Adobe PostScript 3, PDF (v1.7), PCL6 (XL3.0) emulation, PCL5c emulation, IBM ProPrinter, EPSON FX, EPSON LQ	
Resident fonts		PCL: 91 typefaces (European languages) PS: 136 typefaces (European languages)	
Resolution		600 x 600 dpi, 1200 x 1200 dpi	
Printing colors		Black	
Printing speed		Simplex: 40 ppm Duplex: 20 ppm	Simplex: 45 ppm Duplex: 20 ppm
First page output time		Approx. 4.5 sec	Approx. 4.1 sec
* From the start of receiving print data to the removal of the rear paper edge from the final exit roller · When print data is sent within 30 seconds after the previous printing is completed · A4 size, paper type: plain; paper weight: light; simplex printing, paper feeding from Tray 1 · Ambient temperature: 22°C - 25°C; Ambient humidity: 25% - 65% RH			
Paper Size	Tray 1	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, Statement, 8.5" SQ, Folio	A4, A5, B5, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, 8.5" SQ, Folio
	Expansion tray unit (optional)	A4, A5, B5, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, 8.5" SQ, Folio	
	MP Tray	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, B7, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, Statement, 8.5" SQ, Folio, 4" x 6", 5" x 7", Nagagata#3, Nagagata#4, Yougata#0, Yougata#4, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Envelope DL, Envelope COM-9, Envelope COM-10, Envelope Monarch	
	Duplex	A4, B5, Letter, Legal 13, Legal 13.5, Legal 14, Executive, Folio	
	Custom	• Tray 1 Width: 100 - 216 mm; Length: 148 - 356 mm • Expansion tray unit Width: 148 - 216 mm; Length: 210 - 356 mm • MPTray Width: 86 - 216 mm; Length: 127 - 1,321 mm • 2-Side Width: 182 - 216 mm; Length: 257 - 356 mm	• Tray1 Width: 148 - 216 mm; Length: 210 - 356 mm • Expansion tray unit Width: 148 - 216 mm; Length: 210 - 356 mm • MPTray Width: 86 - 216 mm; Length: 127 - 1,321 mm • 2-Side Width: 182 - 216 mm; Length: 257 - 356 mm
Paper quality		Plain (60 g/m ² - 256 g/m ²), Recycled, Envelope, Label	
Paper feeding method		Auto paper feeding from Tray 1, the MP tray, and the expansion tray unit (Optional) Manual paper feeding from the MP tray	
Feeding capacity		• Tray1 280 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 25 mm or less • MPTray 110 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 10 mm or less; 10 envelopes (85 g/m²) • Expansion tray unit Plain: 580 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 53 mm or less	• Tray1 580 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 53 mm or less • MPTray 110 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 10 mm or less; 10 envelopes (85 g/m²) • Expansion tray unit Plain: 580 sheets (80 g/m²), with the total weight of 53 mm or less
Paper output method		Output tray (Top cover), rear output tray	

Item	B433	B513
Output capacity	- Output tray (Top cover): 150 sheets of Plain paper (80 g/m²) - Rear Output Tray: 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m²)	
Assured printing range	4.23 mm or above from the paper edge (excluding special paper like envelopes)	
Printing accuracy	Standard-sized paper Writing position accuracy: ± 2 mm; paper slant: ± 1 mm/100 mm (except for duplex printing) Image stretch: ± 1 mm/100 mm (except for duplex printing)	
Warm-up time	- When powered on Approx. 18 sec (The time from when the power button is turned on to when [Ready To Print] appears on the display, when the ambient temperature is 22°C - 25°C and the ambient humidity is 25% - 65% RH, and it works at the rated voltage.) - When restored from Sleep mode For plain paper: Approx. 12.0 seconds; For medium paper: Approx. 12.7 seconds (The time from the start of receiving print data to when [Adjusting Temp] disappears from the display, when the ambient temperature is 22°C - 25°C and the ambient humidity is 25% - 65% RH, and it works at the rated voltage.)	
	When restored from the low-temperature standby mode For plain paper: Approx. 10.9 seconds (The time from the start of receiving print data to the removal of the rear paper edge from the final exit roller when A4-sized paper is fed from Tray 1 for simplex printing, when the ambient temperature is 22°C - 25°C and the ambient humidity is 25% - 65% RH, and it works at the rated voltage.)	When restored from the low-temperature standby mode For plain paper: Approx. 11.0 seconds (The time from the start of receiving print data to the removal of the rear paper edge from the final exit roller when A4-sized paper is fed from Tray 1 for simplex printing, when the ambient temperature is 22°C - 25°C and the ambient humidity is 25% - 65% RH, and it works at the rated voltage.)
Printing quality assurance conditions	Operating range Temperature: 10°C; Humidity: 20% - 80% RH Temperature: 32°C; Humidity: 20% - 60% RH Humidity: 20% RH; Temperature: 10°C - 32°C Humidity: 80% RH; Temperature: 10°C - 27°C	
Consumables	Toner cartridge, image drum	
Maintenance parts	Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer roller), feed roller assembly	

Specifications of the expansion tray unit

Item	Expansion tray unit
Weight	Approx. 5.3 kg
Dimensions (WxDxH)	387×405×139 mm

Network specifications

Item	B433	B513
Protocol * The value in () is the factory default setting.	TCP/IPv4 (Enable), TCP/IPv6 (Enable), NetBIOS over TCP (Enable), DHCP (Enable), DHCPv6 (Disable), HTTP (Enable. * However, you will be redirected to HTTPS.), HTTPS (Enable), DNS (Enable), DDNS (Disable), WINS (Disable), Bonjour (Enable), SMTP (Disable), SMTPS (Disable), POP3 (Disable), POP3S (Disable), SNMPv1 (Enable (ReadOnly)), SNMPv3 (Enable), SNTP (Disable), IPP (Disable), IPPS (Enable), WSD Print (Enable), LLTD (Disable), IEEE802.1X (Disable), LPR (Enable), Port9100 (Enable), Telnet (Disable), FTP (Disable), FTPS (Disable), IPSec (Disable), LDAP (Disable), LDAPS (Disable), Kerberos (Disable), AirPrint (Enable), Mopria (Enable), IPP Everywhere (Enable)	

Wireless LAN specifications

Item	B433	B513
Wireless LAN standard	IEEE802.11 a/b/g/n/ac (2.4 Ghz/5 GHz)	
Security	Disable, WEP, WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSKcWPA-EAP, WPA2-EAP, WPA3-SAE, WPA3-EAP	

Access log specifications

Item	Description
Log time	The time at which the access occurred It follows the time display settings of this machine.
User name	The user name for the current operation
Operation info	The item name of the operation target
Access type	The means by which the user accessed this machine
Operation type	The type of operation
Before change	The value before change
After change	The value after change
Result	The result

A maximum of 10,000 entries can be saved.

Executing [Erase Privacy Data] will delete the data.

When the maximum storage capacity is reached, the oldest 100 entries will be automatically deleted.

For details about [Erase Privacy Data], please refer to "[Disposal\(P.241\)](#)".

Job log specifications

Item	Description
Time	The time when printing starts
Type	It contains the scenario name.
User Name	The user name registered on this machine when access control is enabled The PC login name for PC printing only when access control is disabled * It may not be stored.
Result	The result of executing the job
Result Detail	The detail of the result of executing the job

A maximum of 5,000 entries can be saved.

Executing [Erase Privacy Data] or [Clear Job Log] will delete the data.

When the maximum storage capacity is reached, the oldest 100 entries will be automatically deleted.

For details about [Erase Privacy Data], please refer to "[Disposal\(P.241\)](#)".

For details about [Clear Job Log], please refer to "[Menus \(Admin Setup\)\(P.112\)](#)".

Initialization specifications

Item		Description	Operation (*1)			
			Erase Privacy Data	Reset Settings	Initializing flash memory	Initializing network setup
Data registered in the machine	Access Control Info User restriction (Access control) (P.226)	The user information, role information, and group information for access control	●			
	Form Data Registering forms (form overlay) (P.258)	The form data for form overlay printing	●		●	
	Server Certificate Communication encryption (SSL/TLS) (P.203)	The server certificate for communication encryption (SSL/TLS)	●			
	Shared Printing frequently used documents without using a PC (P.165)	The shared job registered in the machine	●		●	
	Private Print Job Printing with print data encrypted and password set (Private Print) (P.190)	The private print job registered in the machine	●		●	
Device Settings*	-	The settings configured in the Device Settings menu	●	●		●
Password	Admin Password Administrator Password (P.195)	The authentication password required to operate the Admin Setup menu	○	○		
	Print Statistics Password Menus (Print Statistics) (P.121)	The authentication password required to operate the Print Statistics menu	**	**	**	**
Log	Print Statistics Log Menus (Print Statistics) (P.121)	A log that records the information that aggregates the amount of printing	●			
	Job Log Information Menus (Admin Setup) (P.112)	A log that records print data information	●			
	Error Log Menus (Admin Setup) (P.112)	A log that records the information of the error has occurred	●			

Item	Description	Operation (*1)			
		Erase Privacy Data	Reset Settings	Initializing flash memory	Initializing network setup
NFC Kitting Log  • Depending on the specific region, this machine may not come with the NFC function.	A log that records the information of executing the NFC kitting function	•			
Access Log  Menus (Admin Setup)(P.112)	A log that records the information about access to this machine	•			

•: Indicates that when the operation is executed, it will be erased from this machine.

•: Indicates that when the operation is executed, the factory default settings will be reset.

* Device settings for security functions

** The Print Statistics Password cannot be initialized.

To change the Print Statistics password is changed, execute the password change from the Print Statistics menu. Make sure you don't forget the new password after change.

*1 For details about [Erase Privacy Data], please refer to "[Disposal\(P.241\)](#)".

For details about [Reset Settings], please refer to "[Initializing settings of this machine\(P.236\)](#)".

For initialization of the flash memory, please refer to "[Initializing the flash memory\(P.235\)](#)".

For initialization of the network setup, please refer to "[Initializing network settings\(P.235\)](#)".

Regulatory wireless LAN statements

- FCC Statement
- IC Statement
- Europe-CE Declaration of conformity.

FCC statement

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

IC statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC Rules and Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of this device.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux la partie 15 des règles de la FCC et CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

This Class [B] digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe [B] est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Caution (FCC/IC):

5.15-5.25 GHz band is restricted to indoor operations only.

La bande 5150-5250 MHz est restreints à une utilisation à l'intérieur.

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines and RSS-102 of the IC radio frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements énoncées pour un environnement non contrôlé et respecte les règles des radioélectriques (RF) de la FCC lignes directrices d'exposition et d'exposition aux fréquences radioélectriques (RF) CNR-102 de l'IC. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé en gardant une distance de 20 cm ou plus entre le dispositif rayonnant et le corps.

Europe - CE Declaration of Conformity

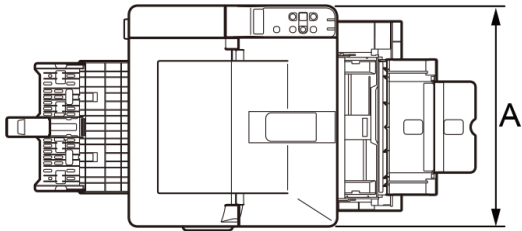


This equipment complies with the essential requirements of the European Union directive 2014/53/EU.

The telecommunications functionality of this product may be used in the following EU and EFTA countries: Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Turkey and United Kingdom.

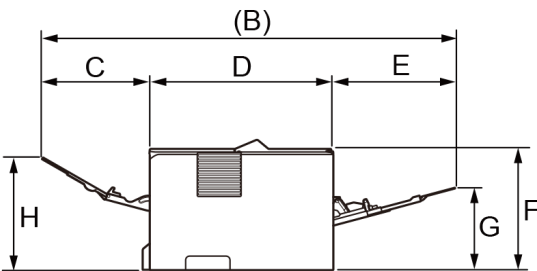
Dimensions

Plan view

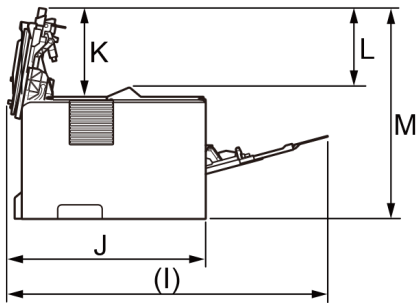


	B433	B513
A	387 mm	

Side view

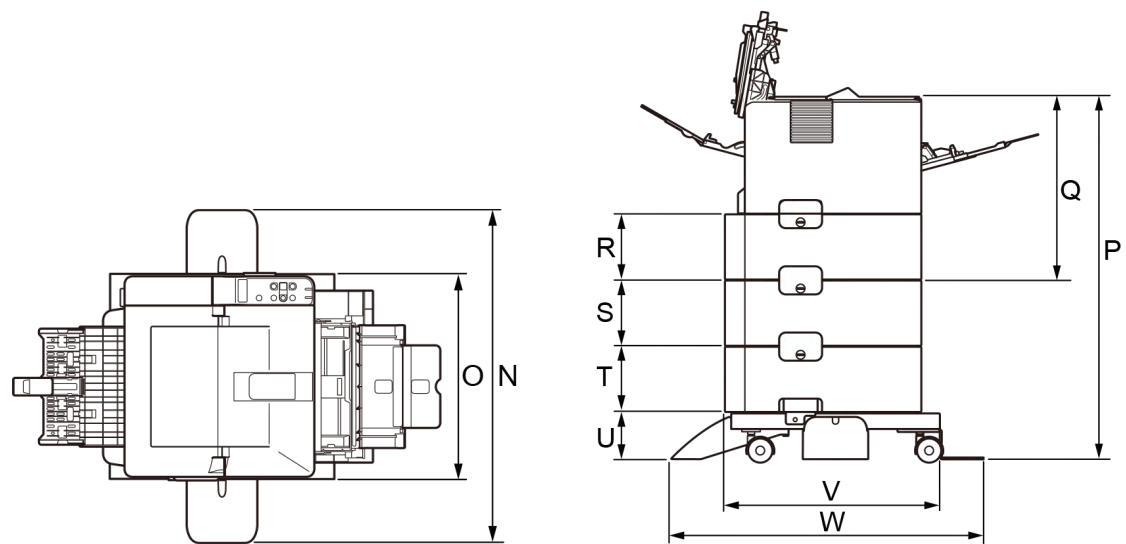


	B433	B513
B	820 mm	
C	214 mm	
D	364 mm	
E	242 mm	
F	245 mm	286 mm
G	169 mm	209 mm
H	228 mm	268 mm



	B433	B513
I	643 mm	
J	402 mm	
K	180 mm	
L	162 mm	
M	424 mm	465 mm

With optional accessories installed

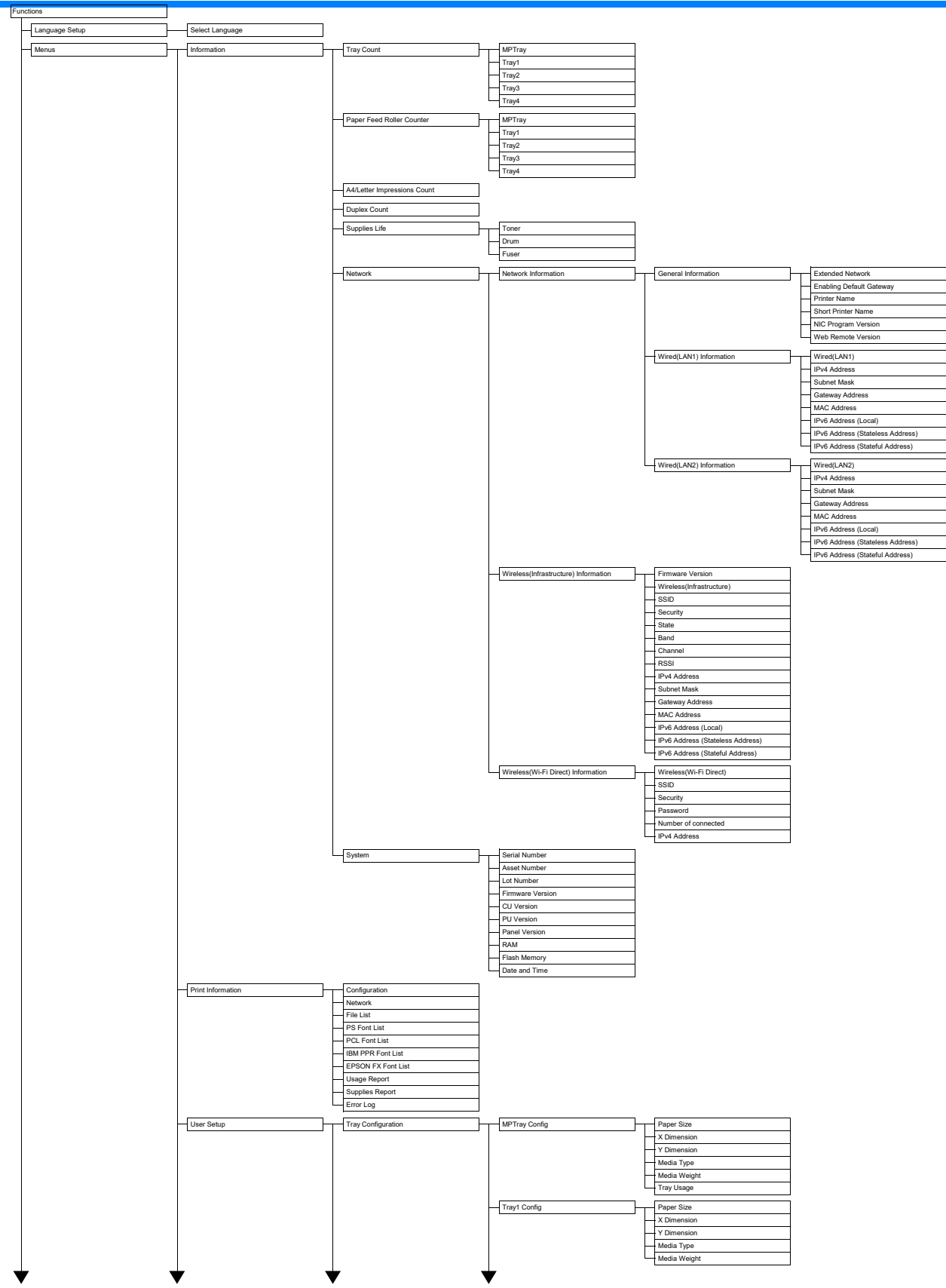


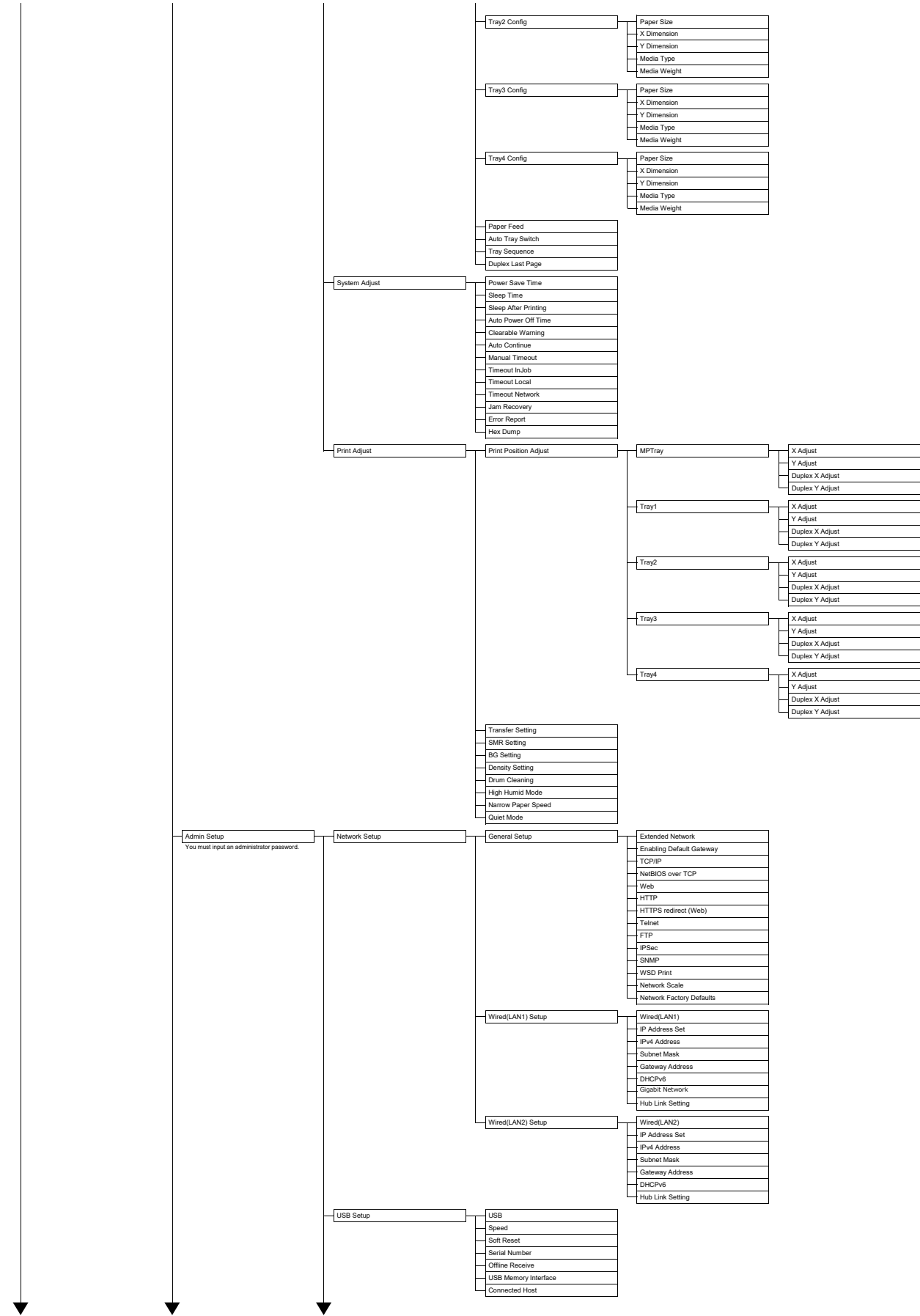
	B433	B513
N	642 mm	
O	395 mm	
P	761 mm	802 mm
Q	383 mm	424 mm
R	138 mm	
S	138 mm	
T	138 mm	
U	102 mm	
V	443 mm	
W	644 mm	

Contact us

Italia	www.oki.com/it
Français	www.oki.com/fr
Deutschland	www.oki.com/de
United Kingdom	www.oki.com/uk
Ireland	www.oki.com/ie
España	www.oki.com/es
Portuguesa	www.oki.com/pt
Sverige	www.oki.com/se
Danmark	www.oki.com/dk
Norge	www.oki.com/no
Suomi	www.oki.com/fi
Nederland	www.oki.com/nl
België/Belgique	www.oki.com/be
Österreich	www.oki.com/at
Schweiz/Suisse/Svizzera	www.oki.com/ch
Polska	www.oki.com/pl
Česká	www.oki.com/cz
Slovenská	www.oki.com/sk
Magyarország	www.oki.com/hu
Россия	www.oki.com/ru
Україна	www.oki.com/ua
Türkiye'ye	www.oki.com/tr
Serbia	www.oki.com/rs
Croatia	www.oki.com/hr
Greece	www.oki.com/gr
Romania	www.oki.com/ro
OKI Europe	www.oki.com/eu
Singapore	www.oki.com/sg/
Malaysia	www.oki.com/my/
ประเทศไทย	www.oki.com/th/printing/
Australia	www.oki.com/au/
New Zealand	www.oki.com/nz/
中国	www.oki.com/cn/printing
대한민국	www.oki.com/kr/
United States	www.oki.com/us/
Canada	www.oki.com/ca/
Brasil	www.oki.com/br/printing
México	www.oki.com/mx/
Argentina	www.oki.com/la/
Colombia	www.oki.com/la/
Other countries	www.oki.com/printing/

Menu tree





Print Setup	Personality	
	Copies	
	Duplex	
	Binding	
	Media Check	
	A4/Letter Override	
	Edge to Edge	
	Resolution	
	Toner Save	
	Default Orientation	
	Edit Size	
	X Dimension	
	Y Dimension	
PS Setup	L1 Tray	
	Network Protocol	
	USB Protocol	
	PDF Paper Size	
	PDF Scaling Size	
	PDF Print Mode	
PCL Setup	Font Source	
	Font Number	
	Font Pitch	
	Font Height	
	Symbol Set	
	A4 Print Width	
	White Page Skip	
	CR Function	
	LF Function	
	Print Margin	
	Pen Width Adjust	
	Tray ID#	MPTray
		Tray1
	Tray2	
	Tray3	
	Tray4	
SIDM Setup	SIDM Manual ID#	
	SIDM Manual2 ID#	
	SIDM MP Tray ID#	
	SIDM Tray1 ID#	
	SIDM Tray2 ID#	
	SIDM Tray3 ID#	
	SIDM Tray4 ID#	
IBM PPR Setup	Character Pitch	
	Font Condense	
	Character Set	
	Symbol Set	
	Letter O Style	
	Zero Character	
	Line Pitch	
	White Page Skip	
	CR Function	
	LF Function	
	Line Length	
	Form Length	
	TOF Position	
	Left Margin	
	Fit to Letter	
Text Height		
EPSON FX Setup	Character Pitch	
	Character Set	
	Symbol Set	
	Letter O Style	
	Zero Character	
	Line Pitch	
	White Page Skip	
	CR Function	
	Line Length	
	Form Length	
	TOF Position	
	Left Margin	
	Fit to Letter	
	Text Height	
	Private Print Setup	Verify job option
Erase job option		
Keep job for		
Job Limitation		
Verify job password		
Job Auto Search		
Panel Setup	Near Life Status	
	Near Life LED	
	Paper setup when paper exchange	
	Idle Display	
	Panel Contrast	
	Power Save LED Brightness	
Buzzer Setup	Error Volume	
	Print Completion Buzzer Volume	
	Printer Identification Buzzer Volume	
Time Setup	Date Format	
	Time Zone	
	Daylight Saving	
	Setting method	
	SNTP Server (Primary)	
	SNTP Server (Secondary)	
	Time Setting	
Power Setup	Auto Power Off	
	Power Save Setting	
Tray Setup	Unit of Measurement	
	Default Paper Size	

